HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS

By

Major Edwin North McClellan.

Volume 1, Chapter 1-3.

1925-1932
EARLY MARINES IN THE EASTERN HEMISPHERE.

-----

Material and Sources
of
Chapter I, Volume I,
History of the United States Marine Corps

By

Major Edwin N. McClellan, U. S. Marines
Officer-in-Charge
Historical Section.

First Edition,
JULY 14, 1931.
FORENOTE

This compilation is not the final manuscript of this Chapter but represents only material and sources upon which it will be based. If details concerning the participation of the Navy and Army in any operation or incident described herein do not appear, such omission occurs only because it is impracticable in a history of this character to set forth more than the work of the Marines themselves. To do more than this would extend the history beyond a practical scope and size. In many of the operations described, the Navy or the Army, or both, have been present in greater strength than the Marines, and full credit is here given for their splendid achievements.

The following form of citation is suggested if it is desired to cite, either in published works, or manuscript, any information contained herein:

(McClellan, Hist., U.S.M.C., 1st ed., I, Ch. I, p--)
CHAPTER I.

EARLY MARINES IN THE EASTERN HEMISPHERE.

For purposes of convenience the earth has been divided into the Eastern and Western Hemispheres. Somewhere on this earth there is the spot where Man first appeared. Somewhere is the place where the first civilization developed. There is no absolute certainty whether these two localities are in the Western or in the Eastern Hemisphere. An impenetrable curtain has been dropped between those days — far behind what now we term ancient times — and today. The location of the place where Man first appeared or of the vicinity where the first civilization sprang up, will never be learned, leagues of salt water may cover them. They may be under a torrid desert or on a mountain top.

We are certain that from the day that boats first carried fighting-men on the rivers, lakes and oceans, there were men who performed duties now assigned to Marines. These Maritime Soldiers may have first appeared in either of the hemispheres but oblivion has submerged all information about them.

The recorded history of man-kind, even of those civilizations whose records go farthest back into antiquity, covers only a small fraction of the period of many thousands of years since man as a distinct species first appeared upon the earth. The first recorded data we have today of Soldiers of the Sea appears in the myths, legends and histories of the Eastern
Hemisphere. Accordingly this first chapter will be devoted to the Marines of that hemisphere.

Marines have always been Sea Soldiers. They have served on fresh water rivers and lakes as well as salt water seas and oceans. They may have been attached to the war vessels - private and public - or they may have served on board such vessels as a mobile expeditionary force. The effect of the expedition may have been secured by carrying a regularly organized expedition of soldiers accustomed to the sea, or by augmenting the strength of the regular detachments of Sea Soldiers attached to the ships. The origin of the Marines lies in expeditionary service.

A study of history brings the student to the conclusion that whether a soldier is a Marine depends upon the character of duty such soldier performs and not upon the name given to him. With this information before us we will see that there have been Marines from the first date that fighting men served on ships or in expeditions of a naval status.

It is a difficult task to express, in a few words, the story of how the Soldier-of-the-Navy developed through the ages. The Assyrians overlap the Egyptians and they in turn the Greeks. All three are mingled with the Phoenicians and Persians. There were many Greek or Hellenic States, and the political entity of Sparta adds to our confusion. The Romans,
Syracusans, Carthaginians appear and then back into the picture again float the Egyptians. Few naval historians even mention the early Scandinavians, Celts, Japanese, Chinese and Coreans but a history of the ancient Marines must include them.

Boats and ships came before any fighting afloat. The first boats were constructed very early in the Neolithic stage of culture. They were no more than trees and floating wood, used to assist the imperfect natural swimming powers of men. In some places they were merely rafts or hulks of trees made hollow. With the development of tools and a primitive carpentry, the period of boats arrived. Men in Egypt and Mesopotamia developed a primitive type of basketwork boat. Skins and hides on a wicker framework also were used in the construction of ancient boats. Sumeria boats and ships appeared on the Euphrates and Tigris as early as 7,000 B.C. There is evidence of a fully developed sea life 6,000 years ago at the eastern end of the Mediterranean. Predynastic Neolithic Egyptian representations of Nile ships were capable of carrying elephants. The art of rowing can first be discerned on the Nile about 2,500 B.C. Sails were also used by the Egyptians, Phoenicians and Greeks. However, "in the eyes of a Greek, the sail was a symbol rather of flight than of fighting."

The whole of maritime warfare naturally falls into three
periods: (1) the period of the galley or of oars "beginning in prehistoric times and culminating in the year 1571 at the Battle of Lepanto: (2) the period of the "great ship," or "ship of the line," or period of sails, which was established in 1588 with the campaign of the Great Armada and reached its highest development at Trafalgar in 1805; and (3) the period in which we now live, the period of steam. To these might be added a future period, in which a composite air-surface-sub craft will be able to fly, float on the surface, and navigate underneath the surface.

Practically all of the translators and historians use the word "Marines" for the soldiers of ancient times who performed the duty carried on by the Marines of today.

Thucydides wrote that among the Ancients at first there was no different ranks of seamen, but the same persons were employed in those duties, which were in later ages performed by "rowers, mariners, and soldiers." In other words, when a battle ensued the rowers would drop their oars for weapons. These composite Marine-seaman-oarsman were described by Homer when he wrote that "each ship had fifty rowers that were skilled well in the shooting art." "Afterwards," continued Thucydides, "when the art of naval war began to be improved" it "became customary to furnish their ships of war with the three following sorts of men:" (1) Epibatai, or Marines; (2) Nautai, or sailors; and (3) Eretai, or slaves who rowed.

Greek Marines were regularly paid. Boeckh wrote that:
"There were in a trireme two hundred men to be paid; and, indeed, not navigators or sailors alone, but the Marines were also included. For there is no mention to be found of a separate payment for them, and when the ancients speak of the pay of a vessel's crew, the Marines are evidently comprised among the seamen."

The Epibatai or Marines "were armed after the same manner with those designed for land-service, only there seems always to have been a greater number of heavy-armed men than was thought necessary by land; for we find in Plutarch, that, (of the eighteen Marines employed to fight upon the hatches) of Themistocles' ships, only four were light-armed. Indeed, it highly imported them to fortify themselves in the best manner they could, since there was no possibility of retiring or changing places, but every man was obliged to fight hand-to-hand, and maintain his ground until the battle was ended; wherefore their whole armor, though in form usually the same with that employed in land-service, yet exceeded it in strength and firmness."

The normal crew of the Athenian trireme consisted of 10 Marines, 17 sailors, and 170 rowers. These numbers included the petty and non-commissioned officers but were exclusive of the Trierarch and the four subaltern commissioned officers, who brought the ship's company up to a total of 202.

The Marines were used for boarding the enemy ships, for repelling boarders, or for forming a mobile landing force to..."
operate in the enemy's territory. Greek history furnishes numerous instances of such mobile expeditionary forces.

Their numbers varied in accordance with the character and object of the expedition, on which they were embarked. Generally speaking, in proportion as the expedition was strictly naval in character, the smallest was the number of Marines on board the vessels. Thus at Salamis (480 B.C.) when the system of land warfare at sea still largely prevailed, the number of Marines attached to each warship was eighteen of whom four were archers and the rest heavy-armed; while at Naupactus (429 B.C.), half a century later, when naval tactics had advanced, the total number on each ship had been reduced to ten, which, however, was sufficient to repel boarders during the time in which the warship was in contact with its rammed foe. When the object of the expedition was military, as well as naval, often as many as fifty Marines to a vessel were embarked on the Greek warship.

Soldiers for Sea Service appeared in the gray dawn of the historic morning. We perceive them shrouded in the legendary mists. As far back as the eye can reach in legend and history there can be seen a group of men performing the duties that are today performed by Marines.

Jason may be said to have led the first expedition of maritime soldiers when he set out in his fifty-oared Argo to find the Golden Fleece.

Then came the Trojan War with its "Wooden Horse" and
its many heroic fighters who served on expeditionary duty. These, and no doubt many more other early expeditions, were carried on with typical Marine spirit.

The earliest peoples that had warships were probably the Cretans and Egyptians.

Minos, the Island-King of Crete is credited with being the first to establish a supremacy over the AEgean Sea when he cleared it of pirates, and established order and security. Thucydides wrote that "Minos is the first to whom tradition ascribes the possession of a navy." Under Minos, a redoubtable sea power and rich civilization flourished for unknown centuries. There was intercourse of some kind between Crete and Egypt as early as the time of the first Egyptian Dynasty. This connection was maintained by the direct sea route across the Mediterranean. Neolithic Egyptians were familiar with the building and use of ships and it was by galleys that the Egyptians and Cretans maintained intercourse. By the end of the Third Dynasty the Egyptians, themselves, had developed a Navy capable of making the voyage direct to Crete. Sneferu, the last king of this Dynasty sent a fleet of forty ships to the Syrian coast for cedarwood.

The Cretans had a period of peace of 1,000 years. The Minoan Empire does not appear to have been a specially warlike one; but it believed in preparation for war from a naval stand-
So long as the war fleet of Minos was in being, Knossos, the Minoan capital, needed no fortifications. Marines served on board the Minoan cruisers. The fleet did fail at last and this civilization passed with it. "Sea power was lost, and with it everything." 22

About 1,400 B.C., Knossos, was sacked and burnt. The final blow came about 1,000 B.C., when the capital was destroyed, probably by the "barbaric Greeks." 23

While we are thus engrossed in the naval affairs of the Mediterranean, the Chinese, Corean and Japanese peoples were participating in many incidents of navigation, commerce and naval war. A civilization existed in China by at least 2,000 B.C., and being a maritime state there were Chinese war junks, manned by sailors and Soldiers of the Sea at an early date. Duhalde writes that "the naval force of the Emperor Tsin Chi-hoang, which according to the Chinese histories sailed as far as Bengal, must needs have made the name" of China "famous among the Indians," and this fame must have been passed on through Persia and Egypt to Europe so that by 230 B.C., China was known of there. Other historians state that Greece and Rome know nothing of China. 24

The Japanese were also a maritime people. They must have used boats to cross from Corea to the islands in their first migration, when they invaded the Island Kingdom,
much as the Saxons and other Teutonic tribes entered Britain. The earliest Japanese history, like that of China and India, is almost exclusively mythic and legendary. Japanese national history begins with the Emperor Jimmu, who, in 660 B.C., built a fleet on the Inland Sea by means of which he reached Osaka and consolidated the Empire. The earliest of Japanese fighting men were as much at home on the sea as on land and that many of them served as do the Marines of today can be well understood.

All the time the Egyptians had been declining, the Phoenicians had been progressing. The Phoenicians were the first people within the knowledge of written history to make extensive use of armed sea power. They were great seamen because they were great traders. "Two-banked warships were certainly in use in Phoenicia about 700 B.C., for Phoenician warships are represented with two banks of oars in Assyrian sculpture of that date." The Sea Soldiers found a place on board all of the warships of the Phoenicians, as well as in all the expeditions sent out.

The Phoenician men of Tyre and Sidon, by the Tenth Century B.C., had pushed to every part of the Mediterranean. They founded Carthage before 800 B.C.; they passed through the Pillars of Hercules and circumnavigated Africa; they visited England for tin and discovered the Madeira and Canary Islands; but their glories passed and they yielded in turn to Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, and as sailors and Marines under the Persian,
they fought the Greeks.

The Assyrians under Shalmaneser IV, marched into Phoenicia in 725 B.C. They could make no impression upon the Island of Tyre since they had no navy, and therefore made peace. A second campaign followed. Certain Phoenician renegade cities engaged to supply Shalmaneser with a Navy; and a fleet was collected and equipped, which consisted of 60 ships, manned by a combination of Phoenicians and Assyrians. The Tyrian fleet, however, so despised the Assyrians that they met their fleet of 60 with but 12 vessels and decisively defeated them.

The earliest Greeks appear in the dim light before the dawn of history, say about 1,500 B.C. They came into conflict with and mixed with the civilization represented by the Cretes of Knossos.

The fall of Cretan civilization and dominancy was followed by confusion out of which emerged many states, the leading ones being Miletus and Phocaea. The influence of Miletus spread east and that of Phocaea spread west. Herodotus states that "the Phocaeans were the first of the Greeks who performed long voyages," and that they used "the long penteconter." About the beginning of the Sixth Century B.C., Phocaea's Navy defeated the combined fleets of Carthage and Etruria in the naval battle of Corsica.

Corinth had the strongest fleet of the States of Continental Greece. Thucydides wrote that "the Corinthians are
said first to have managed naval matters most nearly to the present fashion, and *triremes* to have been built at Corinth first in Greece." Torr wrote that "according to Thucydides the first ships that were built by the Greeks for use in warfare were built about 700 B.C., at Corinth and Samos."

The "earliest naval engagement on record [in Greek history] is that between the Corinthians and Corcyraeans" about 645 B.C., wrote Thucydides.

Thucydides wrote that the Ionians also had a large navy in the time of Cyrus I, ad Cambyses, of Persia.

About the middle of the Sixth Century, B.C., both Miletus and Phocaea were surpassed by another naval power - Samos.

The Greek sea-coast cities of Asia Minor, which Cyrus the Great had added to the Persian Empire in 545 B.C., revolted in 499 B.C., in what is known as the Ionic Revolt, and the operations resulting were largely naval in character.

The decisive naval Battle of Lade was fought in 497 B.C., off Lade, near Miletus. "The Persians themselves were not at all acquainted with maritime affairs," so they employed the Phoenicians and others. Six hundred Phoenician vessels in the Persian service met and defeated three hundred and fifty-three Asiatic Greek *triremes*. Each of the Greek ships carried a detachment of forty armed "picked men" serving as Marines. Each Persian vessel "had on board, besides native soldiers, thirty fighting men, who were either Persians, Medes, or Sacans."
While the "Ionian Fleet was still assembled at Lade" the Marines and sailors were harangued. The Ionian rowers exercised maneuvers, "while the Marines were held under arms." There were 100 Chian ships in this battle, having "each of them forty armed citizens, and those picked men on board."  

The Persians upon discovering the Ionian Fleet off Miletus, immediately attacked it. Many of the Samian vessels treacherously retired; but "of those who remained and fought, none were so rudely handled as the Chians, who displayed prodigies of valor, and disdained to play the part of cowards." The Greeks were severely defeated. Asia Minor fell under Persian rule again.

"Large bodies of Epibatae [Marines] were also carried in transports ready to be landed where necessary for cooperation with the fleet." Thus in the year 497 B.C., over 2,400 years ago, Marines were fulfilling the major war mission assigned to the American Marines of today - to support the fleet by supplying it with a highly trained, fully equipped, expeditionary force for the shore operations which are necessary for the effective prosecution by the fleet of its major mission, which is to gain control of the sea and thereby open the sea lanes for the movement of the Army overseas.

In 492 B.C., a large army under Mardonius was sent out by Darius. It was "a vast body of men, some fit for sea, others for land service." He entered Thrace in August, accompanied by a powerful fleet along the shore. The fleet was
wrecked and his army defeated.

In 490 B.C., a second expedition of 600 ships and 110,000 men was organized. In the Spring "the troops were received by the ships of war; after which the whole fleet, amounting in all to 600 triremes, made sail for Ionia." This Army was beaten on the plain of Marathon, but it re-embarked, and as they commanded the sea, by a rapid sail they almost captured Athens by surprise. The Persians then abandoned the Greek coast and returned to Asia.

During the decade that followed the Battle of Marathon, the Persians assembled large military and naval forces in the region around the Hellespont. The sea forces of Xerxes, son of Darius who had died in the great invasion of 480 B.C., according to Herodotus, amounted to 4,207 ships, 1,207 triremes and 3,000 lesser vessels, including transports for horses, "manned by 481,400 sailors of subject nations and 36,210 Persians serving as Marines." This large number of vessels was furnished by Phoenicia, "Syrians of Palestine," Egypt and many other states, while the Greeks of Thrace in addition furnished 120 ships. There were 1,800,000 land soldiers, or a total land and sea force of 2,317,610. To this force must be added that raised in Europe – about 324,000.

Themistocles realized that Athens had to be converted "from a land-power into a sea-power," if this huge force was to be defeated. He bent all his efforts to create a navy and persuaded the Athenians to leave off dividing the proceeds of
the silver mines among themselves and to employ the money in building ships. Under the inspiration of Themistocles, the "Father of the Greek Navy," there was soon assembled a fleet of 271 ships and 62 penteconters. Themistocles was the soul and moving spirit of this armament but a Spartan, named Euryviades, commanded. In 480 B.C., the Greek fleet proceeded to Artemisium to guard the flank and rear of Leonidas' small land force at the Pass of Thermopylae.

Preceding the naval battle of Artemisium there occurred a preliminary skirmish between three of Euryviades' ships and the Persians that produced a Marine hero and a Marine martyr. Three Greek vessels were pushed forward along the coast of Thessally to watch the Persian fleet. It was here that the first blood was shed in this memorable contest. Ten Persian ships met the three Greek vessels. One Greek vessel, an AEginetan, resisted vigorously, and one of her hoplites, Pythes, son of Ischenous, "fought with desperate bravery, and fell covered with wounds." He was the hero. Herodotus wrote that "after the ship was taken this man continued to resist, and did not cease fighting till he fell quite covered with wounds. The Persians who served as men-at-arms in the squadron, finding that he was not dead, but still breathed, and being very anxious to save his life, since he had behaved so valiantly, dressed his wounds with myrrh, and bound them up with bandages of cotton. Then, when they were returned to their own station, they displayed their prisoner admiringly
to the whole host, and behaved towards him with much kindness; but all the rest of the ship's crew were treated merely as slaves."

The Marine martyr was one named Leo or Leon. He served on the first of the two vessels captured. He was a Sea Soldier of imposing stature and very beautiful. He was the first captive made by the Persians. Herodotus says that the Persians "took the handsomest of the men-at-arms and drew him to the prow of the vessel, where they sacrificed him," according to custom.

The naval battle of Artemisium fought in 480 B.C., left both fleets disabled, and furnished the prelude to the great naval battle of Salamis, whither the Greeks retired, followed by the Persians.

To oppose the massive land and sea forces of the Persians, the Greeks now gathered together about 378 ships, without counting penteconters.

Then came the Naval Battle of Salamis in which the wily Themistocles induced Xerxes to fight in the narrow strait that separates the Island of Salamis from the mainland.

At dawn on the day of the battle, the men-at-arms of the Greek Fleet were assembled on shore and harangued. "The best of all was that of Themistocles, who, throughout, contrasted what was noble with what was base, and bade that in all that came within the range of man's nature always to make choice of the nobler part."
"Plutarch gives the number of Marines on board each Greek trireme at the Battle of Salamis, as eighteen, four of whom were archers and the rest heavy-armed."

At sunrise the Persian Fleet advanced from the south-east into Salamis Harbor. With no room to maneuver the Persians were soon defeated. Grappling irons locked the opposing galleys, movable gangways or planks were used for boarding; Sharp beaks were destructive; and the Battle turned into a hand-to-hand struggle.

The Naval Battle of Mycale, followed in 479 B.C., and the victory of the Greeks was complete, with the defeat of the Persians in the land battle of Plataea on the same day.

In the account of the Battle of Plataea where Mardonius, son of Gobryas, the great military leader of the Persians, was slain, and the choice of the Persian troops routed, there is an instance related where the military and naval training are curiously blended in the person of the Athenian Sophanes. "He wore," wrote Herodotus, "an iron anchor, fastened to the belt which secured his breastplate by a brazen chain; and this, when he came near the enemy, he threw out; to the intent that, when they made their charge, it might be impossible for him to be driven from his post; as soon, however, as the enemy fled, his wont was to take up his anchor and join the pursuit." Another account by Herodotus states that "Sophanes, instead of having an iron anchor fastened to his breastplate, bore the
device of an anchor upon his shield, which he never allowed to rest, but made to run round continually."

In 468 B.C., the Persian naval forces became active again and a fleet of 350 Phoenician galleys was assembled in that year off the mouth of the Eurymedon. Three hundred Athenian and Allied galleys decisively defeated them. On the same day a landing party from the fleet put to rout a large force of Persian Infantry.

"The greatest achievement of former times was the Persian War; yet even this was speedily decided in two battles by sea and two by land." The Peloponnesian War however was a protracted struggle, and attended by calamities such as Hellas had never known."

At the beginning of the Peloponnesian Wars, Greece had 300 seaworthy ships. "From the middle of the fifty century twenty triremes were annually in commission," in the Greek Navy. In the Peloponnesian War the Greek vessels carried only ten Marines. The Ram was very effective and it was felt that fewer Marines were necessary. A greek trireme carried a crew of two hundred, and of these "30 were officers, Marines, and sailors who attended the rigging." During the Peloponnesian War, the average number of Marines on board the Athenian trireme was ten.

The naval battle near Cheimerium was fought between Corinth on one side and Corcyra with the support of Athens on the other. Corinth had 150 ships while Corcyra possessed
110 with the support of 30 Athenian ships. The decks of both were crowded with heavy infantry, with archers and with javelinmen. The Battle "had almost the appearance of a land fight. When two ships once charged one another, it was hardly possible to part company, for the throng of vessels was dense, and the hopes of victory lay chiefly in the heavy-armed, who maintained a steady fight upon the decks, the ships meanwhile remaining motionless."

In the decisive sea fight off Aegina in 458 B.C., the Athenians were victorious, capturing 70 of the enemy's ships. They landed on the Island and captured the city.

In 457 B.C., 200 Athenian galleys invaded Egypt. The crews landed and won a battle. They then sailed up the Nile and besieged Memphis. "After six years' fighting the cause of the Hellenes in Egypt was lost."

Thucydides tells us that six Athenian vessels under Melesander, went to Lycia and Caria "to see that Peloponnesian privateers did not establish themselves in those ports."

The Athenian fleet under Phormio defeated the Peloponnesians in 429 B.C., at the Battle of Naupactus. This battle followed a lesser engagement in which the Peloponnesians lost. The victory of the Athenians dispirited the Peloponnesians and their generals harangued them. They told them the first "expedition had a military and not a naval object," and it being
their "first sea-fight" they "suffered a little from inexperience." But now with "a larger fleet" they would win. Phormio harangued his Athenians too. "Soldiers" — was his first word — "the sea fight must of necessity be reduced to a land-fight in which numbers will tell." This meant that the decision would rest on the Marines. The first stages of the engagement favored the Spartans but a counter attack by the Athenians won the battle. About ten Marines served on each of the Greek ships in these Battles.

Shortly after the victory of Naupactus "the Athenian forces at Naupactus made an expedition under command of Phormio into the center of Acarnania with 400 hoplites of their own taken from the fleet and 400 Messenian hoplites," after which "they returned to their ships."

In 415 B.C., Athens sent a great land and naval expedition to Sicily.

The Greek expedition consisted of nearly 300 warships, transports and supply vessels, carrying about 35,000 sailors, Marines, and soldiers. "No armament so magnificent or costly had ever been sent out by any single Hellenic power," said Thucydides. "The hoplites numbered in all 5,100 of whom 1,500 were Athenians taken from the roll, and 700" served as Marines.

"When the ships were manned and everything required for the voyage had been placed on board, silence was proclaimed by the sound of the trumpet, and all with one voice before setting
sail offered up the customary prayers. *** On every deck both the officers and the Marines, mingled wine in bowls, made libations from vessels of gold and silver."

After a long while Nicias, who had succeeded Alcibiades in command of the Greek Fleet, led it into the Great Harbor of Syracuse in the spring of 414 B.C. The Athenian Fleet was eventually cooped up in the Great Harbor of Syracuse. The Syracuseans had become unquestionably superior at sea. They had fitted their vessels with "beaks", copying the Corin-thians. The Athenians seeing the closing of the harbor re-solved on one last desperate attempt to regain the sea. Practically their entire army was put on the ships; they intended to fight a land battle at sea, so to speak. Thucydides de-scribed this naval battle in vivid detail. "No previous engage-ment," wrote he, "had been so fierce and obstinate." The rowers worked eagerly. "The Marines, too, were full of anxiety that, when ship struck ship, the service on deck should not fall short of the rest; every one in the place assigned to him was eager to be foremost among his fellows." "All the time that another vessel was bearing down, the man on deck poured showers of javelins and arrows, and stones upon the enemy and when the two closed, the Marines fought hand to hand and endeavoured to board." "The iron beaks of the opposing ships ground angrily together as the Grecian Fleet fell upon the enemy who had drawn up their vessels at the mouth of the harbor." The arrows and
darts of the Athenians did less execution than the stones 76
slung with admirable skill by the Syracuseans.

The Athenians were put to flight by the Syracuseans. Their morale was broken and their ruin complete. "Fleet and army perished from the face of the earth; nothing was saved, and of the many who went forth few returned home," wrote Thucydides. The overwhelming defeat of the Athenians at the naval battle of Syracuse started the decline and fall of the Athenian sea empire.

For nine years after this defeat Athens struggled against the combined strength of Greece and the finances of Persia. Athenian naval victories were achieved but the naval power of Athens was gradually weakening under the strain. Thucydides tells us that hoplites serving as "Marines" on twenty Athenian ships stationed at Lade formed landing parties and made descents upon Cardamyle and Bolissus.

With a fleet of seventy-six ships the Athenians defeated eighty-eight Peloponnesian vessels, at what is known as the Battle of Cynossema. A few days later the Athenians captured eight more enemy vessels. Again the Athenians enjoyed a naval success in the Battle off Abydos. Then came a decisive naval victory when the Athenians routed the Peloponnesians at Cyzicus. Unfortunately for Athens, she declined peace with Sparta, for with the assistance of Persian money the Peloponnesians rebuilt their fleet, and in 406 B.C. were ready to renew the struggle.
At the Battle off the Arginusae Isles, opposite Lesbos, the Athenian Fleet achieved a complete victory and once more controlled the Aegean Sea; but once again Athens refused the offer of peace from Sparta. From now on the prestige and supremacy of Athens begins to dwindle, never to again rise.

In September, 405 B.C., the Peloponnesians under Lysander crushed the last Athenian fleet at Lampactus by surprise.

Athens had shot her last bolt; her ships and crews were gone. She was soon besieged by land and sea. Lysander entered Piraeus and destroyed the "Long walls," the Peloponnesians celebrating with the music of flutes, "the return of liberty to Greece," in the Spring of 404 B.C. With this battle the grand epoch of Greek Naval History comes to a close.

Philip of Macedon and his son Alexander both believed in control of the sea and therefore we find the Macedonian fleets sailing the seas. Due to the nature of naval warfare the Macedonian Marines were an important part of the crews of these vessels and we also find them forming the nucleus of "expeditions." When King Philip II ascended the throne in 359 B.C., he diverted some of the Macedonian energies to the sea. In 352 B.C. he began the creation of a navy, and soon after his marauding ships threatened the commerce of the Aegean. While Philip was consolidating his empire on land he continued to increase and improve his navy. His ambitions, however, were cut short by assassination and his son, Alexander the Great,
Alexander succeeded him in 336 B.C.

Alexander started with a fleet of one hundred and sixty Macedonian warships. The Persian Navy of four hundred galleys controlled the seaboards of Asia Minor, Syria and Egypt. He accordingly decided to depend upon land rather than sea to satisfy his yearnings to conquer. With land successes crowned by Issus, Alexander was enabled to march into Syria and to strike at the seat of the Persian naval power in the Phoenician cities. By early in the fourth century, B.C., Alexander had overcome all but Tyre.

Alexander had the Sidonian Fleet with him as well as 120 ships of the King of Cyprus, "which gave him command of the sea." Carthage sent the mother city no help. Alexander joined his galleys in pairs by the head. Grouping and connecting them with planks he thus formed a tremendous transport which he loaded with Marines and soldiers. This huge galley of galleys was then rowed close to the walls of Tyre. The Tyrians finally submitted. The Perso-Phoenician naval power was now a thing of the past, and Alexander was master of the AEgean and Levantine Seas. He then started on his Asiatic conquest in August, 330 B.C.

The First Punic War, between Rome and Carthage, began 264 B.C. Carthage was founded by citizens of Phoenician Tyre, early in the Ninth Century, B.C., near the site of modern Tunis.
The Carthaginians were splendid seamen and their superiority on the water enabled them to throw large armies into Sicily practically at will.

With the conquest of Italy, which Rome substantially achieved by her victory over Pyrrhus in 275 B.C., Rome changed from a purely peninsular state to a great Mediterranean power. Rome's ambitions, at first confined to land now reached out to becoming a sea power. It soon became evident that if the Carthaginians were to be driven from Sicily, Rome must command by sea as well as by land.

At the opening of the first Punic War in 264 B.C., Rome was practically without a fleet. Though the Romans possessed some merchant marine, and had employed ships of war, at times, they do not seem to have had any of the larger vessels such as the quinqueremes which the Phoenician builders constructed for the Carthaginian Navy.

Maps of the period show how the Carthaginian boundaries were extending to include Mediterranean Islands south of Italy and how the Carthaginians had already conquered most of Spain.

The Carthaginians, like their ancestors at Tyre, had long been renowned for the numbers and size of their ships, the skill of their rowers and pilots, and their dexterity in practising the maneuvers which gave the trained crew the superiority over the untrained.

The Navy was the source of the Carthaginian's power. It
was not, like their army, served by foreign mercenaries. The bulk of the crews was composed of citizens to whom seaf
manship was a life-long profession. While the Carthaginians had often suffered defeat on land, no state for a long time past had seriously disputed with them their supremacy at sea. Thus it seemed presumptious for the Romans to hope to wrest from the sea-rovers the water supremacy.

The Roman Senate suddenly realized the significance of naval power and as promptly resolved upon the immediate creation of a fleet that could compete with that of Carthage. With characteristic energy the Roman government quickly converted forests into ships large enough to accommodate crews of more than four hundred men. While this construction was going on, men were taught rowing by exercising them on benches erected on the sand beach. But the Romans were wise enough to recognize that new ships manned by raw recruits who were strangers to the "sea habit" would not constitute a Navy that could cope with the seasoned fleet of their opponents whose crews had spent their lives afloat. But, believing in the vast superiority of the legionary over every other kind of fighting man, Roman strategists sought a solution of the difficult problem that confronted them wherein the legionary would be an element. They estimated that their only hope lay in bringing the legionary to bear upon the Carthaginian sailor.

The solution was made possible by the naval constructor
who invented the corvus (crow) which consisted of an additional mast stepped on the forecastle with a gangway, or bridge, pivoted on it so that it could be swung quickly to either side or over the bow, i.e., could be moved in a horizontal arc of about one hundred and eighty degrees. It was about 24 feet long. The outer end of the gangway was rigged with a heavy, sharp prong or pike, like a crow's bill (hence the name corvus), which served to grapple and hold to the deck of an adversary's ship when the bridge was dropped upon it. Thus, the plan was, as soon as Roman ships could make physical contact with the Carthaginians, each Roman vessel should drop its corvus upon an adversary ship which would permit the legionaries to rush across the bridge and make short work of dispatching the Carthaginians.

The Romans, with their much larger vessels and their incurable instinct for land warfare at sea, went a great deal further than did their predecessors. The Roman quinqueremes carried as many as one hundred and twenty Marines to each ship, and to their valor — we are told by the most competent of witnesses — Rome's good fortune at sea was due. "For although nautical science," wrote Polybius, "contributes largely to success in sea-fights, still it is the courage of the Marines that turns the scale most decisively in favor of victory."

The Roman quinquereme, Polybius also tells us, was manned by three hundred rowers and one hundred and twenty Marines, but whether these included the sailors, and how many were the commissioned officers, we have no means of knowing.
The Marines of the Roman Navy were called Classiarii, or "Soldiers for Sea Service." The "Romans" in addition to these "maintained a special force of Marines known as Lembarii. Probably the latter's duties were confined to serving on board river craft and the smaller natures of war-vessels, lembus meaning 'a small, fast-sailing vessel with a sharp prow; a pinnace; yacht; cutter.'"

Among the Romans much larger detachments of Marines were carried on the Roman vessels than the Greeks carried on their galleys. Some Roman war galleys carried no less than 300 rowers and 120 Marines. To the latter, as the size of the ships increased, fell the duties of serving the ballistae and other engines of war for throwing heavy projectiles, which began to form an important part of a ship's armament.

Sea service among Roman soldiers does not always seem to have been popular, as Tacitus records the discontent of the Classiarii, who wished to be transferred to a more honorable calling. They did not like being herded with slaves and to be exposed to danger without hope of distinction.

The Battle of Mylae in 260 B.C., furnished the first real test of the "crow." It resulted in the Romans first great naval victory and to the "crow" and the Marines can be credited the success. As the Punic captains steered confidently upon the Roman ships, they suddenly found their vessels grappled to those of the enemy, and the Roman Marines pouring over the
ships' sides across the "crows." Polybius writes that the battle "became exactly like a land fight." Over 50 Carthaginian ships were taken or sunk and Hannibal took the remnants of his fleet back to Carthage.

Then came the year 257 B.C., and the historic Battle of Ecnomus which was "probably the greatest naval engagement of antiquity." In point of numbers of ships and men engaged, this is the greatest sea battle recorded, and the organization and action were peculiarly Marine on the part of the Roman victors.

On the day of the battle off Sicily, three hundred and thirty Roman ships were attacked by three hundred and fifty Carthaginian, carrying 150,000 rowers and Marines. Polybius wrote that the total number of men making up the naval force of Rome amounted "to nearly 140,000 reckoning each ship as carrying 300 rowers and 120 Marines." As the average crew of the Carthaginian vessel was about four hundred men, there were nearly three hundred thousand men in action in this lively sea fight.

The Roman estimate of the value of the "crow" proved correct - the Legionary, turned Marine, was irresistible. The Carthaginians had expected to win the day by reason of their superiority in ship handling and superiority of numbers, but when the developments of the day denied them the employment of naval tactics and brought them into hand-to-hand combat with the Roman Marines, they were almost helpless. The Carthaginian
fleet was badly shattered; their command of the sea was lost; and the way was laid open for the Roman invasion of Africa. From the day that Roman Marines in the Battle of Ecnomus saved Italy, the greatness of Carthage began to dwindle.

Rome raised other fleets, the vessels of which were equipped with the crows. One fleet defeated the Carthaginians off Hermeneun but was destroyed later by a storm as was another fleet of 300 fully equipped vessels in 254 B.C. The Romans captured Lilybaeum the "Gibraltar of Sicily" in 250 B.C. This left Drepana as the only foothold of Carthage in Sicily.

Publius Claudius, one of the consuls for 249 B.C., determined to destroy the enemy's fleet at its moorings at Drepana. "As for Marines, he selected the best men from the whole Army, who were ready enough to join an expedition which involved so short a journey and so immediate and certain an advantage," wrote Polybius. Claudius put to sea at midnight and arrived in sight of Drepana about dawn the next morning. The Carthaginians attacked. "At first the engagement was evenly balanced, because each fleet had the pick of their land forces serving as Marines on board." The speedier Carthaginian ships, however, soon won the victory. The Carthaginian ships being swifter and handier, could maneuver and they no longer had the dreaded "crows" to fear, since the Romans were not in a position to maneuver so as to use them, being back close against the land.

Despite this defeat, Rome still had command at sea, and built fast vessels without "crows."

-29-
The Battle of the Aegatian Isles, 241 B.C., was the last battle of the First Punic War and the speedy Roman ships rammed and boarded their enemy's with ease. After this, in 240 B.C., Carthage sued for peace. The First Punic War is probably the greatest sea contest in antiquity and lasted twenty-four years.

In the centuries following the First Punic War, the Roman Navy acted as auxiliary to the Roman Army and guarded the seas against piracy. No great sea battle was fought in the Second Punic War. Two sea battles were fought off Lilybaenum, one off the Ebro, and one off Tarantum; and in all but the last, the Romans were easily successful.

About the year 219 B.C., Seleucia was captured by Antiochus III, in a combined military and naval operation. Seleucia, which town stands on the seacoast, between Cilicia and Phoenicia, was held by a "garrison for the Egyptian Kings." After failing to seduce the town with bribery Antiochus assaulted "the town on the sea-ward side with the men of his fleet, and on the land-side with his soldiers." The "naval contingent" fixed "their ladders on the dock," and the Army being ready, the assault commenced which soon brought about the capture of the city.

Polybius tells of the Marines of 217 B.C. The Carthaginian fleet consisted of "forty decked vessels," and the Romans manned thirty-five ships "and taking on board the best men"
that could be gotten from the land forces "to serve as Marines" the fleet put to sea and soon arrived near the mouth of the Ibe close to the Carthaginian Fleet. The Carthaginians made but a short struggle for victory. After losing two ships with their crews, "and the oars and Marines of four others, they gave way and made for the land." This naval victory continued Rome as masters of the sea.

About 218 B.C., the Macedonians, under Philip V, made every effort to fit themselves for sea-fighting. Philip made "continual experiments in practising the soldiers of his phalanx to the use of the oar" and "the Macedonians answered his instructions with ready enthusiasm." When Philip had his Macedonian soldiers well trained to the oar, he put to sea with his fleet.

In the course of the winter of 216 B.C., Philip built one hundred galleys. He had trained his men for rowing, not for fighting, "for he could never have even entertained a hope of fighting the Romans at sea." His ships were to be used as transports. His efforts to use the ships, however, were unsuccessful, due to the great panic that the near appearance of a Roman fleet had upon him.

The great sea fight off Chios between the Macedonians and the Attalus-Rhodes allies occurred about 201 B.C. Polybius described this action. It was principally ship for ship fighting. The ship on which Dionysodorus, of Attalus, was
fighting in charging an enemy vessel "missed his blow;" but "running up alongside of the enemy lost all the oars on his right side," and suffered other damage. "In the midst of loud shouts and great confusion, all the rest of his Marines perished along with the ship," but Dionysodorus escaped. The entire battle is filled with the gallant acts and brave deaths of Marines.

Mithridates, head of the Pontic Empire of the Black Sea, opened war on Rome in 88 B.C. It was plain that this war would depend in a large part upon control of the sea. The battle ground was Greece and both the Pontics and the Romans depended upon sea communications to feed and maintain their armies. At the opening of the war Mithridates had 300 decked ships and 100 open biremes. Rome, however, had but a small squadron manned by mercenaries, and the Roman army was carried to Greece in Sicilian merchant ships. The control of the sea by the Pontic Navy seemed secure. Finally the Mithridactic Army invaded Greece. In 87 B.C., Sulla crossed the Adriatic with an army. He then saw the necessity of a Navy. He started to build one and also sent to Rhodes for some vessels. Sulla then, in 87 B.C., won the land Battle of Chaerona.

The Roman Fleet next decisively defeated the Pontic Fleet. It was the Roman naval force securing control of the sea that at last brought victory to the Roman banners. After a second minor war the final Mithridactic War at last destroyed the Pontic hopes. In 74 B.C., the "Pontic Fleet comprised of 400 tri-
remes and quinqueremes and countless number of transports and lighter vessels," disturbed the Roman command of the sea, but Roman tactics and strategy soon destroyed this fleet in detail.

Some of the ancient ships were of almost unbelievable size. Athenaeus says that Hiero, the Tyrant of Syracuse (272-216 B.C.), built a ship of tremendous proportions, which he first named the Syracusan and later the Alexandrian. This ship carried a detachment of Sea Soldiers that must have been at least 234 strong. "Sixty young men clad in complete armor," were constantly on guard on each side of this ship, besides "four young men fully armed and two archers," on each of her eight towers. Sixty armed men stood on the three masts and on the eight yards that carried the stones. Three armed men were stationed on one masthead, two on another, and one on the third. In addition to these there were six hundred more detailed to man the ship.

Athenaeus, quoting Callixenus of Rhodes, states that when an enormous 40-banked warship belonging to Ptolemy Philopater, who ruled Egypt from 222 to 204 B.C., "put to sea it held more than four thousand rowers, and four hundred supernumeraries; and on the deck there were three thousand Marines, or at least two thousand eight hundred and fifty. And besides all these there was another large body of men under the decks, and a vast quantity of provisions and supplies."
The dynasty of the Ptolemies was extinguished by Antony's shameful defeat by Octavius at Actium. Antony embarked 20,000 legionaries and 2,000 archers and slingers on his vessels, of which he had 220 in addition to Cleopatra's Egyptian fleet of sixty vessels. Octavius had 260 ships or galleys and a large force, including Marines. Early in 31 B.C., the main war fleets of the rival leaders were concentrated near the promontory of Actium on the southern coast of Epirus. "The engagement," wrote Plutarch, "resembled a land fight, or to speak yet more properly, the attack and defense on a fortified place." Cleopatra with an Egyptian squadron accompanied Antony into the action, but took to flight when the fate of the battle was in doubt. The enemy hotly pursued her ships, but she succeeded in gaining the harbor of Alexandria. When Cleopatra retired, Antony ignominiously leaped into a boat and hastened after her. With the death of Cleopatra by the bite of an asp, the dynasty of the Ptolemies ceased to reign and Octavius was master of the world. Actium, the last decisive naval battle in ancient history, transformed the Mediterranean into a Roman Lake, and Egypt became a Roman Province. That the Romans appreciated the value of the Amphibious Army and continued an organization of Marine Infantry is attested by Rodolfo Lanciani.
He wrote that in 1866 a marble altar was discovered near Lambaese, upon which a report was engraved, beginning with a petition from Varius Clemens, governor of Mauritania, to Valerius Etruscus, Governor of Numidia, in 152 A.D., concerning the "perforation of a tunnel" in a mountain "to bring down to Bougie, Algeria (called then Saldae or civitas Salditana) the waters of a spring fourteen miles distant, now called Ain-Seur." The engineer was sent and included in his report that he had begun the excavation "with the help of two gangs of experienced veterans, namely, a detachment of Marine Infantry (classicos milites) and a detachment of Alpine troops (gaesates)." The tunnel was satisfactorily completed. Thus in 152 A.D., we find the Roman Marine, like the modern American able to do any sort of a job.

Many historians of ancient history are of opinion that the Britons possessed a naval force previous to the landing of the Romans in England, as they were frequently engaged in war with their neighbors.

The hide canoe appears to have been the earliest craft known to the Britons; these canoes were framed of light wood so arranged as to support and give strength to a hull of basket work, and then covered with hides. They were propelled by paddles and had mast. The Britons also had a fast sailing pinnace known to the Romans as the picta. The Romans were immensely ahead of the Britons with regard to the science of naval architecture.
Gaul had been reduced by Rome and Julius Caesar turned to conquer England. He gathered 80 ships where Boulogne now is. "He at once sent his armed galleys ahead with archers" to "clear the approach, and then ordered the legionaries to spring overboard and advance toward the beach. Thus Rome entered England and commenced the conquest of Britain in 55 A.D.

There are records of more than one Marine cohort, 500 to 1,000 strong, in Britain. In the time of Trajan (A.D.96-117) there was a cohort on service in Britain called Coh.Classiarri with duties much the same as were later assigned to the Marines, and in the Notitia in the reign of Theodosius the Younger, a section headed Item perlineam valli states after detailing 17 cohorts, or wings of cohorts, on guard there, that 'the Tribune of the 1st Marine Cohort, styled AElia et Tunnocelum, did duty at Bowness in the defence of the great wall which had been erected to keep off the wild tribes of Picts and Scots. At Netherby is an inscription showing number of feet of work executed by Classiarii northwest of Wall of Adrian.

Among the fragments of Roman pottery unearthed at Dover, England, is a portion of a Roman tile bearing the inscription "CL.BR." Similarly inscribed tiles have also been discovered at Lympne, near Hythe, which is known to have been a Roman station, and in the museum at Boulogne, just across the Channel, is another of these tiles inscribed "TR.CL.BR." The Roman custom was to place such inscribed tiles in buildings as we put.
coins, newspapers, etc., in corner stones. Antiquarians are agreed that the abbreviations "TR.CL.ER." represent the Latin words "Tribunus Classis Britannicae" or "Classiariorum Britannicorum" - "the Tribune of British Troops trained for sea warfare," indicating that the building in which the tiles were used was erected under the superintendence of the officer holding this position.

According to Vegetius, the badge of these Marines was a circle, and was worn on their shields. It is a curious coincidence that the Royal Marine badge is a globe.

In the Bodleian Library at Oxford is a small water-colour drawing of the circular shield carried by these ancient sea-soldiers. It is sea-green in colour, with a white rim and a circle in the center, divided into four quarters - two red and two white. The headquarters of the Roman channel fleet was at Boulogne, and according to a French writer the uniform of the Olassarii - at any rate when embarked - was of the same sea-green colour as their shields, the idea being that it reduced visibility, either by day or night.

Most probably, too, the Marines under the command of the Tribune at Dover, were not only Roman soldiers, but also Britons, for it was a regular practice among the Romans to raise native troops in the countries they conquered in the same way that England now has an Indian Army under British Officers, and the United States has in the Philippines, Porto Rico, and Samoan Islands.
In the last days of the Roman dominion in England some portion, at any rate, of their Corps of Marines was placed under the immediate command of the Count of the Saxon Shore, a high official whose special duty it was to protect the eastern coast from the ravages of the North German, Danish, and Norwegian sea-rovers, "foes," as sang a Roman poet of the time, "fierce beyond other foes, and cunning as they are fierce; the sea is their school of war, and the storm their friend; they are sea-wolves that live on the pillage of the world." The "Saxon Shore" extended from Yarmouth to Shoreham, and was defended by nine strong castles, and, according to Camden, the Count had under his command "7 companies of Footmen, 3 Guidons of Horsemen, the 2nd Legion and one Cohort."

But the knell of the Roman Empire had been struck, her legions were recalled to defend the Imperial City against the hordes of Gothic warriors that menaced her, and Britain passed into the hands of our early English ancestors in the 5th century A.D.

The special sea-soldier disappeared during the decline of the Roman Empire.

In the 8th and 9th centuries, the crews of the dromanes, or dromone - as the biggest Mediterranean men-of-war were termed - of the fleet belonging to the Emperor of the East, performed the compound office of mariners and soldiers, being alternately or jointly employed in working the vessel, annoying the enemy, or defending themselves.
While all this was going on in Europe and the Near East, many naval incidents were occurring in the Far East, where China, Japan and Corea were active on the water. In 202 A.D., the Japanese Empress Jingo equipped a fleet for the invasion of Korea. "As an early instance of the use of 'sea-power' this expedition has laid great hold on Japanese imagination; but since the transportation of the flagship by legions of fishes, with which the Empress has made an alliance, is the central point of the story, its nautical details can hardly be seriously considered." However, it was a complete success for Japan.

In 274 A.D., the people of Izu built and sent to the Court of Japan a vessel 100 feet long. Then the Karano was built in Japan by order of Emperor Ojin; it was 100 feet long.

In 685 an expedition of 200 ships under Hirafu was sent against the Sushen who had only twenty vessels. After the Sushen had refused the tribute offered by Hirafu, he attacked and defeated them at the Amur River.

Corea is not without its ancient naval history. The Corean fleet fought the Chinese as early as 107 B.C. The Coreans seem to be the Phoenicians of the Far East. About the middle of the 4th Century A.D., an "enormous Army of Yao Wang had long set sail," for a Chinese invasion of Corea, and in crossing the Gulf of Liaotung, "two thirds of his 500,000 soldiers and 170,000 sailors perished without striking a blow - most of them at sea."
For centuries there was nothing in the way of naval or military organizations comparable to those of classical times, if we except the navy of Alfred the Great with its Corps of Butea Carles who served both ashore and afloat like our Marines of today. On shore they served side by side with the Hus Carles (boat or ship people and house people) as body guard to the reigning monarch, and afloat they served on board the Royal ship or whatever other ships were impressed for war service. This duty gives them a just claim to be considered as successors to the Roman Classdarii or Marines.

Alfred (871 to 901 A.D.) constructed large gallies capable of rowing above sixty oars. With these gallies he entirely freed the English Channel of a nest of daring pirates, with which the coast of Devonshire and the Isle of Wight had been infested.

Then came the Battle of Hastings, a decisive Battle in which we have Marines with both Harold and William the Conqueror. Throughout the spring of 1066 all the seaports of Normandy, Picardy and Brittany rang with the busy sound of preparation. In England King Harold collected the army and the fleet with which he hoped to crush the invaders. But the unexpected attack of the fleet carrying Norwegian Marines of King Harald of Hardrada or Norway upon another part of England, eventually forced Harold to fight and win from Harald the Battle of Stamford Bridge, September 26, 1066.
This splendid victory was dearly purchased for it left Harold's Army in sad condition to meet William's 50,000 knights and 10,000 soldiers. William's fleet was assembled at the mouth of the Dive, a little river between the Seine and the Orme by the Middle of August, 1066. With full sails, and a following southern breeze, the Norman Armada left France for England. The invaders crossed an undefended sea and found an undefended coast. They landed September 29, 1066, in Pvensey Bay in Sussex. The sea was smooth for landing; the "good sailors, the sergeants, and squires" unloaded the ships. The archers landed "first, each with his bow strung, and with his quiver full of arrows, slung at his side. All were shaven and shorn."

King Harold's Butes Carles having disembarked from the ships in the channel, fell almost to a man round the Dragon standard at this Battle of Hastings which Harold lost to William on October 14, 1066.

Again, in the superbly decorated and fully manned ship that Earl Godwin presented to his sovereign, there were 80 soldiers, each of whom wore two golden bracelets on each arm, weighing sixteen ounces apiece.

But with these notable exceptions the Sea Soldier, as such, was temporarily defunct, at any rate in northern waters. The Vikings - the men of the creeks - who constantly harried England's shores, were sailors first, but well acquainted with the rough rules of warfare as then understood.
The ships of the Middle Ages, whether King's ships or others, were manned by seamen only. Soldiers, it is true, often fought on board them, but they were an expeditionary force, not part of the ship's complement. These soldiers, or expeditionary Marines, were the retinue of the King, noble or knight, who was using the ships either as transports for a raid or more important expedition overseas, or in some cases to bring him in touch with enemy vessels which he designed to capture or destroy.

Richard I, or "Coeur de Lion" who began his reign in 1189, entered into a treaty of alliance, with Philip Augustus of France, to unite their forces on an expedition to the Holy Land in the Third Crusade. Richard's Fleet consisted of over one hundred large ships and fifty galleys. This was nothing more or less than an immense expedition of Marines. The "Naval Laws" which he established for the government of his fleet were interesting and complete. They referred specifically to the "mariner and soldier."

"When war was imminent, and it became necessary to prepare a fleet to carry the Crusaders, the sovereign directed the nobles who held fiefs and were ship-owners to prepare their vessels for sea, and to equip and arm them. *** Each sailor of the crew could, at a pinch, be turned into a soldier; and, besides these, there were always cross-bowmen and regular soldiers, whose duty it was to be the first to board an enemy's ship, or to beat back his boarders with hand-spikes and cross-bow shafts."
"The admiral appointed to the command of the fleet published the order to arm in every port under his master's rule. *** The sea trumpets rang out their fanfares, and a herald at arms repeated in a loud voice the purport of the cartel [a scroll, announcing number of ships, etc., to be raised]. A clerk stood by, pen in hand, for the purpose of registering the names of the sailors and Marines, who, as they gave them, settled the conditions of their engagement.***"

The largest and best-armed galley ploughing the Mediterranean in the Middle Ages was that one encountered by Richard the Lion-Hearted, according to the historian Matthew Paris, "on the 3rd of June, 1191, near the coast of Syria." It was carrying reinforcements to the Unbelievers who were besieging Acre. The British attacked this gigantic vessel, a dromon, in their lighter galleys and sank it.

All the maritime states of this period used soldiers as Marines, or had a special corps of such sea-soldiers; but space will not permit to give the many details.

In 1545 Francis I, of France, had a magnificent carack constructed in Normandy. It was called the "Great Carack." Henry VIII ordered an equally handsome one constructed.

Let us once more look towards the Far East. Piracy was rampant in the Inland Sea of Japan in the 10th Century. Sumitomo was sent to destroy it but, like Captain Kidd of later days, he turned pirate himself, and Yoshifuru was despatched to overcome Sumitomo.
The latter had 1,500 vessels and Yoshifuru commanded a mere 200; but he wiped out the pirates with the assistance of Sumitomo's chief lieutenant who sold out. Bushi, as the Japanese Professional soldiers (who served more at sea than on land) were called, served on these vessels.

In the Spring of 1019 A.D., the Toi, originally called Sushen, poured into Japan. The Japanese assembled a fleet of thirty-eight ships and eventually drove the Toi out. The 12th century brought civil war to Japan between the Taira and Minamoto clans and it culminated in a series of naval battles. The naval battle of Ichi-no-Tani was not decisive. It drove the Taira out of Harima but did not cripple their large "fleet which gave them a great advantage." The "key of the situation for the Minamoto was to wrest the command of the sea from the Taira! Orders were given to "collect or construct a fleet" of "war junks." This was soon accomplished.

In the naval battle of Yashimi, which still remains one of the most extraordinary military feats on record, the Minamoto, led by their famous leader, Yoshitsune, defeated the Taira, on March 21, 1185. It was "a day of tempest," and Yoshitsune called for volunteers to run over to the opposite coast and attack Yashimi, under cover of the storm. About 150 daring spirits responded. They embarked in five war junks and some of the sailors disliking the service, were "ordered to choose between manning the vessels or dying by the sword."

The surprise and the success was complete. On the 24th Yoshitsune reinforced with thirty war junks, attacked the enemy fleet
in Shido Bay and when Kagetoki (of the Minatomo) arrived off Kashima on March 25, 1185 "with some four hundred war-vessels, he found only the ashes of the Taira palaces and palisades."

During the battle one of the best Taira archers made Yoshitsune a target, "but Sato Tsunginobu, member of the band of trusted comrades who had accompanied the Minamoto hero from Mutsu, interposed his body and received the arrow destined for Yoshitsune." Sato was a Bushi, one of the Japanese Soldiers serving at Sea. The decisive battle of Dan-no-Ura followed on April 25, 1185 and was won by the Minamoto. The bushi fought valiantly on both sides in the battle which was a ship-to-ship action.

In November, 1274, a Mongolian Army of 25,000 Mongol braves and 15,000 Koreans invaded Japan embarked in 900 vessels manned by 8,000 Koreans and soon after, this Armada attacked Tsushima and Iki, Japan. Two hundred Japanese bushi fought to the death and held up the Mongols, but on November 20 the Mongols finally effected a landing. A land battle followed. The movements of the Mongol army were directed by "sound of drum" by the Commander-in-Chief. While the fight was going on a fierce gale sprang up and the Mongols embarked and put to sea. A storm sank many of the vessels with a loss of about 13,200 men.

In 1281 the Mongols again invaded Japan. The Mongol fleet consisted of one thousand Korean ships carrying about 340,000 men. This force appeared off Tsushima in May, 1281.
The Mongols landed but were not very successful. On August 14, 1281, a terrible tempest shattered the Tartar flotilla. It was a stupendous disaster for the Mongols.

About this time the Tartars overcame the Chinese. The Tartars pursued the Chinese Emperor and his Army and Navy "both by Sea and Land," to "Quang-tong, which is the last province of China." The Tartar General "obliged the Emperor to go on board his Fleet, with the Lords of his Court and the remains of his Army, which consisted of 130,000 men." The captive Emperor died, and was succeeded by Ti-ping who was on board his fleet. The "Chinese Fleet being overtaken by the Tartarian Fleet, could not avoid an engagement, which proved very bloody and decisive in favor of the Tartars, who gained a complete victory." The Chinese official who had charge of the Emperor threw himself in the sea with the young Emperor rather than be captured. The old Empress and most all the officers followed. One "General, who commanded a part of the Chinese Fleet, fought his way through the enemy and escaped their fury," only to sink in a terrible storm. Over 100,000 Chinese perished in this fight, either by the sword or the sea.

On June 24, 1340, Edward III utterly defeated the French Fleet at the Battle of Sluys. Edward sailed with "two hundred sayle of good shyppes well furnished with men of warre." The French "were good men of warre on the sea," and the battle began.
The ships grappled, "Archers and Crosbowes beganne to shoote, and men-of-armes" fought "hande to hande." The great ship "Christopher was first wonne by the Englishmen," and fortified "with Archers," and sent to fight the Genoese.

For a long time in England there were no men-of-war as we consider them today. When fighting-ships were required, merchantmen were impressed, transformed into war vessels, armed and manned. The few ships belonging to the Crown were really merchant-men and had to be transformed when needed for war purposes. In 1377 such ships carried fifty men-at-arms and fifty bowmen - their Marine Detachments. This system lasted well up to the end of the 15th Century, but in the time of Edward III, there would appear to have been more provision made for a force of Marines for in an account of his expenses in the 21st year of his reign are found the words: "Here ensue *** and also the number of soldiers as well by land and sea and shyppes retayned in the warres of the saide Kinge," etc.

In 1417 the largest ship carried 75 men-at-arms and 148 archers, while a small barge had only 4 lancers and 4 archers.

"The adventurers who served on board vessels chartered by a sovereign or a foreign State were usually" relatives or friends of the captains. The "chosen band which under the name of Retenue de Poupe" or "poop guard" in the French and Mediterranean war-vessels of Medieval times was "entrusted with the duty of defending the Captain's Flag was solely"
recruited from among these adventurers." They were stationed in the same part of the ship as were the Marines of later days, and seem to have formed an important part of its fighting force. These Sea Soldiers "died at their post rather than yield." "The Warriors of the Sea were always distinguished for their extreme intrepidity and boldness." They were also called "galley soldiers."

By the time Henry VIII ascended the throne of England there was a regularly organized Royal Navy, and the Marine, or Sea Soldier, was again in evidence.

In 1512, the King's ship, the Regent, carried "seven hundred Soldiers, Mariners and Gunners" attached to the ship in addition to an expeditionary force.

The Henri Grace a Dieu (or Henry Imperial) in 1514 was manned by 300 seamen and 400 soldiers. The latter, however, were entered as the "Retinue of Lord Ferars." The Gabriel Royal also carried such retinues.

A set of general orders for the regulation of the Royal British forces both by land and sea drawn up by the King's orders by Thomas Audley, some time prior to 1532, shows that the main idea of naval tactics then was to get the weather-gauge and then board. In boarding "then enter with your best men."

In 1546 Henry VIII's six largest battleships carried "Souldiers" as follows: Harry Grace de Dieu, 349; Mary Rose, 185; Peter, 158; Matthew, 138; Great Barke, 136; Jesus of Lubeck, 118.
A few years after we find the ships of the King carrying "souldiers" as follows: Tryumph, 200; Elizabeth, 200; White Bear, 200; Victory, and Primrose, 160 each; Mary Rose and Hope, 120 each; Bonaventure, Philip and Mary, and Lyon, 110 each; Dreadnought, 80; with smaller numbers on the Swiftsure, Swallows, Anthlope, Jennett, Foresight, Aide, Bull, Tiger, Falcon, Aibates (Achates), Handmayd, Barke of Bullen, and George.

In 1578, the Triumph, the largest of Good Queen Bess's ships carried a complement of 450 seamen, 50 gunners, and 200 soldiers.

Twelve years later there were no "souldiers," in Queen Elizabeth's ships, only "such gentlemen as go voluntarily and the commanders make choice of." However, the hired ships carried from 50 to 150 soldiers.

During Drake's time the "soldiers" or Marines were crowded off his ships to give place for the "gentlemen Adventurers" or "Gentlemen Volunteers," as they were called by Americans in our Revolution. The "gentlemen" were attracted to the service by the lure of the treasures on the Spanish Main. This system was criticised by Dr. John Dee who recommended soldiers "hardened well to brook all rage and disturbance at sea" and "understanding all manner of fight and service at sea, so that in time of great need, that expert and hardy crew of some thousands of Sea Soldiers would be to this realm a treasure incomparable." He pointed out the danger in time of great
need of using "fresh-water soldiers" and claimed that "skil-
ful Sea Soldiers are also on land far more trainable to all
martial exploits" than the Land Soldier. Queen Elizabeth had
a frugal mind and was quite satisfied to thus save the expense
of Sea Soldiers.

The Elizabethan period was essentially one of transition
and evolution in naval matters. The old Mediaeval system,
under which men-of-war were merely vehicles for moving about
detachments of soldiers was dead. The advent of the sailing
ships had killed it. Fleets in those early days were raised
and manned, not for the purpose of meeting the enemy at sea
but with the specific object of transporting a force of the
military to land on the enemy's coast. It was often hard to
say whether the commander of a ship, a regiment, or an expedi-
tion, was soldier, sailor, or both together.

Santo Domingo was one of the chief jewels in the Spanish
crown. But two or three cities in the old country could rival
it for strength, size and beauty. It was known to be strongly
fortified. In 1585 or 1586 Drake arrived in Dominican waters
and decided to capture this Spanish prize. He carried on the
vessels of his fleet a large number of soldiers and "Gentlemen
adventurers," that formed what we today would call an expedi-
tion of Marines. In fact Drake's Expedition did not differ
much in principle from the expedition of American Marines
which occupied Santo Domingo in 1916. A secret landing was
made at "a practicable landing-place some ten miles from the
harbor" of Santo Domingo City. "Drake ordered the whole of
the troops into the boats and small craft of the fleet,"
that is in pinnaces and other ship-boats. "When all were
embarked," Drake "placed himself at the head of the flotilla
and in person piloted it through the surf." He then anchored
his fleet off the town, bombarded it, lowered his boats as
if to land, all of which caused the Spaniards to believe that
the main landing was to be made at that time. Immediately
after, however, "a loud alarm of drums and trumpets upon the
right rear told" the Spaniards "of the trap into which they
had fallen; with music playing and standards flying, Carleill's
force to the number of over a thousand men were seen advanc-
ing in two columns," which after a brief fight captured Santo
Domingo City.

In Drake's Lisbon Expedition of 1587, we have 17,000 sol-
diers and pioneers, 3,200 English and 900 Dutch Sailors and
1,500 officers and "Gentlemen Volunteers." The soldiers and
Marines when embarked, were expected to make themselves useful
in the ordinary work of the ship.

It would appear that the regular Marines were withdrawn
from sea service about the time of the Armada fight.
A state paper states that until the year 1588 "soldiers and
Mariners were then usually divided, but that, and later exper-
ience hath taught us instead of 'fresh-water soldiers' (as
they call them) to employ only seamen." But in 1602 a
detachment of soldiers, about one-third of the whole crew, were
allocated to each ship.

A suggestion for a Marine Corps was made to Charles II (who began his reign in 1660) by Sir Bernard Gasgoine. It was to be composed of twenty "foot companies, under the name of Companies of the Sea (as they have done in France under the name of the Regiment de Marina) for the use of the sea," each company to consist of "150 soldiers all Mariners by profession, and unmarried. The Captain of each company should be fitted to command the vessel and his Lieutenant, "a good foot officer." The command of these companies was not to be sold but given for "personal valor."

And so, during the latter part of the reign of James I, the "Soldier by Sea," was officially omitted from the complements of the British men-of-war and did not appear again until the institution of the Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot by an Order in Council of King Charles II, dated October 26, 1664.

But though there were no special Marine Regiments under the Commonwealth, "the regiments of Goffe and Ingoldsby" served as Marines in Blake's Fleet in the actions with the Dutch in 1652 and in the battles of February 18, 19, 20, 1653. The "soldiers" behaved "with great courage and gallantry," in these engagements.

On July 3, 1652, Cromwellian soldiers fought against the Dutch in a naval action. "The Redcoats of Colonel Goff's Regiment that were aboard the Speaker" went down rather than surrender.
There were many ships engaged and the "English Red Coats" used "small shot and hand grenades" with killing effect and then boarded.

The experiment of using Army troops aboard the vessels of the British Navy had been made during the latter part of the reign of King James I, up to 1664, but proved unsuccessful. During that period, service afloat was so unpopular that when it was known that the recruits might be sent aboard ship, none appeared. To meet this condition the "Admiral's Regiment" of Marines was authorized.

On the 26th of October, 1664, Charles II, at a Court held at Whitehall, affixed his seal to the Order in Council which gave birth to the Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot, "the care of all of which is recommended to the Duke of Albemarle, his Grace Lord General of his Maj's Forces.

The "Admiral's Regiment" as this organization of Marines was termed, consisted of 1,200 "Land Souldjers" divided into six companies of two hundred men each. Although described as "Land Souldjers" in the Order in Council, they were raised for service afloat, for in the preamble of the Order it is stated that it was issued upon a report received from the Lords of the Admiralty. The colors of this regiment were gold and red.

A well-known military author, writing on this subject says: "It having been found necessary on many occasions to embark a number of soldiers on board our ships of war, and
mere landsmen being at first extremely unhealthy, and for some time, until they had been accustomed to the sea, in a great measure unservicable, it was at length judged expedient to appoint certain regiments for that service, who were trained to the different modes of sea-fighting, and also made useful in some of those manoeuvres of a ship, where a great number of hands were required; these, from the nature of their duty, were distinguished by the appellations of maritime soldiers and Marines."

The Marines "were expected to be more or less familiar with the duties of seamen."

It is difficult to realize, in the absence of any historical matter bearing on the subject, the actual cause which prompted the King to the raising of this new regiment, seeing that the Convention Parliament had resolutely determined against a standing army not only as causing "a perpetual trembling in the nation" but also as being "inconsistent with the happiness of any kingdom."

The Act of Disbandment, vague in many of its conditions, appears to have sanctioned the maintenance of such a guard as the King "shall think fit to dispose of and provide for at his own charge," and it may, therefore, be within the bounds of possibility that Charles, whilst desirous of acquiescing in the determined attitude of his subjects, as also of Parliament, on this subject, and equally anxious of satisfying his own inclinations, realized the feasibility of supplementing the
permanent armed strength of the nation, by raising a regiment, ostensibly for sea service, but really as an extension of that system by "which monarchy flourished in all its plenitude of sovereign power under the guardian sword of a standing army."

The changes which were taking place in naval warfare called also for corresponding changes in the personnel. "At an early period the sea was regarded as a common highway for military expeditions," the commanding officers of fleets were often soldiers in training and by instinct, whilst the bulk of the crew were drawn from the same class, and not carried for the purposes of facilitating, or assisting in, the navigation of the ships in which they were borne, but merely as men-at-arms destined for some military objective as distinct from a naval one.

No authority can be traced for this singular idea of raising and training men as soldiers, and then suddenly transferring them to the totally distinct duties of foremast men. It is perfectly ludicrous to suggest that a regiment should be raised simply for the purpose of training soldiers to be entered as sailors as soon as they became disciplined soldiers.

While authorities do not seem altogether clear as to the special reasons which led to the formation of the Royal Marines, Grose wrote that they were authorized for expeditionary purposes. "Experience hath shewn," wrote he "that these regiments have been very useful, but more especially upon fitting out squadrons of ships for an immediate expedition; for as they are constantly quartered, when not at sea, as near the
principal ports as possible, namely, Plymouth, Portsmouth, and Chatham, so were they with great facility put on board such ships as had most occasion for them; for they were under the immediate direction of the Admiralty."

The true object, therefore, of the Marine force at its inception was not that of maintaining discipline and order among the "turbulent and refractory seamen of the period," but of serving with the Navy as a military body adapted to naval conditions. The need for an "expeditionary force" of soldiers trained to the ways of the sea was as desirable then as now. Not only for what are termed "landing parties" was it desirable to have the Marines in the fleet but for the purpose of having a military force available to take advantage of the "surprise" in actions against strong points ashore, after the naval force had done its part. It was recognized by the "Fathers" of the early British Navy that such a force was not only necessary but that it could be maintained at an efficient standard only by being part of the naval service and serving on board the naval vessels. Nobly have the British Marines performed this duty.

That the origin of the British Marines lay in the performance of expeditionary duty is very clearly brought out in their history, which shows that they participated in the following: one company under Churchill (later Duke of Marlborough) served in a composite regiment with the French Army in France.
against the Dutch (1672-1674); one company of Marines formed
a part of a provisional battalion of the Virginia Expedition
(1676); a large expeditionary force of at least 9 companies of
Marines and probably seven more arrived at Ostend to fight
with the Dutch against France (1678); a company of Marines
formed a part of a provisional battalion that proceeded to
Tangiers (1680); at battle with the French of Beachy Head
(1690); Siege of Cork (1690); detachments of Marines went
with Colonel Farrington's Regiment to Jamaica (1692); Gibral-
tar, where the "British Marines gained an immortal honor," for
which they wear "Gibraltar on colours, headdress and accoutre-
ments" (1704); Expedition to Toulon, Sardinia, Minorca and
others (immediately after Gibraltar): Barcelona (1704 and
1705); Ostend (1706); Leake's Expedition to Balearic Isles
(1706); St. Estevan (1707); Lerida (1707); Toulon (1707); Sar-
dinia (1708); Minorca (1708); Isle of Cette (1710); Dunkirk
(1711); Annapolis Royal or Port Royal, America (1710); Quebec,
America, (1711); Carthagena, America, (1741); Belle Isle (1761);
and Leeward Islands—Martinique and Guadaloupe (1758).

Lord St. Vincent wrote Lord Spencer on June 30, 1797:
"Marines. - A very considerable Corps should be kept up, and I
hope to see the day when there is not another foot-soldier in
the Kingdom, in Ireland, or the Colonies, except the King's
Guard and artillery. The colonels of regiments might be pro-
vided for during their lives by annuities equal to their pre-
sent pay and emoluments."
The Marines of Great Britain have taken part in all the campaigns of their country both on land and sea. At least four excellent histories of the Royal Marines have been published and many articles in their magazine The Globe and Laurel. The Dutch, Spanish, French, Portuguese, Russian, German, Italian, Brazilian, and other navies all had Marines or corresponding personnel at one time or another.

Let us now turn to the Western Hemisphere. It is like a book whose early pages have never been read.
1. See MacCurdy, Human Origins; if the earth is between a billion and a million years old and man has been roaming it for about 100,000 years it is evident that beyond 9,000 years of recorded history of mankind there is a possibility of civilizations existing and disappearing without any chance of us ever learning of them.


3. Warre, in a lecture beginning April 7, 1876 before the Royal United Service Institution, in England, solved this problem in these words: "The subject before us is that of Ancient Naval Tactics; but, having regard to its vastness and complexity, it will be as well at once to introduce some limitations," and by "Ancient, therefore, we will understand Greek and Roman - dismissing altogether those interesting questions concerning the Assyrian, Phoenician, Egyptian, and Carthaginian navies." (Journ., R.U.S. Inst., XX, 593).


5. Potter, Antiquities of Greece, II, 121.

6. Boats with oars are represented in the earliest pictorial monuments of Egypt dating from 2,500 B.C.; "In the contemporary relief representing a battle fought in the Mediterranean about 1,000 B.C., the Egyptian war-ships" have "from twelve to twenty-two rowers apiece according to the requirements of the sculptor" (Torr, "Ancient Ships," 2); the Egyptian ships on the Red Sea about 1,250 B.C., "had one mast with two yards and carried one large square sail." (Id., 78); "the Phoenician ships of about 700 B.C., had one mast with one yard and carried a square-sail," and "these ships then were rigged like the ships that fought in the Mediterranean three centuries before." (Id., 79); Wells, Outline of Hist., 156-157; See Rawlinson, Herodotus, I, 188-189, for boats of Assyria, Armenia and Babylon; See also Culver, Book of Old Ships, 9.

7. Potter, Antiq. of Greece, II, 134; Torr, Ancient Ships, 79; R.U.S.I. Journ., XX, 618; The Washington Post, June 30, 1931 carried the following information concerning "the first sails" that "when the Phoenicians tired of rowing they erected trees on their vessels so that the wind would blow against them and help propel the boat. This later gave them the idea of masts and sails."

Rawlinson, in translating the word Epibatai explains that it means "the armed portion of the crew, corresponding to our English Marines." So also Dr. Dale, in his translation of Thucydides, renders the word Epibatai as "the heavy-armed soldiers who served on board ship, answering to our British Marines." The eminent Greek scholar, Dr. Arnold, takes the same view. The learned historian of Greece, Mr. Grote, speaks of Epibatai as Marines, and observes that "though not forming a corps permanently distinct, they correspond in function to the English Marines." In the statement that they did not form a distinct corps, Mr. Grote seems to differ from other authorities. Boeckh probably one of the very best authorities on the antiquities of Athens, who is so freely quoted by Mr. Grote in his history of Greece, and referred to by Dr. William Smith and Rich in their dictionaries of Roman and Greek antiquities, in speaking of matters concerning the Athenian Navy, remarks that "The complements of the swift triremes consisted of two descriptions of men: the soldiers intended for the defence of the vessels, who were also called Epibatae, but indeed in a more limited sense than ordinary, and the sailors. These Epibatae were evidently distinct from the land soldiers, whether hoplitae, peltastae or cavalry, and belonged to the ships." (Boeckh, Public Economy of the Athenians, translated by Lamb, 381-383); They had, moreover, their own officers, called trierarchoi. (Aldrich, Hist. of M.C., 24, quoting Captain S.B. Luce, U.S.N.); Boeckh frequently used the word "Marines." (id., 380, 381); The Cretan, Egyptian, Assyrian, Persian, Phoenician, Syracusan, and other ancient Marines also have definite names in the ancient languages.

Potter, Antiquities of Greece, II, 138; Warre in lecture "Ancient Tactics" in Royal United Service Institution Journal, XX (1876), 596, said: "We hear nothing in Homer of the ram, or of the distinction between rowers and seamen and Marines, which is so marked at a later period."

Potter, Antiquities of Greece, II, 138-141; "The Sea-Soldier, or Marine, formed part of the complement of ancient war-vessels. The Grecian troops employed on this service were known as Epibatai being quite distinct from the unfortunate Eretai or slaves, who tugged at the oars, and the Nautai, or sailors, who were exempt from this drudgery, but
11. (Cont.). performed all the other duties in the ship.

(Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 2); "Sea warfare was at first like land warfare, combats of armed men at close quarters, their ships in contact and grappled," and Marines were an important factor in all such naval battles. "Later there was maneuvering and injury to vessels by ramming, or breaking off of oars, or by missile-throwing engines,

(Captain Roy C. Smith, U.S.N., in Nav.Inst.Proc., September, 1924, 1296, ); This brought a reduction in the number of Marines serving on board the ships; but expeditionary service became more important. For story of the "Antiquity of Marines" by Capt. R. F. Collum see Journal Mil. Science Institute, Vol. IX, p. 243; See Hamersly's "Naval Cyclopedia" Pp. 465-476 for information by Captain Henry C. Cochrane, U.S.M.C., about Ancient Marines; For Ancient methods of signaling see article by Captain S. B. Luce, U.S.Navy, in Johnson's Cyclopedia; The crews of ancient warships, including the N.C.O. or petty officers, were divided into three groups: (1) Rowers, (2) sailors, (3) Marines. * * * The Marines were simply heavy-armed land troops (hoplites) detailed for duty on shipboard. They were used for boarding the enemy's ships, for repelling boarders, or for forming a mobile landing force to operate in the enemy's territory. Their numbers varied in accordance with the character and object of the expedition on which they were embarked. Generally speaking, in proportion to as the expedition was naval character, the smaller was the number of Marines taken on board. Thus, at Salamis, when the system of land warfare at sea still largely prevailed, the number of Marines attached to each warship was eighteen, of whom four were archers and the rest heavy-armed; while in the days of Phormio, half a century later, when naval tactics had reached a high stage of development, the total number had been reduced to ten which was barely sufficient to repel boarders during the few seconds in which the warship was intact with its rammed foe. When the object of the expedition was military as well as naval a much larger number of Marines, often as high as fifty to a vessel, was embarked on the Greek warship. The Romans, with their much larger vessels and their incurable instinct for land warfare at sea, went a great deal further. Their quinqueremes carried as high as one hundred and twenty Marines to each ship, and to their valor - we are told by the most competent of witnesses - Rome's good fortune at sea was due. For although nautical science says Polybius, "contributes largely to success in sea fights, still it is the courage of the Marines that turns the tide most decisively in favor of victory." The normal crew of the trireme, as we have seen, consisted of one hundred and seventy rowers, seventeen sailors and ten Marines. These numbers included the petty officers but
were exclusive of the trierarch and the four subaltern commissioned officers, who brought the ship's company up to a total of two hundred and two. The Roman quinquereme Polybius tells us, was manned by three hundred rowers and one hundred and twenty Marines. * * * (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, pp. 17-19)


13. Potter, Antiq. of Greece, II, 140; See also Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 4-5; "In very early times we find the elevated forecastle," serving "to protect the foredeck from the waves, and the crew and Marines from a raking fire as they approached the enemy." (R.U.S.I.Jour.,XX, 601).

14. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 17-20; Jour.R.U.S.I., XX,602; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 4, states that as early as 500 B.C., the division of the Greek ship's company into seamen, Marines and rowers was customary; See also Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 14, that mentions Greek "Marines."

15. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 17-20; Warre in Royal United Service Institute Journal said: "The number of Marines seems to have varied greatly and depended much upon the style of fighting preferred," for manning Ancient Floating War Towers see Kirkman, Primitive Carriers, etc.

16. Potter, Antiq. of Greece, II, 124, states that the "ship Argo." was "rowed with fifty oars, being the first of the long ships, and invented by Jason; Grote, History of Greece, I, 234, describes a landing party followed by a battle.

17. Rawlinson, Herodotus, I, 28-31, 300-303; Potter, Antiquities of Greece, II, 92, states that the ram is said "by Pliny to have been invented in the Trojan War, and to have given rise to the fable of the wooden horse."; During the French Naval War in 1800 Captain Daniel Carmick said being cooped up in the Sally prior to the capture of the Sandwich put him "in mind of the Wooden Horse at Troy."; Thucydides said that in the Trojan War there were used "fifty-oared vessels and galleys of war." (Jowett, Thucydides, I, 38-39); The Greeks assembled a force "at Aulis, in Boeotia, consisting of 1,186 ships and more than 100,000 men - a force outnumbering by more than ten to one anything that the Trojans themselves could oppose, and superior to the defenders of Troy even with all her Allies included." (Grote, Hist. of Greece, I, 289-290);
"Naval Architecture, Past and Present," in Harper's, XLIV, 514 gives interesting information, stating that the "largest of the Grecian Fleet at the Siege of Troy (1184 B.C.) carried only 120 men," (p.514) and described the Corvus (p.515).

See Torr, Ancient Ships.

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 28; See also Baikie, Sea Kings of Crete, 9, 76; Dale, Thucydides, I, 57; Jour. R.U.S.Inst., XX, 596; "Herodotus though he in some places speaks of Minos as a person historically cognizable, yet in one passage severs him pointedly from the generation of men." (Grote, Hist. of Greece, I, 229); It is interesting to note that the Marines in 1827 fought Greek pirates. See also Commodore Foxhall A. Parker, The Fleets of the World - The Galley Period, p. 24.

Baikie, Sea Kings of Crete, 144-146; Rear Ad. Fiske, The Art of Fighting, 67-76, wrote: The earliest military leaders were in land-fighting. The first great strategist about whom history tells us was Thutmose III of Egypt, who reigned from about 1501 to 1447 B.C. He is worthy of the title "First Empire Builder." His principal campaigns were those in which he captured Kadesh, and when necessary he used ships to transport his Armies. An Associated Press Despatch, April 24, 1925, cited Prof. James H. Breasted of the University of Chicago as stating that he had developed photographic plates of inscriptions recording the first great naval battle of the World which was fought between the Egyptians (of the time of Rameses III, about 1200 B.C.) and the Philistines who had been driven to the sea by the influx of the barbarians who later became the cultured people of Greece. (Wash. Star, April 24, 1925, 45); about 525 B.C. Egyptians defeated Cypriots and Phoenicians in a sea-fight (Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 4).

Wells, Outline of History, 160.

Baikie, Sea Kings of Crete, 76-77, 224.

Wells, Outline of History, 161.

R. Brooke, P. Duhalde's Hist. of China, I; See also Wells, Outline of Hist., 150; "To the Chinese probably belongs the honor of first using vessels propelled by sail alone; but the early history of that remarkable nation is so enveloped in obscurity that no reliable information can be obtained with regard to the subject under consideration." (Harper's, March, 1872, XLIV, 522-523); Commodore Foxhall A. Parker, U.S.Navy tells us that the Chinese "with an eye painted on the bows of their cruisers" they ventured to sea, and that "Commerce at a very remote period along the coast of Hindoustan, and across the Arabian Sea even to the Persian Gulf."
25. Brinkley, Hist. of the Japanese People, 22-24; Jane, Imperial Japanese Navy, 1-2; Kaempfer, Hist. of Japan, I, 145-146; Kaempfer, I, 277, writes that the first war mentioned in Japanese History is that in 471 B.C., "between the Provinces of Jetz and Go;" on I, 280, he states that the "first men of war were built in Japan," in 78 B.C.; See also Elphinstone, History of India.

26. Chatterton, The Marvels of the Ship, 36; The Bible discloses that King Hiram of Tyre sent Solomon cedar of Lebanon only for the House of the Lord, not for swift galleys of war. Hiram sent cedar "in flotes by sea to Joppa," from where Solomon's burden-bearers carried it to Jerusalem (II Chron. Ch. II, 1,3,8,11,16,18; I Kings Ch. X, 17, 21; See also Ezra, Ch. III, 7). Solomon had some sort of ships but they were probably merchant vessels (I Kings, Ch. X, 11,12,22, 26-28).

27. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 2; Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, states "Indeed the earliest notice we have in the Mediterranean contains a reference to them: 'Zebulun shall dwell at the haven of the sea; and he shall be for an haven of ships; and his border shall be unto Zidon.' (Genesis, XLIX, 13); See also Knut Gjerset, History of Iceland, 1.


29. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 41-43; Wells, Outline of History; See also Baikie, Sea Kings of Crete; Rawlinson, Story of Phoenicia, Ch. XII; Cotterill and Little Ships and Sailors, 3; Knut Gjerset, History of Iceland, 1; Noah, Travels in Europe and Africa, 211.

30. Rawlinson, Phoenicia, 136-138.

31. Wells, Outline of History, 252; "As early as the thirteenth century B.C., Greek vessels were sailing over the sea and five hundred years later the inhabitants of the Greek peninsula and the Western coasts of Asia Minor were keenly interested in maritime affairs." (Chatterton, The Marvels of the Ship, 38-39).

32. Rawlinson, Herodotus, I, 162; Dale, I, 9, quotes Thucydides as stating that "the Phocaeans, while founding Massalia [Marseilles], conquered the Carthaginians in a sea-fight;" Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 44.


34. Torr, Ancient Ships, 4.
35. Jowett, Thucydides, I, 37-38; Dale, Thucydides, I, 9; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 43.


37. Dale, Thucydides, I, 9, as does Jowett, I, 38, is quoted as saying that Samos in the reign of Cambyses of Persia had a "Powerful Navy."

38. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 45.

39. Rawlinson, Phoenicia, 197-200; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 45, 47; Rawlinson, Herodotus, III, 111.

40. Aldrich, Hist., M.C., 22, quoting Captain S.B. Luce; See also Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 4, 5; Warre in Royal United Service Institution Journal, XX, 602; says: "Xerxes great fleet carried 30 Marines to each trireme."


42. Rawlinson, Phoenicia, 199-200; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 45.

43. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 4.

44. Major General Commandant John A. Lejeune, in M.C.Gaz., December, 1923, 249-250. See General Lejeune's article in the Military Engineer reprinted in pamphlet; "Marines of Phoenicia, Egypt, Greece, Carthage and Rome all performed the same character of mission as that of the modern American Marines - serving as soldiers on board the fighting naval ships and as expeditions prepared to carry on land operations in support of the fleets." (Major-General Commandant Ben H. Fuller in Leatherneck, June, 1931, p. 9, quoted from U.S. Naval Institute Proceedings.) An article entitled "A Century-Old Tribute to the Necessity of Marines with the Fleet," in Marine Corps Gazette, March 1916, pp. 19-24, is apropos and carries this note reading in part: "A remarkable tribute to the necessity of a full complement of Marines with the Fleet is found in a publication issued in London in 1824. The publication in question is entitled Naval Battles from 1744 to the Peace in 1814, Critically reviewed and Illustrated, by Chas. Ekins, Rear Admiral, C.B.K. W.N."

45. Rawlinson, Herodotus, III, 134-137; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 47.

46. Rawlinson, Herodotus, III, 172-190; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 48; It is here we have the origin of our
46. (Cont.)
"Horse Marines," for "Horse Transports" formed part of the Persian Fleet and many Sea Soldiers in their forces rode the horses when landing. That there were ancient sea-going Horse-Marines is vouched for by Athenaeus when he wrote that "there were also a great number of Cabins for the Marine soldiers, together with twenty stables for horses, ten on each side of the deck, with good accommodations for the horsemen and grooms." (Parker, quoting Burchett's "The Fleets of the World - The Galley Period," p. 22)

47. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 48; See also Rawlinson, Herodotus, III, 260-279, and in III, 276, we read that "on board of every ship was a band of soldiers, Persians, Medes or Sacans," while in IV, 43, he states that "each of these vessels had on board, besides native soldiers, 30 fighting men, who were either Persians, Medes, or Sacans," which gives an addition of 36,210; Grote, History of Greece, V, 80; Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 41; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 48.

48. Grote, History of Greece, V, 51-52, 54-55; Creasy, Decisive Battles, 33; Herodotus (Rawlinson, Herodotus, III, 310) wrote that Themistocles induced the Athenians to forbear the distribution of the silver "and build with the money 200 ships"; Potter, Antiquities of Greece, II, 142-143, states that "the first that engaged them in this enterprise was Themistocles, who, considering their inability to oppose the Persians by land, and the commodiousness of their situation for naval affairs, interpreted the oracle that advised to defend themselves with walls of wood" and to use the proceeds of the silver mine to build a fleet; Rawlinson, Herodotus, III, 307-309, states that Themistocles "counseled his countrymen to make ready to fight on board their ships, since they were the wooden wall in which the god told them to trust."

49. Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 46, 90, 83-84; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 49-50; See also James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 14-20; The sea forces of King Xerxes in the great invasion of 480 B.C. according to Herodotus, amounted to 1207 triremes and 3000 penteconters, trieconters, light boats and transports, the whole being manned by 481,400 sailors of subject nations, and 36,210 Persians serving as Marines. (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient history, 48)

50. Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 41; Cary, Herodotus, 425; See also Grote, History of Greece, V, 80.

51. Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 41; Grote, History of Greece, V, 80; Cary, Herodotus, p. 425.
Felton, Greece, Ancient and Modern, II, 117; See also Fiske, Art of Fighting, 79; Creasy, Decisive Battles, 33-34.

James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 13-14; See also Fiske, Art of Fighting, 88-93, for description of Battle of Salamis; Lamb, Boeckh, Pub. Econ. of the Athenians, 378-379, states that according to Herodotus "the crews in the 1,207 ships of Xerxes at 241,000 men assuming for each, including the usual number of native Marines, or Epibatae, which belonged to each vessel, *** the thirty Epibatae, who, besides these, were on board of each ship, did not belong to the usual complement of the vessel."

James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 14-20; If Thutmose III, was the first great strategist of history, Themistocles was the second. (Fiske, Art of Fighting, 83); See also Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 54-55.

Cary, Herodotus, 467; Aldrich, Hist. of U.S.M.C., 22, quoting Captain S.B. Luce, U.S.N.

Aldrich, Hist. of U.S.M.C., 22, quoting Captain S.B. Luce, U.S.N.; See also Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 45; About 40 Epibatae were usually carried on board the largest class of triremes; "but at the Battle of Salamis, 480 B.C., the Athenian triremes are said to have carried not more than 18 of these sea-soldiers upon their hatches fighting stages and [gangways]. Four of these were archers, and the remainder were armed with javelins and shields." (Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers, I, 4); "Thus when we read of Themistocles placing his 18 warriors on the hatches of each of his galleys, in attacking the Persian Fleet, we receive it as synonymous with the saying that he had stationed his Marines on the booms," reported A.&.N. Chronicle, V, No. 16, October 19, 1837, 241; Captain Luce wrote that "the largest number of Marines found aboard each of the 'swift ships' - that is the regular men-of-war, as distinguished from transports - at this period was forty." (Aldrich, Hist. of U.S.M.C., 22, quoting Captain S.B. Luce, U.S.N.); At the Salamis Battle there was room on the ships for only four bowmen and 14 hoplites in each trireme."

"At the beginning, as at Salamis, officers, Marines, and rowers were Athenians." (Gulick, Life of the Ancient Greeks, 199-206); It may not be out of place to give here one of the many incidents of the Battle of Salamis, as an illustration of the valor and mode of fighting of the Epibatae. Herodotus writes that: "A Samothracian vessel bore down on an Athenian and sunk it, but was attacked and crippled immediately by one of the AEginetan squadron.
Now the Samothracians were expert with the javelin, and aimed their weapons so well, that they cleared the deck of the vessel which had disabled their own, after which they sprang on board, and took it." (Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 141); Trireme in Peloponnesian War carried "on the average of 170 oarsmen, 30 supernumeraries or Marines, etc. (Cotterill and Little, 14.)

James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 14-20; Fiske in "The Art of Fighting," 45, states that "it was not until the Battle of Salamis in 480 B.C., that we have any connected account of their use in battle."

Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 260.

Rawlinson, Herodotus, IV, 248.

Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 76; See also Creasy, Decisive Battles, 34; The need of transporting soldiers in warships to a distant fighting grounds, about this time, led to Cimon's improvement, by which ships were given broader beam, and the decks at bow and stern were joined by bridges on which a considerable number of Marines could be brought into action. (Gulick, Life of the Ancient Greeks, 199-206).

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 45.

Gulick, The Life of the Ancient Greeks, 190-206.

Aldrich, Hist., U.S.M.C., 22, quoting Captain S.B.Luce, U.S.N.

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 67-69; "Some of the earlier naval battles of the Civil War were fought in very much the same way as the sea fight near Chemerium described by Thucydides," wrote Jowett in foot-note on page 69; "Both sides raised trophies and claimed the victory." (Jowett, Thucydides, I, 74).

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 118; Dale, Thucydides, I, 61-62.

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 123; See also Creasy, Decisive Battles, 34.

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 228.

Jowett, Thucydides, I, 244-253; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 17-20.
72. Creasy, Decisive Battles, 47-48; According to Thucydides, Alcibiades (who had escaped to Sparta) advised the Peloponnesians that they "must therefore in Sicily fight for the safety of Peloponnesus. Send some galleys thither instantly, put men on board who can work their own way over, and who, as soon as they land, can do duty as regular troops."
74. Jowett, Thucydides, III, 41-42; See also Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 98.
75. Jowett, Thucydides, III, 78-81, 115,154,191-195; See also Dale, Thucydides, II, 475-476; See also R.U.S.I., XX,602. The Sicilian Expedition of Athens. * * * No previous engagement, says Thucydides, had been so fierce and obstinate. Great was the eagerness * * *. The Marines too were full of anxiety that, when ship struck ship, the service on deck should not fall short of the rest; every one in his place assigned to him was eager to be foremost among his fellows. * * * All the time that another vessel was bearing down, the men on deck poured showers of javelins and arrows and stones upon the enemy; and when the two closed, the Marines fought hand to hand and endeavored to board. (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 105-106)
76. James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 21-24; rams were used very early - Phoenicians had them as early as 700 B.C. (Torr, Ancient Ships, 51-52); no mention of rams by Homer. (R.U.S.I., XX, 596); In the Second Speech of Nicias he said, in part, that Sicily was a strong foe who had "numerous hoplites, archers and javelin-men" etc. "Against such a power more is needed than an insignificant force of Marines. (Thucydides, translated by Jowett, p. 424) From the speech of Nicias to the Athenians before the final battle in the great harbor of Syracuse: * * * but we are obliged to fight a land battle on shipboard. * * * we have provided iron grapnelcs, which will prevent the ship striking us from retreating if the Marines are quick and do their duty. * * * When ship strikes ship refuse to separate until you have swept the enemy's heavy-armed from their docks. I am speaking to the hoplites (Marines) rather than to the sailors; for this is the special duty of the men on deck. *** Repel your enemies, and show that your skill even amid weakness and disaster is superior to the strength of another in
76. (Cont.)


80. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 116-119; Creasy, Decisive Battles, 56.


82. Wells, Outline of History, 324; In a Council of War before Tyre fell to him, Alexander said: "For the Phoenician sailors and Marines will not dare to put to sea in order to incur danger, on behalf of others, when their own cities are occupied by us." (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 126, quoting Arrian, "Anabasis of Alexander," II, 17).


84. Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 127.

85. Shuckburgh, History of Rome, 241-244; See also R.U.S.I., XX, 615.

86. Shuckburgh, History of Rome, 241-244; See also Shuckburgh, Polybius, I, 22.

87. M.C. Gazette, December, 1920, 356-358; Shuckburgh, History of Rome, 241-244; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 144; Creasy, Decisive Battles, 85; R.U.S.I., XX, 616. "In the first war with Carthage, which lasted from 264 to 241 B.C., the Romans adapted themselves to the water, built a Navy, destroyed the fleets of Carthage, and established the 'freedom of the seas' - for Rome and her Allies." (Infantry Journal, August, 1929, p. 125).

88. M.C. Gazette, December, 1920, 356-358; Shuckburgh, History of Rome, 241-244 states that the corvi or crows enabled "the Marines to board the enemy's vessel and fight as though on land;" There was exhibited at the Great Exhibition at Hyde Park, London, in June, 1851, a model of a
piratical galley of Labuan, part of the mast of which could "be let down on an enemy and form a bridge for boarders." (Creasy, Decisive Battles, 86); "The Romans, in their desire to neutralize the deadliness of the ram and convert sea warfare into something like a combat on land, hit on an extremely ingenious device. Realizing their deficiencies as seamen, and tacticians, as compared with the Carthaginians, they invented the famous 'crow' (corvus) or boarding bridge, whereby their invincible legionaries could cross to the decks of the enemy's vessel and over-power it. The 'crow', as will be seen, was used with signal effect in the First Punic War and was probably a decisive factor in the establishment of Rome's mastery at sea. The Greeks and the Romans alike, however, were forced to realize that this method of land warfare afloat, though often excellent for defensive purposes, was utterly inadequate for offensive sea warfare." (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 30); See also Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 144; Warre in Royal United Service Inst. Journal, XX, 616, wrote that "defeat was a certainty; but some ingenious spirit suggested" the "construction of a novel engine of warfare," the crow. Polybius wrote it was 24 feet high, 9 inches in diameter, who also compared the "iron claw" to the "knocker of a door." The crow bound the two vessels together; then the Marines, if the vessel was prow to prow, rushed two abreast over the bridge; The Greek word for the boarding bridge (called Corvus in Latin) was Korax, the derivative meaning of which was a raven-like beak for grappling. (Chatterton, Ships and Ways of Other Days, 62).


Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 2 - definition from Smith's Latin-English Dictionary; See also A.&.N.Chron., V, No. 16, 1837, 241; Potter, in his Antiquities of Greece, II, 140, wrote that "Soldiers that served at Sea" were, in Latin termed "Classiarii."

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 2 - definition from Smith's Latin-English Dictionary; id., 5; See also A.&.N. Chron., V, No. 16, 1837, 241; Unlike the Roman fleet their fleet contained no extra body of Marines, but was equipped solely for a naval engagement - a circumstance which though making for greater ease of maneuvering was a grave disadvantage for the fighting at close quarters which the Romans would surely try to force. (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 149).
93. Warre, Royal United Service Institution Jour., quoted by Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 5.

94. Shuckburgh, History of Rome, 241-244; Shuckburgh, Polybius, I, 26; R.U.S.I. Jour., XX, 618.

95. Wells, Outline of History, 403; the invention of the crow "paralysed the ram." (R.U.S.I. Jour., XX, 618).


97. M.C. Gaz., December, 1920, 356-358; Shuckburgh, Hist. of Rome, 241-244; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 144; Shuckburgh, Polybius, I, 33.

98. Shuckburgh, Polybius, I, 48, 57-59; "Having filled his ship with picked soldiers from the Army for Marines, Claudius put to sea at midnight." (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 159).


100. Shuckburgh, Polybius, I, 411-412. This operation is very suggestive of the capture of Fort Fisher in 1865 by the Federal Army, Navy and Marines.


102. Shuckburgh, Polybius, II, 176-179; The ship thus struck sank with all hands; but Autolycus and his comrades, as the sea poured into his vessel through the prow, were surrounded by the enemy. For a time they defended themselves gallantly, but at last Autolycus himself was wounded and fell overboard in his armor, while the rest of the Marines were killed fighting bravely. While this was going on, Theophiliscus came to the rescue with three quinqueremes, and though he could not save the ship, because it was now full of water, he yet stove in three hostile vessels, and forced their Marines overboard. Being quickly surrounded by a number of galleys and decked ships, he lost the greater number of his Marines after a gallant struggle on their part. (The Battle of Chios (201 B.C.) Polybius, XVI, 2-15; quoted from Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 230-234).


105. James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 25-29; Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 14; In the battle of Actium "a device was employed for throwing a grappling iron or harpoon at the end of a cable to the enemy's vessel," which was then hauled alongside and boarded. (Shepard, Sea Power in Ancient History, 33); Creasy, Decisive Battles, 120; Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 25-28.

106. Rodolfo Lanciana, Ancient Rome in the Light of Recent Excavations, 62; M.C.Gaz., December, 1920, 358.

107. Schomberg, Naval Chronology, I, 1-2; See also Bowen, The Sea Hist. and Romance, I, 1, 166, 168; Waddell, Phoenician Origin, Britons, Scots and Anglo-Saxons.


111. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 1-2; Bruce in his "History of the Roman Wall" mentions the Notitia Imperii which refers to "The Tribune of the First Marine Cohort, styled AEelia, at Tunnocelum". Says Cochrane: "Thus there was a First, and therefore a Second and possibly many other Marine Cohorts in this Roman Army." (History of Marine Corps by Capt. Henry C. Cochrane, USMC. in Hamersly's Naval Ency. p. 476).


113. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 2: The color of this uniform is of interest in view of the color of the present winterfield uniform of the Marines.

114. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 2.
Quoted by Green in his Short History of the English People.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 5; See also Schomberg, Naval Chronology, I, 1-2.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 5.

A.&.N.Chronicle, V, No. 16, October 19, 1837, 241; Britain's Sea Soldiers, Field, I, 5.

Jane, Imperial Japanese Navy, 4; Kaempfer, History of Japan, I, 282, says year was 201 and it was Empress Singu-kogu or Dein Gaukwoo - she had a child in Corea and had to return; Brinkley, history of Japanese People, 88; Allen, Chronological Index, Korea, 1; See also Bayard Taylor, Japan, in Our Day, 1-3; Griffis, Corea, 53-55.

Brinkley, History of the Japanese People, 99, 100, 126; 500 Karanos were built, "and there was assembled at Hyogo such a fleet as had never previously been seen in Japanese waters.


John Ross, Corea, Its History, 13-17, 69-74, 149-168; See also Allen, Chron.Index, Korea, 1-2.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 5.

Schomberg, Naval Chronology, I, 4.

Creasy, Decisive Battles, 187.

Creasy, Decisive Battles, 188-216; See also Royal United Service Institution Journal, 1873, 50; Lediard, Naval Hist., England, I, 2; Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 65.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 5; Creasy, Decisive Battles, 197-214.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 5, 6.

Schomberg, Naval Chronology, I, 7-8; D.A.R.Mag., Nov. 1919, 665-666; The weapons in use in English ships of war of the 13th century were bows and arrows, pikes or lances, axes, swords, and engines for flinging stones or other heavy missiles; and to them was added in or before the reign of Richard III, the famous invention known as Greek Fire. (Clowes, Royal Navy, I, 103); See also Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 67-86.
130. The galliot occupied an intermediate place between the
ship properly so called and the large galley. Two remark-
able galliots are mentioned in history, one of which was
an exact model of the celebrated Great Carack. It was
built at Venice to carry three hundred guns and five hun-
dred soldiers, besides its own crew of sailors. (LaCroix,
Military and Religious Life in the Middle Ages, 75-76, 79,
81, 85-86).

131. For instance, on May 3, 1241, was fought the celebrated
"terrible naval conflict" known as the Battle of Meloria,
near Leghorn, in which the Pisans decisively defeated
the Genoese. (James, Sea Kings and Naval Heroes, 30-34);
There was personnel on board the ships of both fleets who
performed military duties. The Orders and Signals of the
Venetian Fleet in 1365 provided that at night "none of
the men of the galleys, nor any soldier" were allowed to
"bear arms on shore, either in subject territory, or
elsewhere," etc. (Nav.Inst.Proc., XX, 1894, 545-548). The
Italians in the 14th and 15th century relied on the galea
or galley proper, for the bulk of the fighting line. It
was about 160 feet long with a beam about one-seventh of
its length. The rembata, a solid platform carried the
battery or forecastle; aft was another platform, called
the spalliera, which carried the deckhouse and from here
the officers fought and navigated the ship. "Both plat-
forms were closed in below, so as to form quarters for
the soldiers forward and the officers aft." "The actual
fighting force consisted of the Captain and three 'gentle-
men of the poop,' two gunners with their mates, one ser-
geant, four corporals, and forty-five soldiers, or fifty-
eight in all, as against at least over 200 non-effectives." (Corbett, Drake and the Tudor Navy, I, 9-10.).

132. Brinkley, History of the Japanese People, 247-248, 264 for
Bushi information and 255 for piracy; See also Nitobe,
Bushido.

133. Brinkley, History of the Japanese People, 262-263.


135. Brinkley, History of the Japanese People, 317-318; See also
Kaempfer, History of Japan, I, 307-309, et seq.; Jane,
Imperial Japanese Navy, 5-6 states at Battle of Dan-No-Ura
500 Taira war junks were defeated by 700 Minamoto vessels;
Brinkley, Hist. of Jap.People, 319 states that at these
battles the "naval tactics consisted solely in getting
the wind gauge for archery purposes."

137. Brinkley, History of the Japanese People, 358-361; Jane, Japanese Imperial Navy, 6-7; Corner, Hist., China and India, 57-58; Kaempfer, History of Japan, I, 314-315; states that the "Tartar General, Mooko, appeared upon the coasts of Japan with a fleet of 4,000 sail and 240,000 men; for battles about 1560 A.D. See Duhalde, Hist., China, Trans. from Fr. in 1741, by Brookes, I, 464-465; For battles between Korea and Japan about 1592-1597 see Nav. Inst. Proc., July 1929; About 1281, Mongols, having over-run China, their leader Kublai Khan sent 3500 Junks and 100,000 men, an "invincible armada" but it was defeated by a storm. Illustrations also, including a Japanese War Junk of the 12th century. A vignette illustration on the National bank notes, shows spearmen on decks. (Harper's, LIII, 506); "The Koreans were the first to invent the iron-clad war-ships." Kwi-sün, or "Tortoiseboat" in 1592. (Harper's XCIX, 104-105 and a good illustration on p. 102.)

138. R. Brookes translation, P. Duhalde, History of China, I, 442-443; Corner, Hist., China and India, 52; an illustration in Kirkman Primitive Carriers, etc., shows soldiers in lookout and on hurricane deck of junk with cross-bows, sword etc.

139. Grafton, Chronicle, 347-348; See also Froissart; See Tappan, In Feudal Times, 8, for illustration; Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 26; Lediard, Naval Hist., Eng., I, 47, 49.

140. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 6-11, 16, 30. These "gentlemen" suggest the "Gentlemen Sailors", or Marines that served on American privateers in the Revolution.

141. Grose, Military Antiquities, cited in Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 6; Grose, Military Antiquities, I, 278, in an ancient manuscript gives the establishment of King Edward III's Army in Normandy and before Calais, in the 20th year of his reign. It mentions "900 ships, barges, bellingers and victuallers" and also "mariners."

142. LaCroix, Military and Religious Life in the Middle Ages, 88-89.

143. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 8, citing Rymer, XII, 326; LaCroix, Military and Religious Life in the Middle Ages; See Grant, British Battles, I, 112.

144. The Great Michael of James IV of Scotland carried 300 seamen, 120 gunners and 1,000 men-at-arms (Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 52).
See Oppenheim, 63, cited in Corbett, Drake and The Tudor Navy, I, 43; earliest known English effort to codify laws of sea are Laws of Oleron about reign of Henry II (Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 170-171, 187)

Corbett, Drake and The Tudor Navy, I, 43.

Grose, Military Antiquities, I, 124-128; See also Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 12, citing E. Codice Antiq: Ms. Penes Sam.Knight, S.P., for this information which states that it was at the time of Queen Elizabeth.

Dr. John Dee, The Petty Navy Royall, pub. in 1577, cited in Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 9; copy in Lib. Cong. is entitled Memorials of the Art of Navigation.

Corbett, Drake and The Tudor Navy, II, 29-61; Lediard, Nav. Hist., Eng., I, 214; Col. Geo. C. Thorpe, U.S.M.C., described this operation in M.C.Gaz., December, 1920, 359, as follows: One of special interest is that of the landing in 1585 or 1586 west of Santo Domingo City to take that place very much the same as was done by American Marines in 1916, with the difference that, while the Dominicans fled in the latter case, the Spaniards resisted with infantry, cavalry, artillery, and by driving a herd of long-horned cattle upon the attacking British Marines; See also Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 355.


Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 11, citing States Papers, Dom. XVII, 103, quoted by Oppenheim, Admin. of Royal Navy.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 14-17; Edye, History of the Royal Marine Forces, I, 1.


Edye, History of the Royal Marine Forces, I, 1-5. See also Richard Cannon's Hist. Rec.of The Marine Corps (Royal Marine); Laughton, Studies in Nav. Hist., 48-50; War is always a possibility. It is difficult to prepare for. Principles of war are unchangeable but their application vary and methods are constantly changing. Material and personal are different today than they were yesterday and will
154. (Cont.)
not be the same tomorrow. And we must be ready. Headquar-
ters, Marine Corps Schools, and the other appropriate agen-
cies of the Corps, should be continuously planning to have
the Corps fully prepared for any future major war, in which
the general function of the Corps would be, as an adjunct
of the Navy, to provide and maintain forces for land
operations in support of the Fleet for the initial seizure
and defense of advanced bases and for such limited auxili-
ary land operations as are essential to the prosecution of
the naval campaign." (Major General Commandant Ben H.
Fuller, in Marine Corps Gazette of November, 1930, p. 8).

155. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 14-16; See also Ford,
Admiral Vernon and the Navy, 50; Schomberg, Naval Chron-
ology, I, 84.

156. Grose, Military Antiquities, I, 167, 169.

157. For information on British Marines See Field, Britain's
Sea Soldiers; Edye, History of the Royal Marine Forces;
Gillespie, History of the Royal Marines; Nicholas, Histori-
cal Records of the Royal Marine Forces.


159. For historical information concerning the Royal Marines
see Colonel Cyril Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers; Edye,
History of the Royal Marine Forces; Gillespie, History of
the Royal Marines; Nicholas, Historical Records of the
Royal Marine Forces; 3cpnète C°prplestono, " Nobody's Children,
about the World War, pub. in Cornhill Magazine, November,
December, 1919, and also at a later date in the Globe and
Laurel; T. Smith, "Royal Marines," in U.S. Magazine, May,
1874; Francis Grose, Military Antiquities, (1812), I,
167-171; Marine Corps Gazette, December, 1923, 114,
Article by General John A. Lejeune; The history of the
Royal Marine Artillery is set forth in "The Royal Marine
Artillery", two volumes, by Edward Fraser and L.G. Carr-
Laughton. "The coming into existence of the Royal Marine
Artillery dates from the year 1804. It was directly the
result of representations to the Admiralty as to discipli-
nary difficulties with some of the Royal Artillery(Army)
detachments serving in the bomb vessels." (Fraser, Carr-
Laughton, Royal M.A., I, pp. 1-2). It "was a later develop-
ment of the dispute between the Navy and the Army in 1795
as to the disciplinary authority of naval officers in
command over soldiers doing duty on board ships as Marines"
(Id, pp. 4-8). The letters of Lord Nelson on this subject
should be read. (Id, pp. 17-23). The "amalgamation of the
Royal Marine Artillery and the Royal Marine Light Infantry,"
into the The Royal Marines, occurred in 1923. (Fraser and
Carr-Laughton, Royal Marine Artillery, II, 903).
When this amalgamation was ordered in 1923, the titles "Gunner" and "Private" were dropped and the title "Marine" (abbreviation "Mne") adopted. (Id, p. 905). For a history of the British Marines in the World War, see Volume Three of Britain's Sea Soldiers, by Sir H.E. Blumberg, K.C.B., Royal Marines. "It would be interesting to have a list of the variety of employments that have engaged the Marines of various nationalities. He has fought in every corner of the world in every military or naval enterprise of the last two and a half centuries of English history, and has taken an important part in every feature of American military history. But that statement by no means tells the story of his valuable service or of his qualifications for service." (M.C. Gaz., December, 1920, 359); For example, Marchesa Villeteschi in "A court in Exile," I, 158-159, tells of the employment of a hundred Marines raised by Lord Clare, in bringing the Pretender, Charles (son of James III and Clementina Sobreski) to Belle Isle to lead his adherents to battle for his throne, about the middle of the 18th century. Sir John Jervis, Earl of St. Vincent, the famous English Admiral who died in 1823 was a strong believer in Marines if the three following statements by him mean anything: "Without a large body of Marines, we shall be long, very long, before an efficient fleet can be sent to sea." Again he said that he "never knew an appeal made to them for honour, courage, or loyalty that they did not more than realize my highest expectations. If ever the hour of real danger should come to England, they will be found the Country's Sheet Anchor." (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 187; First page of every Globe and Laurel); Lord Charles Beresford said that "no flag could be made large enough to contain the particulars of the Marines' battle honors." (M. C. Gaz., December, 1916, 384-385); See also Major Donkin, Military Collections & Remarks, 134 02 15-216.


There were five regiments of Marines raised in France between 1627 and 1719: "La Marine," 1627; "Royal Vaissicux," 1635; "Royal Marine," 1669; Le Regiment Admiral - (Vermandois), 1669; "Swiss Marines," 1719; other Marine regiments came into being in 1685 which were known as "Compagnies franches de la Marine" (1690), Regiments pour le service des colonies d'Amerique" (1772), "Corps Royal d'Infanterie
162. (Cont.)
de Marine" (1774). During the Napoleonic period there was a Marine Artillery Corps and also the Marine de la Garde. But these men were actually seamen put into a military uniform and drilled as soldiers. At the Restoration the "Corps Royal d'Infanterie de Marine," was re-instituted. In 1831 they became the "Regiments de Marine," and in 1838 the "Corps d'Infanterie de Marine" was established. At present it is the Colonial Army and does not embark for sea service. (See Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 29); See also Victor Nicolas, Le Liure d'Or de L'Infanterie de la Marine; Lomier, Le Bataillon des Marins de la Garde, 1803-1815; Among the many famous officers of the old Infanterie Marine of France were Generals Gallieni, Gouraud, Mangin, and Colonel Marchand, the latter two having gained renown through their participation in the Fashouda Incident. These officers were Marines prior to the date of change of name to Infanterie Coloniale; See text at Note 140.

163. The Portuguese were the first to make any decided advance in the art of ship-building and navigation. They were the first, and for some time the only European nation that displayed any zeal for maritime discovery. (Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 98-99).

164. Jane, The Imperial Russian Navy, 152 shows that in 1859 the Russian Navy had "Marine artillery, 281 officers. Marines afloat, 131 officers. Personnel of all ranks, about 40,000 sailors and 20,000 Marines." Of the period of 1877 Jane at pp. 178-179 writes that "it will be noted that Marines no longer figure separately. In the period under review the Marines - who were analogous to the military element afloat in the British Navy at the time of the Armada, and in the French Navy during the Great War, rather than to Marines as we understand them - the 'Marines' were absorbed into the Navy generally."

165.

166.

167.
INDEX FOR CHAPTER I.
Volume I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abydos, Battle of</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acarnania</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accoutrements</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Achates (Aibates)</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acre</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actium, Battle of</td>
<td>34, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act of Disbandment</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Adjunct of the Navy,&quot; U.S.M.C. is.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admiralty</td>
<td>56, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admiral of the Fleet</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Admiral's Regiment&quot; of Marines authorized</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrian, Wall of</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adriatic Sea</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced bases</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adventurers</td>
<td>See Gentlemen Adventurers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aegatian Isles, Battle of</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aegean Sea</td>
<td>7, 22, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aegina, Sea fight off</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aeginetan</td>
<td>14, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aelia et Tunnocelum</td>
<td>36, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>9, 22, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aibates (Achates)</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aide</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ain-Seur</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-surface-sub craft</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcibiades</td>
<td>20, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aldrich, Hist. of U.S.M.C.</td>
<td>60, 65, 67, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander the Great</td>
<td>22, 23, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexandria, Egypt</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alfred the Great</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algeria</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpine troops (gaesates)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Marines</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Revolution</td>
<td>49, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphibious Army</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amur River</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anabasis of Alexander</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchor</td>
<td>16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ancients</td>
<td>3, 4, 33, 37, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anglo-Saxons</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annapolis Royal, America</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annuities</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthlope</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiochus III</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antony, Mark</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archers</td>
<td>6,16,18,33,34,36,41,45,47,61,67,69,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arginusae Isles, Battle of</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argo</td>
<td>6,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armada</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armada, Mongol</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armada, Norman</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armada of Kublai Khan</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armada, Spanish</td>
<td>51,77,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenia</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armor</td>
<td>33,72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armor of Greek Marines</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army, Movement of, overseas</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army, Standing</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army troops, as Marines, failed</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arnold, Dr</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrian</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrows</td>
<td>20,41,45,69,74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artemisium, Naval Battle of</td>
<td>14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>57,77,78,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artillery &quot;Marine Artillery Corps,&quot; France</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artillery, Marine, of Russia</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artillery, Royal (Army)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artillery, Royal, Marine</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asiatic Greeks</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Minor</td>
<td>11,12,23,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asp, bite of, killed Cleopatra</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assyrians</td>
<td>2,9,10,59,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assassination of Philip</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athenaeus</td>
<td>33,66,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athenians</td>
<td>5,13,16,17,18,19,20,21,22,60,61,62,66,67,69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athens, Greece</td>
<td>13,17,19,21,22,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attalus-Rhodes Allies</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aviation</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audley, Thomas</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aulis in Boeotia</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autolycus</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary land operations</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babylon</td>
<td>9, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Badge&quot; of Rome's Britain Marines</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baikie</td>
<td>63, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ballingers</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ballistae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandages, cotton</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Barbaric Greeks&quot;</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barke of Bullen</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barcelona</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barges</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basketwork boat and canoes</td>
<td>3, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle honors</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battles</td>
<td>Look for under the Name of the battle desired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beachy Head</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Beaks&quot; on ships</td>
<td>16, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belle Isle</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bengal</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beresford, Lord Charles</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bess, Queen</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biremes</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthday of Royal Marines</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthday of Royal Marine Artillery</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Sea</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blake's Fleet</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blumberg, Sir H.E.</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boarders</td>
<td>5, 16, 20, 42, 48, 53, 61, 68, 69, 71, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boarding Bridge</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodelian Library at Oxford</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boeckh</td>
<td>4, 60, 62, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boeotia</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bombarding Santo Domingo City</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bomb Vessels</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boneventure</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booms</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bougie, Algeria</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boulogne, France</td>
<td>36, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowen</td>
<td>59, 73, 75, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowman</td>
<td>42, 47, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowmen</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bows</td>
<td>41, 42, 47, 67, 74, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazen, Chain</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazilian Marines</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breasted, James H. Prof.</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breastplate</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bribery</td>
<td>30, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridges, Ship</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-83-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bridge for Boarders</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brinkley</td>
<td>64, 74, 75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>9, 36, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Marines</td>
<td>57, 58, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britons</td>
<td>35, 37, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brittany</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brooke, R.</td>
<td>63, 76, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruce</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bull</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burchett</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bury</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bushi, the Japanese Soldier who served afloat as well as ashore</td>
<td>44, 45, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bushido</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bute's Carles</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cable</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar, Julius</td>
<td>36, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calais</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callixenus of Rhodes</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambyses of Persia</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camden</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camouflage, sea green colored uniforms</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canary Islands</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannon, Richard</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canoe, hide</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canoes, basketwork</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capture of Fort Fisher in 1865</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captain Kidd</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carack, See also Great Carack</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardamyle</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caria</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carleill's Force at Santo Domingo</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carmick, Daniel, Capt. U.S.M.C</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carr-Laughton, L.G.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cartel</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carthage</td>
<td>9, 10, 23, 25, 28, 29, 30, 65, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carthagena, America</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carthaginians</td>
<td>3, 24, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 41, 59, 61, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cary</td>
<td>66, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cattle, driven upon attackers</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavalry</td>
<td>60, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cedarwood</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cedar of Lebanon</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celts</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cette, Isle of</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaerona, Battle of</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chain, brazen</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel, English</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles II, of England</td>
<td>52, 53, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles, The Pretender, son of James III</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chatam, England</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chatterton</td>
<td>64, 71, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheimerium, battle near</td>
<td>17, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chians</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>3, 8, 9, 39, 45, 46, 63, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chios, Sea Fight of</td>
<td>31, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christopher</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Churchill (later Duke of Marlborough)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cilicia</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cimon</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Circle&quot; worn on shield was device or badge of Rome's</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain Marines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civilization, first</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil War, America</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil War in Japan</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civitas Salditana or Saldae</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;CL BR.&quot;, an inscription on a Roman tile.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clare, Lord</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classiarii, or Roman &quot;Soldiers for Sea Service&quot;</td>
<td>27, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37, 40, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classiariorium Britannicorum</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classicos Milites</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claudius, Publius, Consul of Rome</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clemens, Varius</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleopatra</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerk</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clowes</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cnaeus Pompey</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cochrane, Henry C. Capt. U.S.M.C.</td>
<td>61, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codice, É</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Coeur de Lion,&quot; Richard I</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coh. Classiarii</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cohort</td>
<td>36, 38, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collum, Richard F. Capt. U.S.M.C.</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Colonial Army&quot;, France</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colors of first Royal Marines was &quot;gold and red&quot;</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Command of the Sea&quot;</td>
<td>23, 24, 29, 33, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commonwealth, The</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Compagnies Franches de la Marine,&quot; France</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Companies of the Sea&quot;</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental Greece</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control of sea</td>
<td>12, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copplestone, Bennet</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corbett</td>
<td>60, 75, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corecyra</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corecyraens</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corea</td>
<td>3, 8, 39, 45, 74, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corinth</td>
<td>10, 11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corinthians</td>
<td>10, 11, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cork, Ireland, Siege of</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corner</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corner Stones</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornhill Magazine</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Corps d'Infanterie de Marine&quot;</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corps of Butes Carles</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Corps Royal d'Infanteries de Marine&quot;</td>
<td>79, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corsica, Naval Battle of</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corvi (crows)</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corvus (crow)</td>
<td>26, 27, 28, 29, 70, 71, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotterill</td>
<td>59, 60, 62, 63, 64, 68, 73, 74, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton, bandages of</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count of the Saxon Shore</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Country's Sheet Anchor&quot;</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Courage of the Marines&quot;</td>
<td>26, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowards</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crete</td>
<td>7, 10, 60, 63, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creasy</td>
<td>66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cromwellian Soldiers</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crossbows</td>
<td>42, 47, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crow (Corvus)</td>
<td>See Corvus (Crow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crusade, Third</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culver</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cynossema, Battle of</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cypriots</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyrus I, the Great of Persia</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyzicus, Battle of</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dale, Dr</td>
<td>60, 63, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danish Sea Rovers</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan-no-Ura, Battle of</td>
<td>45, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darius, of Persia</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darts</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decked ships</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deckhouse</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dee, John, Dr</td>
<td>49, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desert</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device of Rome's Britain Marines</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device or badge of Royal Marines</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devonshire, England</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dionysodorus of Attalus</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disbandment, Act of</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discipline</td>
<td>55, 56, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispute between Army and Navy</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dive River</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominican Republic</td>
<td>50, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donkin, Major</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downs, The</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dover, England</td>
<td>36, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dragon Standard at Battle of Hastings</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drake</td>
<td>49, 50, 51, 75, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dreadnought</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drepana, Battle of</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dromanes or Dromons, the biggest Mediterranean men-of-war</td>
<td>38, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drums</td>
<td>45, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dzin Gankwoo</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duhalde, P</td>
<td>8, 63, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke of Albermarle</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot</td>
<td>52, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunkirk</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>51, 52, 57, 58, 77, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch Marines</td>
<td>58, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earl Godwin</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Hemisphere</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ebro</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economus, Battle of</td>
<td>28, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edward III, England</td>
<td>46, 47, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edye</td>
<td>77, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>3, 7, 8, 9, 13, 18, 23, 33, 59, 63, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptians</td>
<td>2, 3, 7, 9, 59, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptian Fleet</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptian Kings</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ekins, Chas. Rear Admiral</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elephants</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elizabeth</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elizabeth, Queen</td>
<td>49, 50, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elphinstone</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emoluments</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emperor of the East</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineer</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engines for flinging stones</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engines of war</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>9, 36, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42, 48, 49, 51, 59, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Channel</td>
<td>36, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epibatae</td>
<td>60, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epibetaei, or Marines</td>
<td>4, 5, 12, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epirus</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eretai</td>
<td>4,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etruscus, Valerius</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphrates River</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>8,13,39,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eurymedon</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euryvildes, a Spartan</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expedition</td>
<td>2,6,7,9,13,18,22,39,50,51,55,57,61,65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expeditionary duty</td>
<td>7,56,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expeditionary force</td>
<td>2,6,42,48,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expeditionary force with Fleet</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expeditionary Marines</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expeditionary Service</td>
<td>2,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expedition of hoplites from fleet to shore</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expedition of Marines</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expedition, Joint Army-Navy</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falcon</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrington, Col.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far East</td>
<td>39,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fashouda Incident</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Fathers&quot; of British Navy</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Father of the Greek Navy&quot;, Themistocles</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Army</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felton</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferar, Lord</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feudal times</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiefs</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field, Cyril, Colonel of the Royal Marines</td>
<td>61,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65,67,71,72,73,74,76,77,78,79,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fighting men</td>
<td>1,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fighting Stages</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finances of Persia</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First aid</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First captive by Persians</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First civilization</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Egyptian Dynasty</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First expedition of Maritime Soldiers</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First great naval battle</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Man</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;First Marine Cohort&quot;</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Navy</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Punic War</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiske, Bradley A. Rear Admiral, U.S.Navy</td>
<td>63,67,68,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleet captures town</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleet, expeditionary force of Marines with</td>
<td>12,65,78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floating War Towers</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flutes</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly, to</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ford</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forecastle</td>
<td>26,62,75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Foresight .............................................................. 49
Fort Fisher, Capture of, in 1865 .............................. 72
France. See also French ........................................... 43,52,56,57,79,80
Francis, I, of France ................................................ 43
Fraser, Edward ......................................................... 78
"Freedom of the Seas" ............................................... 70
French. See also France ............................................. 46,47,56,58,79,80
French Marines ......................................................... 58,79,80
French Naval War with United States (1798-1801) ....... 62
"Fresh-water Soldiers" ............................................... 2,50,51
Froissart ................................................................. 76
Fuller, Ben H. Maj. Genl. Commandant ......................... 65,78

Gabriel Royal .......................................................... 48
Gaesates ..................................................................... 35
Galea ......................................................................... 75
Galleys .4,7,16,17,23,31,34,36,40,42,43,62,63,64,66
69,71,72,75
"Galley of galleys" ....................................................... 23
Galley Soldiers .......................................................... 48
Gallieni, General ......................................................... 80
Galliot ......................................................................... 75
Gangways .................................................................. 16,26,67
Gasgoine, Sir Bernard ................................................. 52
Gaul ............................................................................ 36
Genoese ...................................................................... 47,75
"Gentlemen Adventurers" ............................................ 49,50,51,75,76
"Gentlemen of the Poop". See also "Gentlemen Adventurers" ......................................................... 75
"Gentlemen Sailors" See also "Gentlemen Adventurers." ................................................................. 76
"Gentlemen Volunteers", See also "Gentlemen Adventurers" ............................................................. 49,51
George ...................................................................... 49
German Marines ......................................................... 58
Gibraltar ................................................................. 9,57
"Gibraltar of Sicily", Lilybaeum .................................. 29
Gillespie ..................................................................... 78
Gjerset, Knut ............................................................... 64
"Globe and Laurel", The Magazine of the Royal Marines ................................................................. 58,78,79
Go, Japan .................................................................... 64
Gobryas, father of Mardonius ....................................... 16
Godwin, Earl ............................................................... 41
Goffe's Regiment ......................................................... 52
Golden Fleece ................................................................ 6
Good Queen Bess ....................................................... 49
Gothic Warriors ......................................................... 38
Gouraud, General ...................................................... 80
Grafton ...................................................................... 76
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grapnels</td>
<td>16, 26, 27, 47, 60, 69, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grant</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Armada</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Barka</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Great Carack&quot;</td>
<td>43, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Great Exhibition at Hyde Park, London&quot;</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Harbor of Syracuse</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Michael</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Great Wall,&quot; England</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Great Ship&quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great War (World War)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 20, 21, 32, 59, 60, 62, 63, 65, 66, 67, 68, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek Fire</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, color of circular shield carried by Rome's British Marines</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grenades, hand</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Griffis</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grose, Francis</td>
<td>55, 66, 76, 77, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grote</td>
<td>60, 62, 63, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guadaloupe</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulick</td>
<td>67, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulf of Liaotung</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Gunner,&quot; title of</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamersly</td>
<td>61, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handmayd</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannibal</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand grenades</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand-spikes</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand-to-hand fighting</td>
<td>5, 16, 20, 28, 47, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harald, King, of Norway</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harangues</td>
<td>12, 15, 18, 19, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harbrada or Norway</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harima, Japan</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harold, King</td>
<td>40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harpoon</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hastings, Battle of</td>
<td>40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hatches, station of Greek Marines</td>
<td>5, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headdress</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headquarters, U.S.M.C.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy-armed</td>
<td>5, 6, 16, 18, 60, 61, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellenes</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellenic</td>
<td>2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellespont</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hennebert, Lt.Col</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henri Grace a Dieu (Henry Imperial)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry Imperial (Henri Grace a Dieu)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Henry II .............................................................. 77
Henry VIII of England .............................................. 43,48
Herald-at-arms ....................................................... 43
Hermaneum, Battle of ............................................. 29
"Hermit Nation," Corea ........................................... 74
Herodotus ..... 10,13,14,15,16,59,62,63,64,65,66,67,68
Hero, Japanese ..................................................... 45
Hero, Marine ......................................................... 14
Hide boat or canoe ................................................ 35
Hiero, Tyrant of Syracuse ........................................ 33
Hirafu, of Japan ..................................................... 39
Hiram, King of Tyre ............................................... 64
Histories of Royal Marines ..................................... 58
Holland ................................................................. See Dutch
Holy Land ................................................................ 42
Homer ........................................................................ 4,60,69
Hope .......................................................................... 49
Hopliteae .................................................................. 60
Hoplites .................................................................... 14,19,21,61,67,69
Hoplites, serving as Marines ..................................... 21
Horse Marines ........................................................... 13,66
Horses, transports for ............................................... 13,66
Horton, G. .................................................................. 77
"House of the Lord" .................................................. 64
"House people" ......................................................... 40
Hull of basket work for canoes ................................. 35
Hull of Hurricane deck .......................................... 76
Hus Carles ................................................................. 40
Hyde Park, London ................................................... 70
Hyogo, Japan ............................................................ 74

Iber River .................................................................. 31
Iceland ....................................................................... 64
Ichi-no-Tani, naval battle ......................................... 44
India .......................................................................... 8,9,37,64,76
Inexperience, cause of defeat ................................... 18
"Infanterie Coloniale" ................................................. 80
"Infanterie Marine" of France .................................... 80
Ingoldsby's Regiment ............................................... 52
"Initial seizure" and defense of advanced bases ......... 78
Inland Sea of Japan .................................................. 9,43
Ionia .......................................................................... 11,12,13
Ionic Revolt .............................................................. 11
Ireland ....................................................................... 57
Iron anchor ............................................................... 16
Iron-clad warships .................................................. 76
"Iron claw" ................................................................ 71
Iron grapnels ............................................................ See Grapnels
Ischenous ................................................................ 14
Islanders of the Pacific .............................................. 73
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Island-King</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Island Kingdom of Japan</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isle of Wight</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian Marines</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>34, 29, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item per lineam</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Izu, Japan</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamaica, W.I.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 73, 75, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James I</td>
<td>52, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James III</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James IV of Scotland</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane</td>
<td>64, 74, 75, 76, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jao Wang of China</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>39, 44, 45, 46, 64, 74, 75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>3, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jason</td>
<td>6, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Javelinmen</td>
<td>18, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Javelins</td>
<td>20, 67, 68, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jennett</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jervis, Sir John (Earl of St. Vincent)</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus of Lubeck</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jetz, Japan</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint Army-Navy Expedition</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jowett</td>
<td>63, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jimmu, Emperor</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingo, Japanese Empress</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junk, war, of China</td>
<td>8, 44, 75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kadesh</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaempfer</td>
<td>64, 74, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kagetoki</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karanos</td>
<td>39, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kashima</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidd, Captain</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirkman</td>
<td>62, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knossos, capital of Minos</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korex, Greek word for corvus (crow)</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>See Corea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koreans</td>
<td>See Coreans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kublai Khan</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwi-sun or &quot;tortoise boat&quot;</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labuan</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Croix</td>
<td>75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ladders</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lade, Battle of</td>
<td>11,12,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamb</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;La Marine,&quot; Regiment, France</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamb</td>
<td>60,62,67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lampactus, Battle of</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lances</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lanciana, Rodolfo</td>
<td>34,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land battle on shipboard</td>
<td>20,26,28,61,69,71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing force or party</td>
<td>5,21,30,56,61,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing force of Greeks</td>
<td>17,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laughton</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laws of Oleorn</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laws, &quot;Naval Laws&quot;</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leagues of salt water</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leake's Expedition to Balearic Isles</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lediard</td>
<td>74,76,77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leeward Islands</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legends</td>
<td>1,6,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leghorn</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legionaries of Rome</td>
<td>26,28,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lembari</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lembus</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leo or Leon</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonidas</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lepanto, Battle of</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lerida</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Le Regiment Admiral,&quot; France</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebois</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levantine Sea</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liaotung, Gulf of</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light-armed Greek Marines</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lilybaeum, Battle of</td>
<td>29,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisbon</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little</td>
<td>60,62,63,64,68,73,74,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lonier</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long penteconter</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-horned cattle, driven on attackers</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Long voyages&quot;</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Long Walls&quot;</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lookouts</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lord, House of the</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luce, S.B., Capt., U.S.Navy</td>
<td>60,61,65,67,68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycia</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lympne, near Hythe</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyon</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysander</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacCurdy</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedonia</td>
<td>22, 23, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedonian Marines</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madeira Islands</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magazine, Globe and Laurel</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major War</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major War Mission of Marines</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man, first</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangin, General</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marathon, Battle of</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marchand, Colonel</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marchesa Villeteschi</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mardonius, son of Gobryas</td>
<td>12, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines, Army troops as, failed</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines, &quot;best men from the whole Army&quot; selected</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marine Cohort&quot;</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines, decision rest on</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marine de la Garde,&quot; France</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Infantry of Rome</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Infantrymen (classicos milities)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marine Soldiers&quot;</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marine&quot; (&quot;Mne&quot;), Title of</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariners</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines, Ionian</td>
<td>11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Alexander the Great</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Attalus</td>
<td>31, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Carthage</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Greece</td>
<td>4, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Macedonia</td>
<td>22, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Minos</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Rome</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines Persian</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines Phoenician</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine-seaman-oarsman</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine spirit</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime Soldiers</td>
<td>1, 6, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marlborough, Duke of</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married men, none in first British Marines</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime warfare</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Antony</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martinique</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martyr, Marine</td>
<td>14, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary Roase</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary Rose</td>
<td>48, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massalia (Marseilles)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mast</td>
<td>59, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mauritania</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modes</td>
<td>11, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediaeval</td>
<td>47, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediterranean Sea</td>
<td>3, 7, 8, 9, 43, 47, 59, 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mediterranean Sea, a Roman Lake .......................... 34
Melesander .................................................. 18
Meloria, Battle of ......................................... 75
Memphis ........................................................ 18
Men-at-arms .................................................. 14,15,47,55,76
Mercenaries, foreign ........................................ 25,32
Merchant marine ............................................. 24
Merchantmen transformed into warships .................... 47
Merchant vessels of Solomon .................................. 64
Mesopotamia .................................................. 3
Messenian Hoplites ........................................... 19
Middle Ages .................................................. 42,43,75,76
Miletus .......................................................... 10,11,12
Minamoto clan of Japan ...................................... 44,45,75
Minoan Empire ............................................... 7
Minorca .......................................................... 57
Minos ............................................................. 7,8,63
Missile-throwing engines ................................... 61,74
Mission of Marines .......................................... 65,77,78
Mithridates ................................................... 32
Mobile expeditionary force .................................. 2,5,6,61
Mongols ........................................................ 45,46,76
Mooko, Tartar General ...................................... 76
Morale, broken ............................................... 21
Museum at Boulogne ......................................... 36
Mutsu ............................................................ 45
Mycale, naval battle of ..................................... 16
Mylae, Battle of ............................................. 27
Myrrh ............................................................ 14
Myths ............................................................ 1,9

Napoleon ........................................................... 80
Native soldiers or troops ..................................... 37,66
Naupactus, Battle of ........................................ 6,18,19
Nautai or sailors ............................................. 4,60
Naval architecture ........................................... 35
Naval Constructor of Roman Navy ......................... 25
"Naval Laws" .................................................. 42
Navy, first ..................................................... 7
Near East ....................................................... 39
Nelson, Lord .................................................. 78
Neolithic ....................................................... 3,7
Netherby ....................................................... 36
Nicholas ........................................................ 78
Nicias ........................................................... 20,69
Nicolas, Victor ................................................ 80
Nile River ...................................................... 3,18
Nitobe ........................................................... 75
Noah ............................................................. 64
"Nobody's Children," as British Marines were called.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-commissioned officers</td>
<td>5, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norman Armada</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normandy</td>
<td>40, 43, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North German Sea-Rovers</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwegian Marines of King Harald of Hardrada or Norway</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwegian Sea Rovers</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Nos Soldats&quot;</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notitia Imperii</td>
<td>36, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numidia</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oars</td>
<td>4, 31, 32, 59, 60, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octavius</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ojin, Emperor of Japan</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oleorn, Laws of</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oppenheim</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Order in Council&quot;</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orme River</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osaka, Japan</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostend</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overseas campaign</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxford, England</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pacific, Islanders of</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paddles</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palestine</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panic</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paris, Matthew, the historian</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parker, Foxhall A., Commodore, U.S. Navy</td>
<td>53, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parliament</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass of Thermopylae</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pay</td>
<td>4, 5, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peloponnesians</td>
<td>17, 18, 21, 22, 68, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peltastae or cavalry</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penes Sam, Knight</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penteconters</td>
<td>10, 14, 15, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persians 2, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 21, 23, 60, 65, 66, 67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persians serving as Marines</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perso-Phoenician naval power</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petty officers</td>
<td>5, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phalanx</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip Augustus of France</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip of Macedon</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip V of Macedonia</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippine Islands</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philistines</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philopater, Ptolemy</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phocaea</td>
<td>10,11,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenicia</td>
<td>2,3,9,10,11,13,17,23,59,60,63,64,65,66,69,70,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phoenicians of the Far East,&quot; the Coreans</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phormio</td>
<td>18,19,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picardy</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picked soldiers for Marines</td>
<td>11,72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picta</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picts</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pikes</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pillars of Hercules</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilots</td>
<td>34,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinnaces</td>
<td>35,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pioneers</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pirates</td>
<td>7,30,40,43,44,63,71,72,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piraeus</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pisans</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planks</td>
<td>16,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plataea, Land Battle of</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pliny</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plymouth, England</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plutarch</td>
<td>5,16,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polissus</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polybius</td>
<td>26,28,29,30,31,61,70,71,72,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pompey, Cnaeus</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pontic Empire of the Black Sea</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poop</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poop-Guard</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porto Rico</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Royal, America</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portsmouth, England</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>58,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potter</td>
<td>59,60,62,66,70,71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pottery, Roman</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prayers, customary</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Pretender,&quot; Charles (son of James III)</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primrose</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prisoner</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privateurs</td>
<td>18,76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Private,&quot; title of</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prow</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ptolemies</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ptolemy Philopater</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publius Claudius, Consul of Rome</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punic War, First</td>
<td>23,24,27,30,71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punic War, Second</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puvensey Bay in Sussex, England</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pyrrhus..................................................24
Pythes, a hoplite.......................................14

Quang-tong, China.................................46
Quebec, America...................................57
Quinqueremes.............................24,26,33,61,62,72
Quiver, full of arrows..........................41

Rafts.................................................3
Raking fire...........................................62
Rams.................................6,17,30,60,61,62,69,71,72
Rameses III.........................................63
Rawlinson.................................59,60,62,64,65,66,67,68
Red Sea...............................................59
"Redcoats".....................................52,53
Regent................................................48
Regiment de Marine, in France.................52
Regulations for British Navy..................48
"Regiments pour le service des colonies
d'Amerique".................................79
Rembata..............................................75
Repelling boarders See also Boarders..........5,6
Restoration, The..................................80
"Retene de Poupe" or "Poop-Guard".............47
Retinue of Lord Ferars..........................48
Revolution, American.............................49
Rhodes.............................31,32,33,34,35,36
Rich................................................60
Richard I, or "Coeur de Lion"..................42,43
Richard III.........................................74
Rodolfo Lanciana.................................34,73
Roman Marines.....................................37
Roman Wall..........................................73
Romans and Rome....2,8,23,24,25,26,29,32,36,38,59,60
..................................................61,65,70,71,72
Romans land in England.........................35,38
Ross, John.........................................74
Rowers.................................3,4,5,12,20,24,25,28,31,59,60,61
"Royal Marine" Regiment, France.............79
Royal (British) Marines.........................52,55,57,58,78
Royal Navy..........................................48
"Royal Vaisseaux" Regiment, France............79
Russia.................................................80
Russian Marines....................................58
Rymer...............................................76

Sacans.............................................11,66
Sacrifice by Persians of first captive..........15
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sailing pinnace</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sail, square</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sail, symbol of flight to Greeks</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sails</td>
<td>3, 4, 59, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saldae or civitas salditana</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salamis, Battle of</td>
<td>6, 15, 16, 61, 67, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samian</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samos</td>
<td>11, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samothracian</td>
<td>67, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandwich</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Santo Domingo</td>
<td>50, 51, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sardinia</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sato Tsunginobo</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saxons</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saxon Shore, Count of</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scandinavians</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schomberg</td>
<td>73, 74, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schools, U.S. Marine Corps</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scots</td>
<td>36, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea-green, color of Rome's Britain Marines' uniform</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Sea habit&quot;</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea lanes</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Power</td>
<td>7, 13, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Rovers</td>
<td>24, 25, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Soldiers</td>
<td>2, 9, 15, 33, 37, 38, 41, 43, 48, 49, 50, 60, 67, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Trumpets</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Wolves</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seamen</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seine River</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seleucia</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senate of Rome</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shafts, cross-bow</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shalmaneser IV, King</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheet-anchor, The Country's</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shepard</td>
<td>62, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shido Bay, Japan</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shields</td>
<td>17, 37, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ship of the Line&quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ship people&quot;</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Shooting art&quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoreham</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuckburgh</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sicily</td>
<td>19, 24, 28, 32, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidon</td>
<td>8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signals</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Silence was proclaimed by the sound of the trumpet&quot;</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Silver mines........................................... 14, 66
Singukogu, Empress..................................... 74
Skin boats............................................... 3
Slaves.................................................. 4, 15, 27, 60
Slingers................................................. 34
Sluys, Battle of....................................... 46
Smith................................................... 71
Smith, Capt. Roy C., U.S. Navy.......................... 61
Smith, T.................................................. 78
Smith, Wm. Dr.......................................... 60
Sneferu, King........................................... 7
Sobreski, Clementina.................................... 79
"Sold out"............................................... 44
Soldiers as Marines..................................... 78
"Soldiers accustomed to the sea"....................... 2
"Soldiers and Marines".................................. 43
"Soldiers by Sea"....................................... 52
"Soldiers for Sea Service"............................... 6, 27
Soldier-of-the-Navy..................................... 2
Soldiers of the Sea...................................... 1, 8
"Soldiers serving at Sea"................................. 45
"Soldiers that served at sea"............................. 71
Solomon................................................ 64
Sophanes, an Athenian.................................. 16
Soul of the Navy, Themistocles.......................... 14
"Sound of drum"......................................... 45
Spain................................................... 24, 50, 51, 77
Spalliera................................................. 75
Spanish Main............................................ 49
Spanish Marines......................................... 58
Sparta.................................................... 2, 14, 18, 21, 22, 69
Speaker.................................................. 52
Spearmen................................................ 76
Spencer, Lord........................................... 57
Square sail.............................................. 59
Stables for horses, on transports........................ 66
Stamford Bridge, Battle of................................ 40
Standing Army........................................... 55
Status of U.S.M.C........................................ 77, 78
St. Estevan............................................... 57
St. Johnston............................................. 73
St. Vincent, Earl of (Sir John Jervis)................... 57, 79
Steam.................................................... 4, 60
Stones, as weapons...................................... 20, 21, 33, 74, 79
Storms.................................................. 45, 46, 76
Strategy................................................ 25, 33, 63, 87
Strength of Marine detachments........................ 61, 62, 63, 65, 66, 67, 68
Strength of Marine mobile expeditionary force........ 6
Strength of Marines on Greek vessels.................. 15, 17, 19
Strength of Marines on Roman vessels.................. 26, 27
Strength of Marines on Syracusan (Alexandrian)........ 69
Strikes, ship ...................... 69
Strong points .................... 56
Submarine ......................... 4
Sulla .......................... 32
Sumerian boats .................... 3
Sumitomo, of Japan .......... 43, 44
Supernumeraries ................. 68
Supply vessels .................... 19
Surprise, victory by .......... 13, 22, 44, 56
Sushen, as Toi originally were called 39, 44
Sussex, England .................. 41
Swallows ........................ 49
Swiftsure ........................ 49
"Swiss Marines" Regiment, France 79
Swords .......................... 74, 75
Syracusan (Alexandrian) ...... 33, 60
Syracuse, Sicily, Battle of ... 3, 20, 21, 33, 69
Syria ................................ 7, 13, 23, 43
Tacitus ................................ 27
Taira, Clan of Japan ............. 44, 45, 75
Tactics, naval ..................... 33, 48, 59, 60, 61, 75
Tangiers .......................... 57
Tappan ............................ 76
Tarantum .......................... 30
Tartars ............................ 46, 76
Taylor, Bayard .......................... 74
Teutonic tribes .................... 9
Themistocles ........................ 5, 13, 14, 15, 66, 67, 68
Theodosius the Younger .......... 36
Theophiliscus .......................... 72
Thermopylae, Pass of ............ 14
Thessally .......................... 14
Third Crusade .......................... 43
Third Dynasty of Egypt .......... 7
Thurph, George C., Colonel, U.S.M.C. 77
Thrace ................................ 12, 13
Thucydides ........................ 4, 7, 10, 11, 18, 19, 20, 21, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 69,
Tyutmos III of Egypt ........... 63, 67
Tiger ................................ 49
Tigris River .......................... 3
Tile, Roman .......................... 36
Tin ................................... 9
Ti-ping, Emperor of China ...... 46
Toi, originally called Sushen ...... 44
Torr ................................ 11, 59, 63, 64, 73
"Tortoise Boat" ..................... 76
Toulon, France .......................... 57
Towers, Floating war, on ship .. 33, 62
"TR. CL. BR.," inscription on a Roman tile 36, 37
Traders, Phoenicians were. ........................................... 9
Tradition. ................................................................. 7
Trafalgar. ................................................................. 4
Trasjan. ........................................................................ 36
Transports. ................................................................. 12, 19, 23, 31, 32, 33, 42, 66, 67
Transports, for Horses. ............................................... 13, 66
Treachery. ....................................................................... 12, 44
Trees, for sails. ............................................................. 59
"Tribune of British Troops trained for sea warfa..." ............ 37
Tribune of First Marine Cohort. ....................................... 73
Tribune, Rome. .................................................................. 36, 37
Tribunus Classis Britannicae. ........................................... 37
Trieconters. ..................................................................... 66
Triarch. ........................................................................... 60
Triarchi. .......................................................................... 5, 62
Triareme. ...................................................................... 5, 11, 13, 15, 17, 32, 33, 60, 61, 65, 66, 67, 68
Triumph (Tryumph). ....................................................... 49
Troy and Trojan War. ...................................................... 6, 62, 63
Trumpets. ......................................................................... 19, 43, 51
Tsien Chi-hoang, Emperor. .............................................. 8
Tsunginobu, Sato. .............................................................. 45
Tsushima, Japan. ............................................................. 45
Tudor Navy. ................................................................. 60, 75, 77
Tunis. ............................................................................... 23
Tunnel. ............................................................................ 35
Tunnocelum. ................................................................... 73
Tyre. ................................................................................ 9, 10, 23, 24, 64, 70
Two-banked warships. ...................................................... 9
Tyrant of Syracuse, Hiero. ................................................. 33

Ubaldino. ....................................................................... 77
Unbelievers. ................................................................... 43
Uniforms. ........................................................................ 37, 73
University of Chicago. .................................................... 63
Unmarried men, were first British Marines. ...................... 52

Valerius Etruscus. ............................................................... 35
Varus Clemens. ............................................................... 35
Vegetius. ......................................................................... 37
Venice, Italy. ................................................................... 75
Vermandois. .................................................................... 79
Vernon, Admiral. ............................................................ 78
Victuallers. ..................................................................... 76
Victory. ........................................................................... 49
Vikings (the men of the creeks). ...................................... 41
Villeteschi, Marchesa. ..................................................... 79
Virginia Expedition. ........................................................ 57
Volunteers, called for. .................................................... 44

-102-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waddell</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall, Roman</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall of Adrian</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Walls of Wood,&quot; ships</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>War-junks</td>
<td>8, 44, 75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>War Mission of Marines</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warre</td>
<td>59, 60, 62, 64, 65, 71, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warriors of the sea</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wars, major</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapons</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather-gauge</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wells, H.G</td>
<td>59, 63, 64, 70, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Hemisphere</td>
<td>1, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitehall</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Bear</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wicker framework used in boats</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Wild Tribes of Picts and Scots&quot;</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William the Conqueror</td>
<td>40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Wily&quot; Themistocles</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind gauge</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wine</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Wings of cohorts&quot;</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winterfield Uniform</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Wooden Horse&quot; of Troy</td>
<td>6, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Wooden Wall&quot; of ships</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World War</td>
<td>78, 79, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xerxes</td>
<td>13, 15, 65, 66, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yards</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yarmouth, England</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yashimi, Battle of</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yonge</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoshitune, famous leader of Japan</td>
<td>44, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoshifuru of Japan</td>
<td>43, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zebulun</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zidon</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EARLY MARINES OF THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

Material and Sources of Chapter II, Volume I (Part One)

History of the United States Marine Corps

By

Major Edwin North McCollan, U.S. Marines Officer-in-Charge, Historical Section.

(Notes and Index will be found in Part Two)

First Edition
September 1, 1932
FORENOTE

This compilation is not the final manuscript of this Chapter but represents only material and sources upon which it will be based. Since the information expressed in this History required original research, which has not been completed, it was decided to publish it first in mimeographed form. Considerable additional information will have been collected by the time it is desirable to write the final manuscript for printing. It is purposely made voluminous in order to make public, details of early Marine Corps History that obviously will not be included in a printed work because of lack of space. The plan provides for seven large volumes divided into appropriate chapters.

As a matter of convenience this chapter is divided into two parts.

The following form of citation is suggested if it is desired to cite, either in published works or manuscript, any information contained herein:

(McClellan, Hist., U.S.M.C., 1st ed., I, Ch. II,
Almost three centuries intervened between October 12, 1492, when Christopher Columbus discovered America, and our first Fourth of July in 1776. Those 284 years, while not as personal to us as the more than 150 years that we have been the United States, are American years just the same. And so are those countless years before the coming of the Europeans.

The period beginning with Columbus and ending with the American Revolution, produced American sea characters or heroic mould from whom the American Marines have inherited basic tradition and heroic spirit. The achievements of those pioneer Americans must be related or this history would be incomplete.

A Marine is a soldier who serves at sea on a war vessel either as part of its crew or as part of a military expedition under naval jurisdiction. He has been called a "Maritime Soldier," a "Sea Soldier," and a "Soldier of the Ocean." The American Marines are so inextricably interwoven with matters of the sea that their history begins with the earliest fighting-men afloat in the Americas, whoever they were. The duties
performed by our early American fighters, on board ship and in overseas expeditions, were similar to the services assigned American Marines of today.

A study of history brings the student to the conclusion that whether a soldier is a Marine depends, not upon the name given him, but upon the character of duty such soldier performs coupled with his familiarity with the sea and his being under naval jurisdiction. There have been fighting-men performing the duties of Marines from the first date that fighting-men served on ships or in expeditions of a naval status. These Sea Soldiers are best prepared to carry out their missions when they are trained to the ways of the sea and an integral part of the naval machine.

The first Chapter has set forth much concerning the ancient Marines of the Eastern Hemisphere. The American past, also, has much to disclose. America had its prehistoric man, and its ancient civilizations, as had the other continents.

We have read much of Europeans discovering America, but little did the Norsemen, Columbus and all of Europe know, that centuries before making their discoveries, America had its civilizations which rank with any of those in what is termed the Old World. There have been
The civilizations in the Western Hemisphere are as ancient as those of the Eastern Hemisphere, and within a century our school children will be studying them with as much interest and belief as they now read the history of Eastern Hemisphere ancients. 5

Toltecs, Aztecs and others have appeared. In Central America and Yucatan there remains evidences of an ancient American civilization which we today call Mayan. America is now wrestling from the silent centuries their fascinating romance of amazing civilizations, which, of course, had their navies with Maritime Soldiers.

America has a prehistory extending far back into the early centuries of human development. The steps of her progress and the successes achieved are as interesting and instructive as any attained by the renowned human groups of the Old World.

History's first page of ancient America has not been written. The last continent discovered by the present civilization will naturally be the last to unearth and piece together its past.

Who discovered America and the date will never be known. A glance at the map will show that the stepping stones from Norway to Continental America are the Orkneys, Shetlands, Faroes, Iceland, and Greenland. It
was over this route that the first Europeans travelled to America.

When Iceland was first discovered, and by whom the discovery was made, is not definitely known. Traditions which have been preserved by old Icelandic writers credit the Norsemen Naddod and the Swede Gardar with the discovery but the accounts do not agree. A third Viking voyager named Floki Vilgerdsson visited Iceland. These three voyages are supposed to have been made about 860–870.

About the year 1,000 the voyages between Greenland, Norway and Iceland led to the discovery of Vinland as the mainland of North America was then called. Both Biarne or Bjarni, and Lief Ericson, son of Eric the Red, have been given the glory of discovering America.

It also is not improbable that early voyagers from China, Japan, India, or Africa, may have been blown to the coasts of America. "These Chinese say they discovered America in A.D. 500 and called it Fusan, after a tree which grew there." It is very likely that America was discovered centuries before the birth of Columbus.

Welsh records and traditions declare that Madoc sailed westward from Iceland in 1170 and established
a colony in a "fruitful country," supposed to be America and that he left his colonists there. Madoc with a larger colony returned to America in ten vessels; but neither he nor his expedition was ever heard of again. 10

The last visit to Vinland, according to the Sagas, was in 1347. After that, all is oblivion until 1492.

Following the hardy Norsemen came Admiral Christopher Columbus. 11 The full list of sailors and landsmen on board the Santa Maria, Pinta and Nina on the first expeditions of Columbus was ninety, according to Las Casas and one hundred and twenty, according to Oviedo. Included in this number was William Harris of Galway, Ireland. 12

We have already seen that European ships of the 15th Century carried soldiers accustomed to the ways of the sea; and the three ships of Columbus were no exception to that rule. Descriptions and illustrations of Columbus' cruises show conclusively that he had "Fighting Men of the Sea" with him. 13

San Salvador, now called Watling Island by some, and Guanahani by its original Indian inhabitants 14 was discovered by Columbus on October 12, 1492. On his four voyages Columbus touched at Cuba, Haiti, Virgin Islands, Porto Rico, Nicaragua, and many other spots.
where American Marines have been stationed. Among such places are the northeastern cape of Nicaragua named by Columbus, Gracias a Dios, northern coast of Honduras, and La Navidad the first European settlement in America.

Often have the American Marines crossed the lines of Columbus' voyages in the West Indies and Central America. After frequently visiting the waters of Santo Domingo, for the protection of American lives and property, they occupied that Republic from 1916 to 1924 and guarded the bones claimed to be those of Admiral Columbus which up to this date rest in a silver casket at the Santo Domingo City Cathedral. The old dead tree to which Columbus is said to have moored his vessels is another relic in Santo Domingo City. The ruins of Diego Columbus' castle are there and many other reminders of Columbus.

Columbus visited Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, the scene of peace and war activities of American Marines. He set sail from Isabela on April 24, 1494, touched at Monte Cristi, and anchored at La Navidad, arrived at St. Nicholas on the 29th, sailed past Point Maysi (Eastern point of Cuba), crossed the channel and "anchored in a harbor to which, from its size, he gave the name of Puerto Grande, at present called Guantanamo."
The entrance was narrow and winding, though deep; the harbor expanded within like a beautiful lake, in the bosom of the wild and mountainous country, covered with trees, some of them in blossom, others bearing fruit. * * * Columbus landed * * * the Spaniards * * * beheld about seventy of the natives collected on the top of a lofty rock * * * Leaving this harbor on the first of May, the Admiral continued to the westward, along a mountainous coast, * * * came to another gulf or deep bay, narrow at the entrance and expanding within, * * * probable was the same at present called St. Jago de Cuba (Santiago), Columbus anchored." * * * On the following day, the 3rd of May, he turned his prow directly south. 15

After Columbus came many discoverers and explorers. Since discovery and combat went hand in hand their vessels carried Maritime Soldiers.

At least two of American birth and partly of American blood, formed part of Magellan's expedition that first circumnavigated the globe. Magellan's Fleet consisting of 270 men in the San Antonio, Trinidad, Conception, Victoria and Santiago, sailed in September, 1519, and discovered Guam on March 6, 1521, 377 years before American Marines garrisoned that Island. 16 On March
16th Samar, made conspicuous in Marine Corps history by Waller's Marines in 1902, was sighted. Magellan fell in battle with the Filipinos on the Island of Mactan about a month later. 17

The voyage of Sir Francis Drake around the world in 1577-1580 cannot be overlooked, for his vessels carried the first Sea Soldiers to the West Coast of what is now our country. Drake may have visited San Francisco Bay but the authorities are generally against the claim. It was his visit to the Oregon Coast in 1579 that England based her claims to that region many years later. 18

In 1585 or 1586 Drake arrived in the waters of Santo Domingo and decided to capture the city. He carried on his vessels a large number of soldiers and "Gentlemen Adventurers," that formed what today we call an "Expedition of Marines." In fact Drake's Expedition did not differ much in principle from the expedition of American Marines which occupied Santo Domingo in 1916. A secret landing was made at "a practicable landing-place some ten miles from the harbor" of Santo Domingo City. "Drake ordered the whole of the troops into the boats and small craft of the fleet," that is in pinnaces and other ship-boats. "When all were embarked," Drake "placed himself at the head of the flotilla and in per-
son piloted it through the surf." He then anchored his fleet off the town, bombarded it, lowered his boats as if to land, all of which caused the Spaniards to believe that the main landing was to be made at that time. Immediately after, however, "a loud alarm of drums and trumpets upon the right rear told" the Spaniards of the trap into which they had fallen; with music playing and standards flying, Carleill's force to the number of over a thousand men were seen advancing in two columns," which after a brief fight captured Santo Domingo City.

American Indians on the sea coasts, rivers, and lakes, furnish early examples of American fighting men afloat. Most of their large war canoes, like the Greek and Persian galleys, carried warriors in addition to those who paddled. Battles were fought by fleets of Indian canoes.

Marines are interested in the attempted settlement by Jean Ribault in 1562 at "Charles Fort," for it was supposed that its site was the present location of Parris Island, S.C. Ribault left "thirty gentlemen, soldiers and Marines," at Charles Fort under Captain Albert and then sailed away. Ruins including some cedar timber were discovered at Parris Island in 1923. These, at the time, were identified as being used in the palisades of Charles Fort. The timbers were presented to the State of South Carolina.
South Carolina in 1924 and the Senate of that State passed a resolution of thanks. However, continued research seems to have convinced historians that the ruins on Parris Island are of Spanish origin instead of French.

The first permanent English settlement in America was established in 1607 at Jamestown, Virginia.

Captain John Smith arrived in Virginia early in 1607. The following year "in an open Barge nearly three tons burthen" with "Fourteen Adventurers" aboard he sailed up the Potomac, past Quantico Creek, as far as the mouth of Occoquan Creek. These "Fourteen Adventurers" were the Marines of that period. Little did they know, as they floated past Quantico Creek, that about three centuries later the American Marines would establish their main base there.

Other expeditions later went up the Potomac. In 1623 Harry Spelman, on the Tiger, ascended the river to a point near the site of Washington and there lost his scalp and life to the Indians. In this century some thrifty Scotch sailed up the Potomac and came to anchor in Quantico Creek. Near its mouth they discovered a beautiful meadow and there founded a substantial town which they named Dumfries.

The history of America from 1613 to 1775 is featured
with maritime military expeditions of Americans to Canada and the West Indies. Most of them were similar to the many composed of American Marines since 1775. British Marines formed part of some of the expeditions and both these Marines, and the American fighting men performed the same character of duty. In 1740 and 1741 practically the entire personnel of the American part of Vernon's force operating against Cartagena and in Cuba was carried on the lists as British Marines. The American Colonies also possessed warships and commissioned privateers on board of which American Marines served. The pre-Revolutionary naval history of America is filled with incidents suggesting the American Marines.

What is described as the first battle between Europeans in America was fought in 1613. In that year an expedition under Captain Samuel Argall with eleven small vessels was despatched by Sir Thomas Dale, Governor of Virginia, to the coast of Nova Scotia. Argall reduced the French post of St. Sauveur, on the island of Mount Desert, not far from Penobscot Bay.

On his return to Virginia, Captain Argall, with three good ships, was sent against the French in Acadia and he laid waste to the whole of their possessions. He "swooped upon Port Royal and burned it to the ground,
carrying off livestock as booty and the inhabitants as prisoners." The French, however, later reestablished themselves at Port Royal and remained in possession of Penobscot for many years.

In 1602 Gosnold in the Concord carrying eight mariners, twelve planters, and "Twelve Adventurers" — the Marines of that day — discovered and named Cape Cod, Martha's Vineyard and other points. Gosnold built a fort and intended a settlement on the Elizabeth Islands but he could not persuade anybody to remain.

The Mayflower arrived in America in 1620. On board that famous vessel there was a detachment of Pilgrims into which Miles Standish, "a man of very little stature yet of a very hot and angry temper," instilled military discipline and a fighting spirit. Illustrations of the Mayflower show these Puritan Sea-Soldiers in armor and bearing fire-arms, formed on deck. One would expect the caption of the picture to state that they were the "Marines of the Mayflower."

Henry Hudson aboard the Half Moon visited the Hudson in 1609 and shortly after the Dutch settled New Amsterdam. They made settlements in Connecticut in 1633.

"The first decked vessel built within the old United
States, of which we have any account, was constructed by Schipper Adrian Block, on the banks of the Hudson, and probably within the present limits of New York, during the summer of 1614 (or 1644), wrote J. Fenimore Cooper. "This vessel De Lact terms a yacht, and describes as having been of the dimensions of thirty-eight feet keel, forty-four and a half feet on deck, and eleven feet beam. In this yacht, Block passed through Hell Gate, into the Sound, and steering eastward, he discovered a small island, which he named after himself; going as far as Cape Cod, by the way of the Vineyard passage." 

The English colonists had engaged in naval operations against the French, the Dutch, and the Indians but in 1635 a bitter naval battle was fought between Americans of Maryland and Virginia. It was an unique struggle and well deserves a place in history of the American Maritime Soldiers. William Claiborne of Virginia established a trading post on Kent Island, not far from the present Annapolis.

Lord Baltimore claimed jurisdiction over Kent Island and Claiborne refused to acknowledge the claim. Each side felt that its claim was the better and prepared to defend it with force.

In September, 1634, Lord Baltimore instructed Leonard
Calvert to seize and imprison Claiborne at St. Mary's and take possession of Kent Island. In the spring of 1635, Claiborne sent out the armed trading pinnace Long Trail and the Maryland boats St. Helen and St. Margaret captured her. 37

Claiborne, (Gleburn or Clayborne) on Kent Island, next despatched his armed sloop Cockatrice, commanded by Lieutenant Radcliffe Warren, manned with a crew of thirteen, several of whom served as Sea Soldiers, to recover the Long Trail and his property. Warren fell in with the St. Margaret and St. Helen in the Pocomoke on April 23, 1635, and a desperate naval battle resulted. Lieutenant Warren, John Bellson, and William Dawson of Virginia, and William Ashmore of Maryland were killed. The Marylanders were repulsed. 37

"The first engagement that probably ever occurred between inhabitants of the American Colonies and enemies afloat," wrote J. Fenimore Cooper, "was a conflict between John Gallup, who was engaged in" trading for skins with Indians, in a sloop of twenty tons, and some Indians, during the Pequot War, in 1635. 38

John Oldham, a trader, was murdered by the Indians near Block Island and his sloop captured. 38 John Gallup was proceeding from Connecticut to Boston, in his little
sloop manned by himself, one other man, and two boys. Among the islands that form a chain between Long Island and Connecticut, Gallup saw a vessel like his own, and recognized it as Oldham's sloop. It was full of Indians. Suspecting that they had murdered Oldham, bore down upon them, and fired duck shot so thick among them that he soon cleared the deck. Gallup then rammed the sloop three times, bored her with his anchor, and raked her fore and aft with his shot. Finally Gallup boarded and recaptured the vessel. 38

Between 1613, when Argall visited Acadie and 1654, when it was subjugated to the English, that country was the cause and scene of much fighting. Expeditions, of the nature that the Marine Corps would now organize to-day for Latin-American service, were sent there from the New England Colonies. War vessels of the American Colonies either accompanied these expeditions or carried small detachments of soldiers used to the ways of the sea. 39

In 1645 a vessel built at Cambridge, Mass., had 14 guns and was manned with 30 men. On a cruise near Gibraltar she fell in with a rover of Barbary, carrying 20 guns and 70 men. They fought all day and finally the rover's rudder was damaged, the New England ship
escaping. This was the first regular naval combat. An American ship of 150 tons built in Rhode Island in 1646 by New Haven gentlemen gave us an early, if not our earliest, "mystery of the sea." She sailed from New Haven in January of 1647, and from that date not a vestige has been seen or heard of her. She sank without trace.

It was not in the nature of things that the Dutch of New Netherlands and the English of New England could get along without some friction. Indeed, "the first regular cruisers employed by the American Colonists," wrote Cooper, owed "their existence to misunderstandings with the Dutch." The Americans of New Haven built a vessel in Rhode Island in 1646, but she was lost at sea. Shortly after "a small cruiser, carrying 10 guns and 40 men was employed by the United Colonies of Hartford and New Haven to cruise in Long Island Sound with a view to prevent the encroachments of the Dutch and to keep open the communication with the settlement they had made on the opposite shore." War between England and Holland came in 1651. While the Dutch colony at Manhattan was militarily too feeble to annoy New England, nevertheless, due to rumors of the Dutch Americans at New Amsterdam urging the Indians to attack the Americans of New England the latter prepared for
war. Peace was had before this force of Americans could be used against the Dutch and it was used to dislodge the French from Penobscot and St. Johns, which was accomplished in 1654. 43

Having narrowly escaped losing her own American territory, Holland, in 1655, absorbed the Swedish possessions along the Delaware. Then in 1664 all of Holland’s holdings were taken from her by a British Fleet and New Amsterdam became New York. 44 This conquest brought a realization to America that England had command of the sea. 45 This was the year that the British Marines came into existence. "A bronze memorial tablet in honor of Richard Nicolls, first British Colonial Governor of New York was unveiled" on June 8, 1931, "on the steps of the Custom House," New York City. "The tablet is on the approximate site of a corner of the Dutch fort which Governor Nicolls captured" in 1644. 46

Bacon’s Rebellion in Virginia in 1675 was but one of the embers that a century later flamed forth to consume an unjust power that could not understand the new idea. It was the expression, by force, of American thought. When tax-payers are denied suffrage and informed that they cannot defend their property from Indians, direct action is their only weapon. That was
Virginia in 1675 and Nathaniel Bacon was the American leader, called the "first successful American Rebel." To Marines, as Americans, this is an interesting part of our history but in view of the use of naval force by both sides, and of English Marines by Great Britain, it has an added interest.

In direct opposition to the orders of Governor Sir William Berkeley, Bacon fought Indians defensively. Berkeley declared him little better than a rebel. As Bacon was returning to Jamestown "in a sloop with 30 armed followers he was intercepted by an armed ship," the Adam and Eve. Shots were exchanged and Bacon was captured but later pardoned. Bacon, however, continued his operations contrary to the ideas of Berkeley. Berkeley proclaimed him a rebel and traitor. Bacon occupied Jamestown with three or four hundred armed men. Then joined by one Bland who seized a ship, increased her armament to 16 guns and in company with a bark of 4 guns, sailed with 250 armed men to attack Berkeley. This expedition was a failure. A short time after, in September, 1676, Berkeley entered the James River "with two ships and some sixteen sloops" and reoccupied Jamestown. Before Bacon could conclude his task, illness and worry killed this "first successful American Rebel." He died in October, 1676.
Bacon's Rebellion caused the King of England to despatch to America what was known as the "Virginia Expedition." Towards the autumn of 1676, "information reached England of serious disturbances having broken out in the Colony of Virginia, consequent on certain alleged unjust taxes having been imposed, and also on the friction arising from the working of the Navigation Act."

On October 3, 1676, orders were issued for a provisional battalion of 1,000 men to be raised for service in Virginia. The British Marines contributed three officers and one company.

The colours of this company of Marines carried a "field white waved with lemon equally mixt with ye Red Crosses quite through with J. D. Y. in cypher in gold." The expedition embarked in merchant transports on November 24, 1676, and sailed that day for Virginia.

Bacon had died before the arrival of this Expedition. After a stay of nearly two years in Virginia, during which time it was engaged in no active service, the battalion was recalled. It arrived back in England about April, 1678. A large number of these British Marines, however, remained in America as colonists while twenty of them were left there to form the nucleus "of a local military force."
The war with the Indians, commonly called King Philip's War brought little if any action afloat and with the death of Philip in 1676 the danger was over. 53

The tidings of the success of William III, Prince of Orange, who succeeded James II arrived in Boston in the Spring of 1689. 54 Governor Andros was imprisoned, the frigate Rose captured, militia organized under its officers, a council of safety formed, and Bradstreet re-proclaimed governor. War between England and France was entered into in April, 1689. It extended to America where it was known as King William's War, 55 and lasted from 1689 to 1697.

An expedition under Sir William Phips took Port Royal in Acadia. 56

Phips was selected to lead a sea attack against Quebec. The fleet composed of "merchantmen and fishing vessels," sailed August 6, 1690, from Boston and was before Quebec about the middle of October, 1690. It was unsuccessful, due to lack of the "surprise" element; the land army failing; the shortage of ammunition; the late setting out; and sickness. "The success of the expedition depended on the blow being struck suddenly," but after arriving in the vicinity the French were afforded three weeks in which to prepare.
Portsmouth, N. H., well-known to all American Marines, was the scene of many incidents in colonial times. The Faulkland, built at Portsmouth, N. H., in 1690, is the earliest man-of-war constructed in America. 57

The Ship Essex (Captain John Beal) of Salem sailing from Bilbao, Spain had a battle at sea in 1695 and lost coxswain John Samson. A little later the Salem Packet captured a French ship off Newfoundland. 58

In 1702, after the death of King William, Queen Anne declared war against France and Spain. Holland was also drawn into the war. Fighting soon began in America and peace was not restored until the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713. 59 The Americans assisted on both the sea and land. In July, 1703 the brigantine Charles (Daniel Powman) was fitted out at Boston as a privateer to cruise against the French and Spanish, with whom Great Britain was at war. 60

There was the galley New York fitted out in 1705 by Captain Regnier Tongrelow as a New York privateer. Also the privateer Dragon under Captain Gineks and the privateers of Captain Zacharias and Captain Nat Burches. 61

The Spaniards conceiving that South Carolina properly belonged to the Floridas, undertook an expedition against Charleston, in 1706, with four ships of war and
a galley. A commission of vice-admiral was immediately given to Lieutenant-Colonel Rhett. He hoisted his flag in the Crown galley, and several ships that happened to be in port were hastily manned and armed. In the meantime the enemy had arrived and surrounded the place, but meeting with some repulses on shore, Colonel Rhett got under way to engage the hostile squadron when the latter retired with precipitation. Hearing of a large enemy ship on the coast, a few days after the fleet had disappeared, Colonel Rhett went in quest of her with two small vessels and succeeded in capturing her.

From an early day the possession of Port Royal in Acadie appears to have been a favourite object with the colonists, most probably from the great interest they felt in the fisheries. We have already seen that expeditions were sent against this place in the earliest wars, while we are now to find no less than three undertaken, with the same object, between 1707 and 1712.

The first of these expeditions, set on foot in 1707, was almost purely of Colonial origin. Rhode Island, New Hampshire and Massachusetts contributed but Connecticut held aloof. Colonel John March was in command of the land forces. The fleet sailed from Boston, May 13, 1707, in twenty-three transports and whale-boats. It was es-
corted by the man-of-war **Deptford** (Stulkley) and the Massachusetts Province galley (Southack). Arrived at Port Royal on the 26th. Seven hundred men were immediately landed and enjoyed an initial success. On the 29th they were attacked by a body of Indians and about 60 Canadians. The latter had arrived, just before, to man a privateer which lay in the harbor. They killed two of the English and then retreated. It was finally decided that Port Royal was "more than a match for our raw undisciplined Army," and on June 6th or 7th the whole force was reembarked. Upon returning to Boston the expedition was strongly criticized. "Captain Stuckley of the **Deptford** gave an account of the" place's strength, and defended the retirement.64

The second attempt was not made until the year 1709, when an enterprise on a larger scale was planned. A fleet and five regiments of British regulars were to be sent out from England. Massachusetts and Rhode Island Militia were to join. Montreal was to be attacked by land from Albany by militia from New York, Connecticut, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania, and Indians.65 The maritime part of the expedition was abandoned, after waiting three months in the port of Boston for the British ships that were to escort it, and to aid in subduing the place. The attack on Montreal was also given up, for
want of the expected co-operation. 63

The third attempt was made in 1710 when Colonel Francis Nicholson, of the British Marine forces, was entrusted with the command of the military part of the expedition. On this occasion the preparations were made conjointly by the Crown and the provinces, the latter furnishing the transports and several cruisers. The fleet consisted, in all, of thirty-six sail; three fourth-rates, two fifth-rates, five frigates, a bomb ketch, the Province galley, and twenty-four transports. 63

"fourteen transports in the pay of Massachusetts, five of Connecticut, two of New Hampshire, and three of Rhode Island." There "was a regiment of Marines commanded by Colonel Reading," and four regiments raised in New England, two commanded by Sir Charles Hobby and Colonel Tailer of Massachusetts Bay, one by Colonel Whiting of Connecticut and one by Colonel Walton of New Hampshire. 66

The British Marines were lodged on Castle Island, 67 in Boston Harbor, until the expedition was ready. This was a notable event because it is believed to be the first time that reinforcements were sent direct to the Northern Colonies "for only a single expedition." They were not in America for permanent garrison service but for "expeditionary" service. 68
The expedition sailed from Boston on the 16th of September, arriving off Port Royal on the 24th, and landed on the 25th. On the 29th there was the flicker of a white flag from the French lines. It was a flag of truce from the French Governor bearing a letter stating that the ladies in the fort "did not at all appreciate the rude salutes of the English shells" and requested permission, which was granted, for them the "hospitality of the British Camp where they would be out of harm's way." On the 1st of October, "a company of American troops was formed up on either side of the main entrance of the fort," and the French commander "came out and handed over the keys of the fort." Its name was changed to Annapolis by which appellation it is yet known.

Stimulated by this success, a still more important attempt was got up in 1711, against the French possessions on the banks of the St. Lawrence. England now appeared disposed to put forth her power in earnest, and a fleet of fifteen sail, twelve of which were sent directly from England, and three of which had been stationed on the coast, was put under the orders of vice-admiral Sir Hoveden Walker, for that purpose. In this fleet were several ships of the line, and it was accompanied by
forty transports and six store vessels. Five of the ve-
cran regiments that had served under Marlborough, were
sent out with the fleet, and two regiments raised in New
England being added to them, the land forces amounted to
between 6,000 and 7,000 men. British Marines formed a
part of the expedition. 70

After considerable delay, the fleet sailed on the
30th of July, 1711, when the Governor of Massachusetts
ordered a fast to be observed every Thursday, until the
results should be known. On the 14th of August, the
ships entered the St. Lawrence, and on the 18th the
admiral, in order to collect his transports, put into
the Bay of Gaspee. Here he remained until the 20th,
when the fleet proceeded. On the 20th the ships were
off soundings, out of sight of land, and enveloped in
a fog, with a gale blowing. The fleet now brought to
with the ships' heads to the southward. Notwithstand-
ing this precaution, it was soon discovered that the
whole of them were in imminent jeopardy among the rocks,
islands, and currents of the north shore, which was,
moreover, a lee shore. Some of the vessels saved them-
selves by anchoring, among which was the Edgar, the
admiral's own ship; but eight transports were lost,
together with a thousand people, and the expedition was
abandoned. 71
The Admiral now dismissed the provincial troops and vessels, and sailed for England with the remainder of the fleet. These signal disasters led to loud complaints and to bitter recriminations between the English and American officers. To the latter was attributed a fatal loss of time, in raising their levies and making other preparations which brought the expedition too late in the season, and they were also accused of furnishing incompetent pilots. On the part of the Americans, the Admiral, and the English commanders in general, were said to be opinionated, indisposed to take advice and regarded the provincials with superciliousness.

The Admiral threw the responsibility of having hove-to the fleet on the pilots, who, in their turn, declared that it was done contrary to their advice. It is in favour of the Americans, that none of their own vessels, except one small one was lost, and that the crew of this vessel was saved.

This war was ended in 1713 by the treaty of Utrecht, which established the cession of Acadia to the English by its "ancient limits," and for more than 30 years there was peace between the Americans and French in America. The French prepared, however, by building a fortress on Cape Breton Island, calling it Louisburg.
They also built a chain of forts from the Great Lakes down the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi.

After the Peace of Utrecht most of the American colonies maintained small armed vessels for the protection of their coasts and commerce, particularly against pirates. Some of their commanders afterwards rose to more or less distinction either at home or in the British service. 73

The American Colonies enjoyed peace for three-fourths of the period from 1713 to the Revolution. In war-time their fishing fleets were dismantled, but the fishermen found exciting employment on armed merchantmen bearing letters of marque and reprisal. 74

The letters of Governor Alexander Spotswood, of Virginia, in 1710 and 1711, show his interest in naval matters. On July 31, 1710 he wrote that he had written to "Collo. Lee, Naval Officer of Potomack" to send four prisoners via the Deptford or Bedford galley. 75 On August 13, 1710 he wrote that he had "sent orders to the Naval Officers" to join Captain Clifton, and with reference to "the Potomack Ships" joining that officer. On May 5, 1711 he wrote to the "Commissioners of the Customs" regarding the "Naval Officer of Potomack", the "Naval Officer of the Eastern Shore" and the clearing
of the Frigate Robinson from the Rappa Hannock River. 75

European wars gave rise to several abnormal forms of naval enterprises by Americans. One of them was a privateering that was closely akin to piracy. The peace of Utrecht in 1713 closed for a time the opportunity for legitimate privateering, but it soon developed again upon the outbreak of the war with Spain in 1739. 76

Piracy, however, flourished in peace and war, and had to be combatted by the Americans on the sea. American Soldiers of the Sea on the Colonial war vessels did their share in routing these buccaneers. 77

The Caribbean and Gulf of Mexico area was of great commercial interest even in the days of sailing ships in the 18th century. 78

Cartagena and Havana were the two great bases established by Spain at that time. A smaller defended harbor was at Porto Bello near Colon where merchandise was exchanged for the gold drawn from Spanish America. The usual route of sailing ships made Cartagena and Havana objects of attack when Spain was at war. 79

When Great Britain declared war against Spain in 1739 plans called for attacks on these three ports. In America this war was known as King George's War. It lasted from 1739 to 1748. 80 Many Americans fought as
part of the forces under Admiral Vernon operating against Cartagena and Cuba and they also furnished many transports in these expeditions. They fought against the Spanish in Central America. They also sent out many privateers to prey on the enemies' commerce.

Henry Cabot Lodge wrote that "the cooperation of Virginia and her sister colonies with the Mother Country in the fruitless expedition against Carthagena" served "merely as one more step in the development of the union." 

This war involves the story of a group of Americans known as "Spotswood's Marines" or more properly as "Gooch's Marines." 

Gooch's Marines were part of the British Marines' organization.

The year 1664 is assigned as the birth-year of the British Marines' organization. In 1713 came the Peace of Utrecht. This was the "signal for the disbandment and breakup of the Marine establishment." Only four invalid companies were left to represent the gallant organization that had "done and suffered so much for its country."

War between Spain and Great Britain occurred in 1739. In his address to the House of Commons when he opened Parliament on November 15th of that year the King
Chapter II.  

stated that "as in the prosecution of this war a number of soldiers to serve on board the Fleet may be requisite, I have judged it proper, that a body of Marines should be raised, and have directed the estimates for this purpose to be likewise prepared and laid before you." In the following month an Order in Council decreed the formation of six Marine regiments, each with an authorized strength of 1,100. Increases followed, and among them were Gooch's American Marines.

The records of correspondence between the British Home Office and the Admiralty contain much material about Gooch's Marines. An Order of January 5, 1740, (after stating that information of the War with Spain had been sent by the Duke of Newcastle to the Governors of "Massachusetts Bay, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Virginia, North Carolina, Maryland, Pennsylvania, Connecticut and Rhode Island") continued:

"And His Grace signified His Majesty's pleasure to the said Governors, that they should forthwith make the proper dispositions for raising as many men as they should be able to procure within their Governments and as the King intended that the troops to be raised in America should be commanded by Colonel Spotswood, the whole, however, after they should have joined the Regular
Troops under the command of Lord Cathcart, they should confer or correspond with Colonel Spotswood, if they had an opportunity, upon everything that might relate to the performance of this service. That Col. Blakeny, who was appointed Adjutant-General, would set out from hence as soon as possible, with His Majesty's Letters and Authorities for making the said levies and that he would carry with him a considerable number of Arms, some hampers of cloathing for the Soldiers, and what money or credit should be judged necessary for this service. The Duke of Newcastle likewise acquainted the said Governors that it was His Majesty's intention to give all proper encouragement to the New Levies, by ordering them to be supplied with Arms and a proper cloathing; and to be paid by His Majesty, with an assurance of their coming in for their share of any booty that might be taken from the Enemy, and their being sent back to their respective habitations when the Service should be over, unless they should desire to settle themselves elsewhere, and that His Majesty would order to be sent by Colonel Blakeney a number of blank Commissions to be given to them (the said Governors) to the officers that were to command the Troops under Colonel Spotswood. That the King did not think proper to confine them to any particular number of men to be
raised within their respective Governments, His Majesty depending upon their care and zeal for his service. That they would procure as many as they possibly could. That they should be considering in what manner to provide Transport and Provisions, and even if it were necessary, should secure them out of hand for such a number of men as they should judge (they) might be able to get within their respective Governments. 92

"His Majesty signed a Warrant to the Master General of the Ordnance, for preparing and delivering to Col. Blakeney, who was sent on a special commission, 3,000 muskets fixed with bayonets and other ordnance stores," on January 31, 1740. 92

Orders were given on March 28, 1740 for providing in Ireland a sufficient quantity of Salt Provisions for 3,000 men for one month and for having a vessel to carry the same to Virginia. 92

On April 2, 1740 orders to the various Governors for raising troops "were signed, which were to consist of Companies of 100 men each including 4 Sergts, 4 Corporals, 2 Drummers besides Cord Officers, which were to be 1 Capt, 2 Lieuts, and an Ensign, His Mat'y reserving to himself the nomination of the Field and Staff Officers and of one Lieut for each Company, who would be men of
experience in Service, and sent from hence for their assistance." 92

"Early the next year (1741), three additional Marine regiments were raised in New York, the command of the whole being entrusted to Colonel Alexander Spottiswoode of Virginia, Colonel William Blakeney being appointed Adjutant General. This Colonial force was not long afterward formed into a single regiment of four battalions under the command of Colonel William Gooch (of Virginia), and is generally referred to as 'Gooch's Marines,' taking rank in the Army List as the 43d Regiment. As the British Government had decided to make a serious attack upon the Spanish possessions in America, the determination to raise a force of Marines near the scene of action is easily accounted for." 89

From Cannon's Records, and the Gentleman's Magazine of 1741, we learn that the Field Officers of these American Marines and Subalterns were appointed by the King, and that their Captains of Companies were nominated by the American Provinces. "It was supposed that from climate, the natives of the American Continent were better calculated for the service upon which they were destined than Europeans." "Three Regiments of Foot," recorded the contemporary Gentlemen's Magazine, "of a thousand
men each, are raising with all speed in our American colonies, and will consist of natives or of those enured to the climate. Their general rendezvous is to be at New York, where the Royal Standard is set up." 89

"The American companies were chiefly raised by the interest and at the charge of their respective Captains, many of whom were members of the Assemblies in the Provinces where they resided; others lived upon their own plantations, and had commands in the Militia. His Majesty was pleased to send to New York thirty young gentlemen, under the direction of Brigadier Blakeney, to serve in the Corps as Lieutenants; they had carried arms either in the Old Corps at home, or in the Scotch Regiments in the Dutch service, and were most of them cadets of good families in North Britain." 39

Hart in Admirals of the Caribbean sets the strength as follows: "Massachusetts (five companies); Rhode Island (two companies); Connecticut (two companies); New York (five companies); New Jersey (three companies); Pennsylvania (eight companies); Maryland (three companies); Virginia (four companies); North Carolina (four companies); Among other American officers was Colonel Laurence Washington." 93

Tobias Smollet 94 wrote that these Americans were raised according to "a plan" that "was proposed by Colonel
Spotswood, governor of Virginia," in consequence of which he was empowered to raise a regiment of Americans, consisting of four battalions, to serve under his command against the Spaniards; but, he dying before the scheme could be put into execution, this regiment was given to Colonel Gooch, who succeeded him in the government of that colony. The Lieutenants were appointed in England, at the recommendation of Lord Cathcart, who commanded all the land forces on the intended expedition and he chose for this service young gentlemen of family, chiefly North Britons who had learned the rudiments of the military art in Holland and other foreign services, and consequently were the better qualified to discipline a newly raised regiment. These had commissions signed by His Majesty's own hand; but the captains and ensigns were appointed by the governors of the different provinces in which the companies were levied, according to a power vested in them by the King for that purpose. 96

So, in carrying out this plan of Spotswood, three additional regiments of Royal British Marines were raised in America early in 1740. It was supposed that the natives of that continent were better calculated for the service in that climate than the Europeans, and they were clothed in a manner well adapted for their duties. Their uniform
was camlet coats, brown linen waistcoats, and canvas trousers. The colonels, lieutenant-colonels, and other commissioned officers were appointed by the Crown, except the captains of companies, who were nominated by the American provinces. Colonel Alexander Spotswood of Virginia, was commandant of the whole.

Colonel Spotswood, on January 5, 1740, was informed that it was His Majesty's intention that the Troops to be raised in America should be commanded by him. He was therefore to cooperate with the several Governors for the better execution of His Majesty's orders. But if, on account of his health he should not be able to perform that service, he was to send those orders to the Lieutenant-Governor of Virginia (William Gooch), who was in that case to look upon them as directed to himself and to act accordingly with which the said Lieutenant-Governor was acquainted.

A commission was signed on April 2, 1740 "for Alexander Spotswood Esqr: To be a Colonel of a Regt of Foot to be raised in America for His Majesty's Service, to consist of 30 Companies." Commissions were also signed for four majors, blank commissions for thirty captains, for sixty lieutenants of which twenty-eight were in blank, for thirty ensigns in blank, and for four adjutants and a surgeon.
Colonel Blakeney was dispatched on April 7, 1740 with the various Commissions to which reference has been made, and "an Order was likewise sent to the Lt Govr of New York to make a draught of Soldiers out of the Independent Companies there, to be employed as Sergts in the Regt of Foot to be raised in America." 92

A letter dated "Whitehall, April 18, 1740," addressed to Admiral Vernon, announcing the despatch of the expedition under Lord Cathcart, stated that "directions have also been given for raising a considerable number of men in His Majesty's Colonies in N. America, which it is hoped will amount to 3,000 and are to be commanded by Colonel Spotswood whom His Majesty has been pleased on this occasion to make a Major General." 99

On July 1, 1740 "an additional number of Mortars, Arms and Ammunition and ordnance stores were ordered to be provided for the use of the Expedition, and for the Troops to be raised in America." 92

"Two Blank Commissions were signed by the Lords Justices for 2 Lieut Cols: in the Regt to be raised in America," on October 2, 1740.

Most of the Colonies sent Marines. 96 New Hampshire, Delaware, South Carolina and Georgia sent no troops. The latter two, with North Carolina, had sent an expedition
against St. Augustine while Delaware was included in the quota of Pennsylvania. The Massachusetts troops were commanded by Captains Daniel Goffe, John Prescott, Thomas Phillips, George Stewart and John Winslow. The Newport, R. I., company was commanded by Captain Joseph Sheffield and the Providence, R. I. Company by Captain William Hopkins. The two Connecticut companies were commanded by Captains Winslow and Prescott. Captain Farmer commanded one of the New Jersey companies.

Virginia sent 400 Men and appropriated £ 5,000 for their support. The captain of one of her companies was Laurence Washington, the half-brother of George Washington. Another was Captain William Hebb the great grandfather of Colonel Clement Dorsey Hebb who in 1890 served as Acting Commandant of the Marine Corps. Captain James Innes served as captain of one of the North Carolina companies. Governor Dinwiddie, on November 16, 1754, wrote Sir Thomas Robinson that James Innes "had a commission in Sir William Gooch's regiment at Cartagena."

Eight companies of infantry went from Philadelphia, under Captains appointed by the Governor, to join Admiral Vernon in the West Indies. Similar companies also went from Virginia and Carolina. All were to rendezvous at
Chapter II.  

Jamaica. 106 "War with Spain was proclaimed at the Court House" in Philadelphia on April 14, 1740. "The Governor and Corporation were present; salute of cannon upon Society Hill; liquor free to all; loud health-drinking to the Royal Family; and bonfires at night. The Governor at once issued proclamation authorizing a levy of troops for the expedition against Cuba, the following being the recruiting officers named for Philadelphia City and County, Captains Palmer, Thomas Lawrence, Samuel Love; at Perkiomen, Marcus Huling; Manatawny, Owen Evan; Limerick, Alexander Woodrop and James Hamilton. It was expected to find plenty of recruits among the continental foreigners in the province, but they did not respond. Many flattering inducements were thrown out, and when these failed the Governor countenanced the enlistment of foreigners, a practice very injurious and leading to serious trouble and vehement remonstrance. When the Governor called for supplies the Assembly retaliated upon him, and thus the endless irritation was kept up." 107

As provided in the King's orders of January 5, 1740 William Gooch, Lieutenant-Governor of Virginia, on the death of Colonel Spotswood on the eve of sailing, succeeded him in command of the American forces. 108

"Admiral Vernon (nicknamed Old Grog), 109 who was to
command the expedition, was already in the West Indies, but had no Marines, as he had sailed some months before the formation of a Marine Establishment had been decided upon. He was, however, strongly in favor of having Marines in his ships, and it was probably in great part owing to his representations that their resuscitation was determined on. Just before sailing for the West Indies, on 23d July, 1739, he had written to the Duke of Newcastle:

"I could wish indeed, we had each of us a company of regular troops sent on board of us, which would have strengthened us in numbers, as well as had their expertness in handling their arms, to have incited our seamen with the imitation of them. If we should come to a general war with France as well as Spain, I believe your grace will have already perceived from the difficulty in manning these ships as they are, the necessity there may be of converting most of our marching regiments into Marines."

Admiral Vernon sailed from Portsmouth, England, July 20, and arrived at Jamaica on October 23, 1739. Here he embarked 200 soldiers under the command of Captain Newton to serve as Marines and sailed for Porto Bello in Panama.
Porto Bello was captured in November, 1739. 115

It was in this expedition that the word "grog" came into being. Admiral Vernon wore a rough boat cloak called a grogham and Vernon was nick-named "Old Grog." Shortly after the surrender of Porto Bello the Admiral introduced West Indian rum aboard ship. It was nicknamed grog. 116

Admiral Vernon was joined by eight sail of transports, escorted by H. M. S. Wolf, in October, 1740, bringing land forces from North America. 117

In a letter dated November 10, 1740, written at Port Royal, Jamaica, to His Excellency James Pattin at Barbadoes, Admiral Vernon stated that "Col. Gooch with ye forces rais'd in Virginia and Philadelphia is arrived here and we may reasonably expect every day those coming from New York with Col. Blakeney; and if Lord Cathcart (on Ogle's ships) be coming you must soonest hear of him to the windward." 118

In the meantime a reinforcing expedition under Sir Chaloner Ogle, had sailed in October, 1740, from England to join Vernon. 119 Colomb wrote that Ogle sailed with a "considerable body of Marines and land-forces under Lord Cathcart." 120 Field tells us that Ogle's vessels carried six regiments of British Marines and two regiments of foot. 121 Ogle arrived at the Island of Dominica on
December 19, 1740, according to Colomb who wrote that Cathcart died there. Ogle's Squadron included 21 sail of the line, besides frigates and fireships, with 12,000 sailors and six regiments of foot and Marines. Field informs us that Lord Cathcart died of dysentery before the fleet reached Dominica, where it arrived January 3, 1741. General Wentworth succeeded Lord Cathcart in command of the land forces. Ogle came under Vernon's command when he arrived at Jamaica early in January, 1741.

Colonel Field contributes this information: "On arrival at Hispaniola, further reinforcements were embarked in the shape of two of the newly raised regiments of American Marines and a few other Colonial levies," to which the following note was added:

"The American regiments joined Vernon's Expedition in Jamaica on the 25th of February, 1741, probably from three to four thousand strong, but thanks to the climate more than to the bullets of the enemy, their casualties were such that on the 5th of October of the same year there were mustered 'Fit for Duty' only 210 Sergeants, 197 Corporals, 74 Drummers, and 1,610 rank and file."

On January 5, 1741, while at Jamaica, Admiral Vernon wrote to General Wentworth:

"I was exceedingly surprised upon reading Capt Trevor's
letter, that you had prevailed on him to give orders for the sick soldiers of the American Regiment being received into the Hospital for our seamen at Port Royal, an order, I conceive, neither he nor I can justify, bringing such a charge on the Navy, and which he may be liable to have charged to his wages."129

On January 17, 1741, Admiral Vernon wrote General Wentworth as follows: "The Experiment designed for going with Lieut. Lowther, is ready for sea at any time, wanting only a supply of men, for which I have already acquainted you that the assistance of a Detachment of 30 Soldiers of the American Regt: (or from any other you shall think proper) will be wanted, which I must now desire you will be pleased to give orders for accordingly."130

A Return dated February 14, 1741, of the "Officers and private men belonging to the Honorable Colonel Gooch's Regiment put on board the Fleet commanded by the Honorable Edward Vernon, Vice-Admiral and Commander-in-Chief in the West Indies," shows Gooch's Marines distributed as follows: The First Battalion in four ships: Defiance (2 officers, 48 men); Suffolk (5 officers, 165 men); Falmouth (no officers, 20 men); Orford (2 officers, 48 men). The Second Battalion in three ships: Chichester (4 officers, 135 men); Rippon (3 officers, 97 men);
Litchfield (no officers, 10 men). The Third Battalion consisted of 11 officers and 334 men but no ships were shown. The Fourth Battalion in five ships: Princess Caroline (3 officers, 87 men); Russell (4 officers, 116 men); Torbay (3 officers, 87 men); Princess Amelia (4 officers, 113 men); Montague (2 officers, 53 men). This gives a total of 43 officers and 1,338 men.

However, regardless of the date of joining Vernon, these American Marines were with him when Cartagena was attacked. 132

"During the last week in January, 1741," the Fleet sailed from Port Royal, Jamaica. It made "Cape Tiberon," on the western extremity of Hispaniola (now the island of Haiti and Santo Domingo) on the seventh of February. After several days of careful reconnoitering to make certain whether or not the French Fleet had sailed for Europe as reported" Vernon anchored "in the bays near the Cape." 133

The fleet anchored two leagues to the westward of Port Louis, Isle of Vache, near Hispaniola. For seven days "detachments from the American Regiment" were sent daily "ashore to cut fascine and pickets." 134

A Council of War, on February 16th, decided to make an attack on Cartagena. 135 "On the 25th of February the
fleet left for Cartagena" and on the fourth of March anchored "in Plaza Grande Bay between Cartagena and Point de Canoa." 136

Cartagena "was not unused to hostile demonstrations ending in capture. Sir Francis Drake had sacked it in 1585, while it was captured in 1697 by the French under de Pointis." In 1741 it was considered "the principal, the most populous, and the best fortified city in Spanish-America." 137

"The garrison of Cartagena consisted of 4,000 men; but to oppose this, the expedition contained land forces to the number of 12,000, and twenty-nine sail of the line, with a large proportion of frigates, containing in the whole 15,938 seamen," recorded Joseph Allen in his Battles of the British Navy. 138

"The entrance to Cartagena is six miles to the westward of the city, between two narrow peninsulas called Tierra Bomba and Barradera. This entrance is called Boca Chica, and is so narrow that only one ship can enter at the same time. 139

"On the side of Tierra Bomba was the square Fort St. Louis, having four bastions, mounted with eighty-two guns and three mortars; to which was added Fort St. Philip, mounting seven guns, and St. Jago mounting fifteen
guns; and a smaller battery of four guns, called Battery de Chamba, serving as outworks to it. 140

On Barradera side, the fortifications were equally strong, consisting of a fascine battery, called the Barradera; and in a small bay at the back of that, another battery of four guns. Facing the entrance of the harbor also, on a small flat island, stood Fort St. Joseph, mounting twenty-one guns. The Boca was in addition, protected by a strong boom, flanked by the broadsides of four large ships of the line. 141

The attack opened on March 9, 1741, with a heavy artillery preparation placed on the smaller defenses near the Boca Chica forts, St. Jago, St. Philip and the Chamba Battery. Troops (Smollett says Marines) were put ashore on Tierra Bomba. Fort St. Louis (Boca Chica Castle) held out. "About midnight on the 19th, 300 seamen and 200 soldiers or Marines (the latter under Captains Murra and Washington) were landed at a point on the Barradera (south) side" and spiked the Spanish guns of the fascine battery. Boca Chica Castle (Fort St. Louis) was stormed and carried on the 25th of March. 142 The boom was destroyed and the Spanish war-vessels captured or destroyed. The Spanish flagship Galicia was taken "with her Captain, the Captain of Marines, an Ensign and sixty men." The
enemy deserted the other Spanish defenses including Manzanilla Battery and the fortress of Grande Castillo. Only the outlying fort of St. Lazar was left to attack and take.

After the capture of Boca Chica Castle (St. Louis) on the 25th, the Marines were soon reembarked. The Americans who had been landed on Tierra Bomba were reembarked on April 3d.

The Army was landed on March 17, 1741, without opposition. The Military Commander requested Admiral Vernon to send a force ashore to destroy the fascine battery of the Spaniards, on the opposite side of the harbor, called the Barradera. Three hundred sailors supported by a body of soldiers that still remained on board the fleet, were conveyed thither at night in boats under the command of Captains Boscawen, Watson, Coats, Washington, Mr. Murray, and Lieutenant Forrest, who attacked the battery with great valor, repulsed the enemy and spiked the guns.

On April 5, 1741, Blakeney's and Grant's forces, of the Army, landed. These were "joined by two hundred Americans as pioneers," and the Army moved forward. A body of about 700 covered the road leading to the city and the Grenadiers were ordered to dislodge them. "A party of American soldiers" was detached to occupy a
"thick copse" to protect the main column attacking these 700 Spaniards, as the Grenadiers passed through a narrow pass. The next day "a number of Americans," were landed and cleared an encampment.134

The troops now advanced to attack San Lazardo. The operation was a complete failure.134

As soon as day-light enabled the general to view the posture of the troops, he sent to inform Brigadier Guise that, if he could push forward, he should be sustained by five hundred men, who were ordered to advance accordingly; but by this time the soldiers were disheartened, and the number of the enemy was every instant increased by reinforcements of fresh men from the city, until they equaled, if not exceeded, the assailants, for whom they waited on the hill without flinching.146

Some acrimonious messages having passed between the chiefs on this subject, the land officers demanded a general council of war, which was accordingly held on board the Admiral's own ship, on the 14th day of April, when, after the conditions of the army and the posture of affairs were taken into consideration, it was agreed, that as the troops were greatly diminished, weakened, and fatigued, and as their supplies of water were almost exhausted, the siege of such a strong place as Cartagena
could not be attempted with any probability of success; and therefore the artillery and forces should be re-embarked with all convenient expedition. 134

The Land and Water parts of this expedition did not seem to understand each others language. The principles of war are said to be eternal, sacred, everlasting, unchangeable. All were violated at Cartagena that it was possible to violate. Ill-feeling and dissension between the naval and military leaders destroyed all possibility of success. 148

Vernon allowed Wentworth only 1,500 men with which to capture St. Lazar. Wentworth felt this number to be inadequate. 149

A Council of War held on board the Princess Carolina in Cartagena Harbor on March 30, 1741 passed a resolution reading in part as follows:

"And as General Wentworth represented they should want a greater number of men to be landed with them, in order effectually to invest the town; it was resolved, he should be supplied from the men-of-War with all such of the American Forces as he should judge proper to be entrusted on shore, and likewise of the Detachments that were yet remaining on board of Lord James Cavendish's and Col. Bland's whenever the rest of the forces were landed, and General Wentworth should represent to be
General wentworth embodied this demand in a letter written on board the Dorsetshire transport on April 2, 1741, in which he asked to be provided with: "All such of the Marines, which remain of the 600 put on board His Matys Ships at Spithead, the remainder of Lord Janes Cavendish's and Col. Bland's Regts & a detachment of 1500 men under proper Officers from the American Regt commanded by Col. Gooch." 151

The troops began landing early on the morning of April 5th "at a place about two miles from St. Lazar." "Two hundred Americans as pioneers," were present according to Smollett. Other Americans formed part of the combat force. The Convent of La Popa, situated on high ground overlooking St. Lazar, was occupied. Wentworth bivouacked his men at La Quinta on low ground between La Popa and the sea.152

Admiral Vernon and General Wentworth now indulged in a warfare of words, a heated controversy over the methods and strength to capture St. Lazar.153

"At the Head Quarters of La Quinta," on April 7th a Council of War presided over by General Wentworth took this action:

"The Council of War having taken into consideration
the Report of Mr. Armstrong, Chief Engineer and likewise intelligence received from prisoners, it appears to the said Council of War that the walls of the Castle of St Lazar, cannot be less than 25 feet in height, which is equal to the length of their longest Ladders, that there is, besides a Ditch with water and very muddy at the bottom, supposed to be about 15 feet in depth. We therefore, for these reasons deem it impracticable to scale the walls, and do resolve with all possible dispatch to raise a Battery in order to make a breach." 154

"The Council of War are further of opinion that if the Castle were at the same time Bombarded from the Fleet and a large ship brought to batter it, it might facilitate the success." 154

"Which Resolution the Council of War desire their president to communicate to Admiral Vernon by the first opportunity." This Resolution was signed by eight officers, six of whom were veteran Marine officers. 154

"The assaulting detachment consisting of 500 Grenadiers under Colonel Grant and 1,000 Marines, commanded by Colonel Wynward formed up on the beach about 4 o'clock on the morning of April 9th. With them were some Colonial troops from Jamaica, and a detachment of Americans carrying scaling ladders, wool-packs, and the hand grenades
belonging to the Grenadiers who had been relieved of their pouches on account of the hot climate. Wolfe's Marines, 500 strong, formed the reserve. "Brigadier Guise was in command of the whole."155 The Americans were to follow the attacking columns at some distance in the rear.156

The attack was a ghastly failure.157 Among other things the guides proved false. Colonel Grant as he died gasped: "The General ought to hang the guides and the King ought to hang the General."158

"The walls were inaccessible, for the Americans had fled, throwing down their scaling ladders and the wool-packs with which the ditch was to have been filled up. Three of them only stuck to their duty, and with a ladder which these brave fellows had dragged up, a few Grenadiers, headed by a Sergeant, actually succeeded in reaching the ramparts of St. Lazar itself."159

The actions of the Americans are better described in the Historical Chronicle160 in these words: "The Americans, finding they were knocked down without any arms to defend themselves, threw down their ladders, etc., and retired to their camp. Three only were brought up to the trenches, upon which about ten of our Grenadiers and a Sergeant mounted the walls of the fort," etc.

And Tobias Smollett credits the American Marines with
bravery as follows:

"Nor could the scaling ladders, wool-packs, or hand-
granades, be of any service in this emergency; for the
Americans, who carried them in the rear, seeing the troops
falling by whole platoons, refused to advance with their
burdens; but though they would not advance as pioneers,
many of them took up the firelocks which they found on
the field, and, mixing among the troops, behaved very
bravely." 134

According to Hart, in Admirals of the Caribbean,
the Americans were "credited by the land-Officers to
have rendered gallant services." 161

"The tropical rains due at this season now set in,
sickness increased, and after the captured harbor works
had been dismantled and blown up, and their guns destr-
yroyed, the expedition re-embarked and withdrew to Ja-
maica leaving the harbor full of rotting corpses. Sel-
dom has a worse fiasco dulled the lustre of British arms." 89

"As far as the Marines are concerned, here ends —
and very honorably — the story of the attempt on Cartagenas,"
wrote Colonel Field. Admiral Vernon acted childishly "at
a final council of war after the repulse at St. Lazar.
"So the wrangling continued to the end, Vernon throughout
having striven rather to dictate to and interfere with
the Military commanders than to support them by a judicious use of his ships. Wentworth, doubtless, was not free from blame, but he was terribly and hopelessly handicapped by Vernon."

Hervey wrote that "the General complained that the Fleet lay idle, while his troops were harassed and diminished by hard duty and distemper. The Admiral affirmed that his ships could not lie near enough to batter the town of Cartagena, and upbraided the General with want of activity and resolution to attack the fort of St. Lazar, which commanded the town, and might be taken by scalade." 

"Between the Admiral, who seemed suddenly to be morally paralyzed, and the General, who had all the time seemed to think that if he kept his mouth open long enough the cherries would certainly drop into it," said Colomb, "there arose mutual recriminations." 

"The Admiral and the General quarreled, as was not uncommon in days when neither had an intelligent comprehension of the others business."

In a letter to the writer of this chapter, dated January 9, 1926, in which he enclosed Wentworth's resolution of April 7th, Colonel Field wrote: "The following 'Resolution' of the Council of War assembled by General Wentworth, and which was forwarded to Admiral Vernon proves..."
beyond controversy that the failure to capture the Castle of St. Lazar and the loss of life entailed was entirely the fault of this Naval Commander. He was right in urging the necessity of losing no time in the poisonous atmosphere in which the operations were being carried on, but to have persisted in demanding that St. Lazar should be attacked by enfeebled troops without any artillery preparation in the face of the 'Resolution', signed, as it was by the Officers of long experience in warfare, was absolutely criminal and his demand was further aggravated by his making no attempt to assist the assault by the guns of any of his ships. 165

Captain Marryatt in one of his stories said that "the Army thought the Navy might have beaten down the stone ramparts ten feet thick and the Navy wondered why the Army did not walk up the same ramparts which were thirty feet perpendicular." Bancroft informs us that the "enterprise, instead of having one good leader had two bad ones." Mahan is quoted as saying that the Admiral and the General quarrelled, as was not uncommon in days when neither had an intelligent comprehension of the other's business. Lodge summed it up by declaring it a "fruitless expedition" but that it was "one more step in the development of the Union."
Tobias Smollett gave his criticism in *Roderick Random*:

"It is a melancholy truth which, however, ought to be told that a low, ridiculous, and pernicious jealousy subsisted between the land and sea officers during this whole expedition; and that the chiefs of those were so weak or wicked as to take all opportunities of thwarting and manifesting their contempt for each other, at a time when the lives of so many brave fellow-subjects were at stake, and when the interest and honor of their country required the utmost zeal and unanimity. Instead of conferring personally, and cooperating with vigor and cordiality, they began to hold separate councils, drew up acrimonious remonstrances, and send irritating messages to each other; and while each of them piqued himself upon doing barely as much as would screen him from the censure of a court-martial, neither seemed displeased at the neglect of his colleague; but, on the contrary, both were in appearance glad of the miscarriage of the expedition, in hope of seeing one another stigmatized with infamy and disgrace." 170

On other matters Smollett wrote:

"Our provision consisted of putrid salt beef, to which the sailors gave the name of *Irish Horse*; salt pork of New England, which though neither fish nor flesh, savored of both;" also "brandy or rum" diluted with water.
to render it palatable (instead of small beer) "for which reason, this composition was, by the sailors not unaptly styled Necessity." Vernon's sobriquet was Old Grog given him on account of his wearing a cloak of Frogham. So the men gave this mixture of Jamaica rum and water the nickname of grog.

Allen expressed a succinct criticism in these words: "Sickness among the troops, the ill-temper among the land and sea commanders, lost the reward for which they had so long toiled." Thus ended, in damage and disgrace, the ever-memorable expedition to Cartagena, undertaken with an armament, which, if properly conducted, might have ruined not only the Spanish settlements in America, but even reduced the whole West Indies under the dominion of Great Britain.

The true cause of the disastrous ending of this Expedition was the lack of co-operation which existed between the Army and Navy.

The Cartagena Expedition caused the death of many Americans. Not one-tenth of the Americans in the Expedition returned home.

In a letter, Colonel Field wrote: After Cartagena there were the following promotions "to the Americans" that is "Gooch's." From "Wentworth's" (24th Foot),
Chapter II.  

Captain-Lieutenant Boswell to Captain in the "Americans." Lieut. Browne (Capt.) to Major in the "Americans." Lieut. Speed (Capt.) to Major in the "Americans." N.B. I assume that (Capt) was some sort of brevet rank. From Harrison's (15th Foot), Captain Campbell to Lieut. Col. in the "Americans." This officer does not appear to have been promoted directly to "Gooch's." He seems to have been appointed to "Robinson's" (2d Marines or 45th Foot) for a month or so (April-May, 1741) as a Major or Lieut. Col. before going to the "Americans." He died in Jamaica October 3, 1741 and was "succeeded by Lieut. Col. Leighton of 'Gooch's.'" There was a Francis Leighton who received his first commission November 23, 1705 and was appointed Lieut. Col. in "Robinson's" 2d Marines on April 24, 1741. He does not seem to have been promoted in the Marines and so very probably went to "Gooch's" later. On the other hand it may mean that when Campbell left "Robinson's" he was succeeded in that regiment by Leighton from "Gooch's." Captain William Meyrick from "Wynyard's" (4th Marines, 47th Foot) to Major in the "Americans." Second Lieutenant Dalrymple from "Douglas's" (5th Marines, 48th Foot) to Captain in the "Americans." At the same time Major Whitfield of the "Americans" was promoted to Lieut. Col. in "Cockran's" (late Douglas's) Marines. Considerable information about "Gooch's Marines"
is probably located in a "series of Commission Lists in the Record Office, Chancery Lane, London, Eng." 175

In Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence, Volume 89 (1741) is a List signed by Colonel Cotterell, of the NCOs and Men of the North American Regiment. 176


On June 30, 1741 General Wentworth wrote to Admiral Vernon: "The Captains of the Superb, Kent &c have refused to admit officers to come on board them, in proportion to their number of private men, which being absolutely necessary especially when the Americans come to land, you will give orders for removing that difficulty." 178

"Attempts were afterwards made upon St. Jago de Cuba, Porto Cavallo and La Guaira, but none of them met with any success. The whole design upon the Spanish possessions in America had come to a bad end due to the incapacity of those in command." 89

After the Cartagena catastrophe Vernon made an attempt
to take Cuba from the Spaniards. 179

On May 26, 1741, Vernon, Wentworth, and Governor Trelawney of Jamaica, decided to attempt to capture Santiago in pursuance of the Government's policy of offensive warfare against the Spanish colonies. 180 Hildreth wrote that five hundred additional Americans were sent from Massachusetts for this mission, but that the effort failed since there was a resentful spirit among the Americans over these operations; for it was felt that "the Colonial troops had been condemned to the hardest drudgery of the service."181

Admiral Vernon sailed into Guantánamo Bay, Cuba, on July 13, 1741. In that early period this bay bore the name of Walthenam Bay. Vernon re-named it Cumberland Bay. 182 It was forty miles to the westward of St. Jago de Cuba (Santiago) and was not occupied by Spaniards or defended. Vernon had with him "61 sail in all." The transports carried "3000 men remaining of the Army and 1,000 Negro troops which had been raised in Jamaica."183

"On July 20, 1741, a Council of War decided to begin the reduction of the Island of Cuba" by marching overland to attack St. Jago. Once again cooperation failed. General Wentworth on August 5, 1741, wrote to Admiral Vernon "from the Camp in Cuba," in part, as follows:

"As you, Sir, were pleased to assure me that all the
Chapter II. -62- Volume One

Americans should be landed when this expedition was taken into consideration ---- I fully expected them to have joined us, our numbers at the present being very low and within these few days a good deal lessened by sickness. If none can be spared from the service of the Fleet; I must acquiesce, but must own I did not expect to be disappointed in a matter of so much consequence, as being deprived of a large proportion of the forces I depended upon when we were so far advanced into the enemy's country." 184

Wentworth's army advanced as far as Santa Catalina de Guantanamo (Guantanamo City) and went into camp. There it remained. On August 3, 1741 the ranking officers signed the famous Round Robin that due to malaria and yellow fever the army must be moved at once or perish. 185

Vernon openly criticized Wentworth's conduct. For over a month a most energetic correspondence ensued between the admiral and the general while operations ashore were limited to foraging and scouting parties from the camp on the river bank near the present Guantanamo City. Hervey records the farthest advance as being that of a reconnoitering party under a Major Dunster which reached the village of Elleguava supposed to have been situated about sixteen miles from Santiago. This unit consisted of about 150 Americans and Negroes. Meanwhile the main body of the
troops was succumbing rapidly to disease.  

Operations by land against St. Jago proving unsatisfactory, Vernon proceeded by sea against that port. That also turned hopeless. Then on September 26, 1741, came another blast from General Wentworth. It seems that the Governor of Jamaica had requested "100 private men, with officers in proportion, to be draughted from Col. Gooch's Regt." So the five ranking land officers held a Council of War "in the Camp in the Island of Cuba" and passed this resolution:

"That the Troops here incamped, being reduced so low in their numbers, as not to afford three reliefs for the ordinary and extra ordinary guards, the 100 men required cannot be spared until they shall be replaced by the like number from the Independent Companies at Jamaica and actually landed here at our Camp before the 100 American Soldiers shall be embarked." 

While the forces on shore remained inactive, the fleet, in spite of the threat of the Spanish squadron at Havana, operated extensively against the enemy privateers and cleared them from the Windward Passage. A number of valuable prizes were taken, including three regular Spanish men-of-war. While a nucleus of heavy ships remained at Guantanamo at all times, from which strong units could be detailed for convoy duty,
cruising vessels were distributed on various stations. One unit was maintained on blockading station off Santiago, one to windward of Cape Francois on the north coast of Haiti to protect British trade coming from North America, and one off Cape Bacca to protect trade passing along the south shore of Haiti. Meanwhile other cruisers operated offensively against enemy trade to windward of La Hacha on the route from Spain to Cartagena and Porto Bello, on the north coast of Cuba on the route through the old Bahama channel, and off Cape Corrientes on the important enemy route from Cartagena and Porto Bello to Vera Cruz and Havana.

Finally the operations were given up; and the troops reembarked in November 1741, and sailed out of Guantanamo Bay. Attempts were later made upon Porto Cavallo and La Guaira, but neither met with success. "The whole design upon the Spanish possessions in America had come to a bad end due to the incapacity of those in command."  

"Thus ended the operations in the West Indies during the year 1741, in which the lives of many brave men were sacrificed through the misconduct of their commanders."  

The operations under Vernon caused the death of many Americans. Not one-tenth of Americans in the expedition
against the King of Spain, which provided "that one-third part of the whole company of every ship or vessel so fitted out as aforesaid shall be Land Men." 198

The Assembly of Rhode Island, on August 21, 1739, "authorized the Governor to grant commissions to private men-of-war to act against Spain and the subjects thereof, pursuant to His Majesty's warrant." 199 Other provinces did likewise. 200 The Colonial Governors issued commissions to the privateersmen. 201

St. Augustine was considered by the Georgians to be open to attack in 1740. Accordingly, following Oglethorpe's suggestion, an expedition was formed composed of Georgians, South Carolinians, American Indians and some vessels of the Royal Navy, to attack St. Augustine by sea and land. The combined forces arrived at St. Augustine and began a siege, but they failed to work effectively together and the result was a humiliating failure. 202

A Spanish Expedition consisting of about 5,000 men, and a considerable fleet, invaded Georgia in 1742 but was defeated. 202 Oglethorpe led a retaliatory expedition against St. Augustine in the following year. These operations resulted in the English holding their ground and showing that they could not be dislodged. 203

Within a short time after 1743 the war vessels
Chapter II

returned home. "More than a thousand died in a day for several days. Of nearly one thousand men from New England, not one hundred returned." Of five hundred men from Massachusetts, fifty only returned. Gordon, in his American Revolution, stated that "scarce one-fiftieth" of the Massachusetts troops returned. Shattuck tells us that the Massachusetts troops were paid off and dismissed on October 24, 1743 and only fifty returned. Bancroft wrote that "of the recruits from the Colonies, nine out of ten fell victims to the climate and to the service." A force of 200 American Marines and 50 British Marines, under Major Caulfield in 1742, landed on the Island of Rattan, in the Bay of Honduras, and occupied it. A Marine Detachment of H. M. S. Litchfield was also attached to this landing party.

In addition to supplying many transports for those West Indian operations of 1739-1744, there were also many Americans serving in the British Navy. American privateers, and British privateers manned partly by Americans, abounded.

American Marines formed a part of the crews of these vessels, as well as "landsmen". In November, 1739, King George II of England issued instructions for the Commanders of Letters of Marque and Private Men-of-War operating
America, Boston, and Essex, were built in New England for the Royal Navy. 204

A collision between the English and French colonists was inevitable. The English colonies had grown much more rapidly than the French. They were more prosperous. There was a spirit of enterprize among them that could not be crushed. They could not tamely see themselves hemmed in upon the Atlantic coast and cut off from access to the interior of the continent by a colony one-tenth size.

The French getting advices from Europe earlier, attacked Canseau before the English were aware of the hostile decision. News reached Boston June 2, 1744. "There was danger on the coasts. The armed sloops of Rhode Island and Connecticut were cruising between Martha's Vineyard and New Jersey, and the brigantines of Massachusetts watched the coast north of Cape Cod." 204

New England was aroused, - lucrative fisheries and her hopes of wresting the monopoly of the Mediterranean fish trade from France were ruined by this war. The maritime frontiers of Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New York were imperilled; and the Louisburg privateers threatened to annihilate Anglo-American commerce. 205

New England determined to attack her northern rival
Louisburg - the "Dunkirk of America." Massachusetts issued a call to arms and in 1745 Colonial standards were raised against Louisburg. Massachusetts and Maine supplied eight regiments; Connecticut and New Hampshire, one each. About 300 men arrived from Rhode Island; but after the surrender of Louisburg, New York and New Yorkers subsidized the expedition to the extent of about $50,000.00 and 10 cannon; and Pennsylvania contributed supplies.

"A small fleet was hastily assembled and the aid of the Imperial Navy invoked." Commodore Peter Warren of the Royal Navy at first refused to assist but eventually arrived and helped. This Colonial naval force was commanded by Captain Edward Tyng, a privateersman with some experience under fire. It consisted of 13 armed ships of 216 guns, and 90 transports. The flotilla was composed of the Massachusetts, Caesar, Shirley, Boston Packet, Tartar, several sloops, and 90 transports. The "Colony sloop" Tartar, built, manned, and equipped by the colony of Rhode Island was given the status of a privateer by the British Admiralty.

The expeditionary force of 4,000 "over-sea soldiers" and twelve or more American war-vessels was commanded by William Pepperrell, of Kittery. The chief of artillery was Richard Gridley who in June, 1775, marked out the re-doubt on Bunker Hill.
'After a day of fast and prayer, the Colonial Armada' sailed from Nantasket Roads, in March, 1745. "Pray for us while we fight for you" was the last message of the departing provincial soldiers to their friends on shore.

Early in April, 1745, the Army encamped on the blood-stained soil of Canso, Cape Breton Island. Strengthened by four Imperial ships under Peter Warren, on April 23rd, from the West Indian and Newfoundland stations, the Colonial Armada sailed from there on April 29, and dropped anchor before Louisburg.

This "New England Navy" - "the modest prototype of the powerful Navy of the United States" - haughtily blockaded the port; and Warren's squadron of ten British ships despatched to its support by the Imperial Ministry also displayed to Louisburg the dreaded power of England.

The landing was made April 30, and May 1, 1745, and Louisburg surrendered on June 17, 1745, as attested by a monument erected June 17, 1895, standing "a few hundred yards from the shores of the harbor, near the spot where General Pepperrell received the keys of the fortress from Governor Duchambon."

The capture of Louisburg "filled Europe with astonishment and America with joy." It was the capital achievement of the war. The prowess of the Americans could no longer be doubted.
That these operations conducted by an American were "done with true military judgment is abundantly proved by the fact that, when Louisburg was assaulted and taken in 1758, by the combined land and naval forces of Amherst and Boscawen, Pepperrell's plan of attack was followed." 215

The Siege of Louisburg taught the Americans to fight and to know that they could fight — things afterwards that became very important. Twice the New Englanders had captured forts from the French only to see them returned by the treaties. They did not like this. They became tired of fighting for Great Britain without appreciation. 216

It was in this War against France that American privateers first began seriously to assert themselves as a distinctive sea force. Besides the highly important part they played in the expedition against Louisburg, 217 a large number of privateers put to sea on their own responsibility and made independent cruises against the enemy. 216

"A majority of the colonial privateers carried heavy armaments and large complements, the average probably being not far from 18 guns and 130 men, making them really more formidable than the average cruiser of that day." 216

These early privateers carried Marine Detachments, of course. 218 Few Americans of today realize that their forbears of the colonial period fought naval battles that would have been as familiar as Paul Revere's Ride if they
had occurred in the Revolution.

In August of 1744 there was the "private Man of War" Hawke, carrying 138 Seamen and "Marines" lying in the Harbor of Cape Ann. It is written that Esek Hopkins "was a sea captain and merchant adventurer," in 1745. "His ability as a sailor must have been outstanding, for within three years he was advanced to the command of a vessel. He was commissioned Captain of the privateer sloop Wentworth, 90 tons, on January 27, 1741." Newspapers, correspondence, and commercial records of the next thirty years contain many references to his career. In peacetime he sailed vessels for the Browns of Providence, in time of war he commanded privateers. In the Seven Years War he achieved recognition in the latter capacity, Moses Brown remembering him as the first successful privateer commander of this colony during that war." As he approached middle age, he would occasionally stay at home for a few years with his family on his farm in North Providence, but the life at sea always called him back. He commanded a privateer in 1757-1758.

In 1745 "two large ships were built, and fitted out from Newport, as privateers, and were intended to cruise in company on the Spanish Main. They were principally owned by Colonel Dodfrey Malborn. They mounted 22 guns
each, and were commanded by Captains Brewer and Cranston. They sailed from Newport, on December 24, and "were never heard from after sailing" "nearly two hundred women became widows by this disaster." 224

When the crews of the Castar and Pollux found that a person who had entered on board them two or three days before was a woman they seized upon the unhappy wretch and ducked her three times from the yard-arm, and afterwards made their negroes tar her all over from head to foot, by which cruel treatment and the rope that let her into the water having been indiscreetly fastened, the poor woman was very much hurt and continued ill a long time. This was about 1745. 225

Calls for "Gentlemen Sailors" were made in the "Post Boy" of New York in 1745. 226

The French armed vessel, Rising Sun was cut out from a convoy and taken by the clever stratagem in 1746 of the American privateer Prince Charles. The American vessel made believe to be a regular man-of-war. To assist in the deception the Prince Charles armed a number of "men like Marines," placed "grenadier caps on their heads, and arranged to have those imposing head-pieces appear just above his bulwarks, where the enemy could see them." The trick worked admirably, 216 and the Rising Sun was captured.
Off Isle St. Mary's, on June 26, 1748 the Bethel, a Massachusetts built ship, sighted after nightfall the large Spanish Ship Jesus Maria Y Joseph, 26 guns, 110 men. Captain Isaac Freeman of the Bethel hung out Lanterns, made his decks appear crowded by putting caps on sticks, showed wooden guns, and closed the Spaniard with what he described as a "Serenade of French Horns and Trumpets," threatening a broadside unless the great ship surrendered at once. The Spaniard thought the Bethel must be an English man-of-war, and gave up the ship without resistance. 227

"As early as 1748 a 40-gun ship called the America was built in Boston for the King's service; this vessel never made a cruise, but was laid up in the dock-yard at Portsmouth." 228

This war ended with the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, and Louisburg was returned to France. 229 This treaty was a mere truce.

Peace could not permanently exist in America, however, as long as the French held Canada and thus menaced the existence of the American colonies.

Seven of the American Colonies urged by common interests gathered in conference at Albany, N.Y., in 1754. 230 The representatives of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland
assembled for the common good. 229

The year 1755 was the beginning of stirring times on two continents. It was the year when an earthquake engulfed Lisbon; it was the year when the Indians of Virginia annihilated Braddock; it was the year when the French Acadians were driven from their homes and distributed among the colonies; and it was the year which saw the beginning of what is known on this continent as the "French and Indian War," and in Europe as the "Seven Years' War." France and England were about to fight their last duel for supremacy in America. 231

While there were considerable combats between the Colonists and the Indians in the vicinity of Quantico, it was not until the end of March 1755 that a real naval force visited the Potomac. In that month Commodore Koppel's Fleet composed of the flagship Norwich, Sea Horse, Nightingale, Garland, and some smaller ships, that brought Braddock's Army to America, sailed past Quantico and anchored off Alexandria. There was nothing at Quantico in those days for visiting military and naval men to inspect as there is now - nothing but a small creek leading from the broad river up to Dumfries, which town was not visible from the Potomac. 232

Yankee Doodle, written originally in derision of
Americans, appeared during this war. Responding to appeals from the British many Americans rendezvoused near Albany, New York, in 1755, to assist in fighting the French and Indians. Their appearance, striking several Englishmen as ludicrous, one of them set words to an old tune which can be traced back to Charles I. With much gravity he recommended it to the Americans as one of the most celebrated airs of martial music. In a few days nothing was heard in the American Camp but the air of Yankee Doodle. In twenty-odd years it was the American National March.233

The Americans furnished men, money, and ships without limit to win this war.234 An interesting military organization was The Royal Americans.235

While a considerable part of the fighting was on shore this war gave American Sea Soldiers many opportunities to combat the French on both salt and fresh water.

Tun Tavern is an historic name in Marine Corps annals. Pennsylvania organized to fight the Indians. Benjamin Franklin was colonel of the Philadelphia regiment. One day when Franklin's Regiment "had drawn up at the Coffee House to drink success to the King's forces, Governor Morris forbade the usual artillery demonstration. It was almost the last act of his official life. So at least the officers regarded it, for they retired to the Tun Tavern and drank bumpers to
the toast, 'A speedy arrival of a new Governor.'

In 1758 the Expedition under Wolfe was sent against Louisburg. All his operations were based upon the fleet, which not only carried his army to the spot, but moved up and down the river as the various feints required. The landing which led to the decisive action was made directly from the ships. The fortress finally surrendered on July 27, 1758, the French fleet was totally destroyed and "The French power on the North Atlantic coast vanished like a wraith." It gave the English a new base both for the Army and the Fleet.

The victory was acclaimed in England. In America the feeling of satisfaction was equally strong. It is not possible to set out of view the fact that at this date there was a strong desire in the American provinces to be independent of all home control; even when their very existence depended on the power which Great Britain would put forth to maintain them. The capture of Louisburg was the first act in the final drama, in which the British colonists were to become the undisputed masters of North America.

In January, 1759 a British Squadron carrying a military expedition including 800 British Marines, attacked Martinique. Most of the Marines were from the detachments
on board the various ships of war. In other words we have here an "expeditionary force of Marines" formed by increasing the strength of the ships' detachments. The expedition was very successful, at Martinique and also in Guadeloupe.

A naval battle was fought on Lake Champlain in 1759 between an English-American Fleet and the French. The English-American Force consisted of 6,537 (including 974 Royal Americans) British, and 4,839 Americans, a total of 11,376, in addition to their small fleet. General Amherst, in July, 1759, passed to Lake George without opposition. On July 21, 1759, Amherst embarked his Army in batteaux at Fort Edward on Lake George and started northward. He arrived at Ticonderoga unopposed. The French abandoned Ticonderoga and Crown Point and retired to the Isle Aux Noix.

Arriving at Crown Point on Lake Champlain, Amherst began restoring the fort there. He hesitated to ascend the Lake in his "64 batteaux and whaleboats" from "the want of rigged vessels." The French had four vessels "constantly cruising about, one of which La Vigillette," "manned by sailors had ten guns." Amherst decided to build a squadron to cope with the French naval force and enable him to enter Canada. The saw-mill at Fort Ticonderoga supplied the lumber. Before
Chapter II. -78- Volume One

the vessels were completed he built a raft 84' x 20' to carry six 20-pounders to attack the Isle Aux Noix intrenchments. 242

Two vessels were finished by October 10, 1759. They were the brigantine Duke of Cumberland carrying "sixty seamen and fifty Marines," and the Boscawen, manned with "sixty seamen and fifty Marines." These two vessels started on October 10, 1759, with the troops following in batteaux. On October 11, the "French schooners came in sight," and the Duke of Cumberland and Boscawen gave chase. They drove the French ships into a bay but darkness fell before they could capture them. Entering the bay on the following morning two of them were found sunk and one run aground by the French. The expedition returned to Crown Point on October 21, 1759. Amherst was master of Lake Champlain. The Duke of Cumberland and Boscawen raised the sunken French sloops, carried them to Crown Point where they became welcome additions to the English-American fleet. The American troops returned home in November, 1759. 242

In 1759, in addition to the operations on Lake Champlain, the Americans served with Wolfe at Quebec, on board the King's and American vessels and relieved some of Wolfe's regulars at Louisburg so they could proceed to Quebec. The orders and regulations of Major General Wolfe for expeditions
against Quebec proved that "troops are to be as careful as possible in working their ships, obedient to the Admiral's commands and attentive to all signals." 243

On August 10, 1760, Amherst got his Army afloat at Oswego. It consisted of about 11,000 men, of whom 4,500 were Americans. "The flotilla of nearly 800 whale-boats and batteaux was escorted by several gun-boats." A French brig was here captured by the gun-boats. Fort Levis was captured. Sixty boats were wrecked or damaged and 84 men drowned in descending the rapids. The fleet glided triumphantly to the shores of Lachine, nine miles above Montreal on September 6, 1760. On the 8th, Montreal surrendered and New France passed into the control of Great Britain. 244

The many colonial warships and privateers provided during this war by the colonies were the lineal forbears of those fine ships of the State Navies that fought the British sea power in the Revolution. Very powerful assistance was given by American sea power. Grimshaw wrote that in addition to 24,000 American soldiers serving ashore, "four hundred privateers cruised with successful vigilance, not only in the West Indian waters, but on the coast of France." 245

Alexander McDougal, another American prominent in the
Revolution, was captain of the privateer sloop Tyger. The privateer Game Cock commanded by Abraham Whipple captured twenty-six vessels in a single cruise. Captain John Dennis commanded "the privateer ship Tay of 18 guns and 180 men which was fitted out by the merchants of Newport." This "vessell sailed from Newport on the 22d of August, 1756, and was never heard from after sailing."  

Lieutenant William Starr, an American, left an interesting account of his services in the Expedition against the Spanish in Cuba about 1762. His diary refers to "Shooting at Mark," that is, target practice, at Cape Samana on Hispaniola; Cape Nicolas; Bite of Leogane; and of helping to capture "St. Deaga" (Santiago) Cuba.

"An agreement drawn up between the captain and crew of the New York private armed brigantine Mars in 1762 reveals something of the sea customs of the time and life aboard a vessel of that sort."

During the peace negotiations in 1762, the question was raised among the representatives of England whether it were worth while to hold New France, some contending that it would be more profitable to retain instead the sugar-producing Island of Guadaloupe.

The Peace of Paris, in 1763, terminated a war which exalted Great Britain to the zenith of military glory.
By this treaty she remained sole mistress of North America, and the American colonies were relieved from the fear of their annihilation by their French Neighbors. Such was the state of the American Colonies at the conclusion of a war, in which they had been "more than conquerors" that from the moment the French menace was removed the Americans "began to view their situation in another light, and to cherish ideas of their future greatness." 252

It was on the water that the first overt act of resistance to British authority in America was made. As early as November 1747 a Boston mob had forced the release of American seamen who had been seized by a press-gang from the British warships. 253

American principles and spirit have never tolerated the outrageous press-gang, and it was this abominable custom that brought about acts of retaliation by Americans in 1764 - eleven years before Lexington. Impressment was not an American practice and when the Maidstone impressed some of the crew of an American merchantman arriving at Newport from Africa - before they even saw their families - there was a real revolution. A group of aroused Americans seized one of the Maidstone's boats lying at the wharf and dragged it to the Common and burned it amid the derisive shouts of the people. 254
The overbearing attitude of the officers detailed to enforce the odious Navigation Acts also snapped the American patience with resulting violence. England stationed vessels along the coast to enforce these acts. So exasperated did the Rhode Islanders become at the St. John cruising off their coast that they fitted out an armed sloop to destroy her and only the arrival of the man-of-war Squirrel at Newport prevented this plan from being carried out. 254

These and other incidents caused the Americans to organize under the name of Sons of Liberty for resisting what they considered injustice, and they did effective work in resisting the enforcement of the Stamp Act. 255

August 14, 1765, was the date of the "first forcible resistance to the acts of the British Parliament." On that day "the stamp office in Boston was demolished," in protest of the detested Stamp Act. It was customary for several years after to celebrate this date as an anniversary. It was celebrated as late as 1775 when several toasts were drunk including: "The memorable 14th of August, 1765;" and "the twelve United States." 256

All this time American principles - the soul of our country - were taking form, and soon they were to force the formation of a state. These principles became audible,

-82-
when on October 7, 1765, committees of Americans from nine colonies met at New York, in total disregard of the Governors representing the King. The other four colonies were sympathetic but were unable to attend. This Congress prepared and made public "A Declaration of Right." 257

In 1766 a protest called the "Westmoreland Resolves" against British tyranny, written by Richard Henry Lee, was made in Virginia. 258

Beginning with 1768 there was a series of outbreaks by Americans against the English administration of American affairs, culminating with Lexington on April 19, 1775. Letters were exchanged between the colonies regarding the unjust laws. Virginia Americans agreed to boycott English goods.

On June 10, 1768, the acts of the Commanding Officer of the Romney at Boston, regarding some New England seamen his press-gang had forcibly enlisted, incensed the Americans. After sunset the same day the revenue officers seized John Hancock's sloop Liberty for alleged smuggling, as the Americans excited by the seizure, gathered. Refusing to wait for the owner to appear the officers, fearing a rescue, signalled the Romney. 259

The commanding officer of the Romney himself appeared with her Marines and turning to them commanded them to fire,
whereupon an American exclaimed: "What rascal is that who dares to tell the Marines to fire?" The Englishman then called to the Marines: "Why don't you fire? Fire, I say!" The crowd on this fell back and the sloop was towed away. Then the crowd drove the revenue officers to fly for safety aboard the Romney, and from there they went to the barracks on Castle Island. No one was ever apprehended for these acts for no American would give any information regarding the incident.\(^ {259}\)

The high-handed and arrogant manner of the English officers in enforcing law brought about more violence in 1769. Throughout the years 1765-1775, the British Navy on the North American station was constantly employed in police work and petty expeditions against the dissatisfied colonists.\(^ {260}\)

The armed sloop Liberty, on July 17th of that year seized a brig and a sloop of Connecticut and carried them into Newport, R.I. The master of the brig visited the Liberty and remonstrated as he had complied with the law. Upon leaving the Liberty, his boat was fired upon from the Liberty. This aroused the Americans of Newport and they cut the cables of the Liberty and allowed her to drift ashore near Long Wharf. Here they boarded her, cut her masts away, and threw her guns overboard. She later
drifted on Goat Island where the next night the Americans burned her. 261

The Parliamentary taxation of the Colonies was now an established fact. The unrepealed duties, including three-pence a pound on ten, were being efficiently collected by the new American customs service, "with the somewhat interested aid of the Royal Navy," 262 despite frequent outbreaks of the Americans.

On January 16, 1770, the British soldiers cut down the Liberty Pole of the Sons of Liberty in New York City. Two days later scurrilous placards were posted by the British soldiers. This was resented by the Sons of Liberty and some of them collared the soldiers engaged in posting the placards. One soldier rushed one of the Sons of Liberty with his bayonet. Reinforcements arrived for both sides. The soldiers charged the citizens. Several citizens, including a sailor were wounded. This was the first blood of America shed by British soldiers. 263 A tablet was placed at this spot by the Sons of the Revolution of the State of New York, in 1892. 263

About Washington's Birthday of the year 1770 a random shot fired in Boston by British soldiers in repelling some assailant killed a German lad named Snider. The soldier was cast into prison. 264 This was the prelude to
what is now known as the Boston Massacre that occurred in March, 1770.

Early in that month a quarrel arose between the British soldiers and Americans of Boston. It was more serious than any before. Unquestionably there was a feeling of bitterness against British domineering in political affairs in America. It naturally broke out against a concrete and material something the Americans could see. It was the old story of "direct action" being invoked as contrasted to the use of the ballot which in this case was denied them. Sentries were insulted; frays followed; both sides were reinforced; a soldier was knocked down; he fired and all the soldiers followed his example. Five Americans were killed and others wounded. That was the Boston Massacre of March 5, 1770, a natural result to an abhorrent system. It raised passion to a white heat. \[265\]

On May 16, 1771, North Carolinians became involved in a conflict with the governor at the head of a military force, resulting in deaths on both sides. \[266\]

An actual naval engagement between the Americans and the British took place in 1772, that has often been referred to as the real "Lexington of the Sea." \[267\] It resulted in the destruction of the British armed vessel Gaspee. The cause of this action lay in the unjust
Navigation Acts and the unnecessarily harsh administration of them. The *Gaspee* was a sort of an armed revenue cutter, in the revenue service of England, whose master was arrogant while carrying out his duty. He also excited the additional resentment of the Americans by firing at Providence packets in order to compel them to salute his flag, by lowering theirs. The Americans had recourse to no peaceful means to bring an end to what they felt was foul injustice — they had no vote on the laws which seemed to them to be so oppressive. Forceful, direct action therefore was their only tool — and they used this method against the *Gaspee*. The Rhode Islanders, therefore, planned the destruction of this annoying vessel.

On June 9, 1772, the *Gaspee* chased the American sloop *Hannah* of Providence, R.I. Deliberately the American sloop lured the *Gaspee* into the shallow water of Narragansett Bay where she went aground hard and fast on Gaspee Point. The *Hannah* then sailed into Providence with the glad news. An expedition of Americans was immediately organized to destroy the *Gaspee*. Abraham Whipple, who had achieved fame in Colonial privateering and later in our first Navy, commanded this expeditionary force of Americans that — in true Marine style — on June 10, 1772, captured and burned the *Gaspee*. The *Gaspee*’s commanding officer was wounded.
The Boston Tea Party took place on the night of December 17, 1773. A number of Americans disguised as Indians prevented the landing of the cargoes of three tea-ships on the wharves at Boston. Three hundred and forty-two chests of tea were destroyed and the party then silently withdrew. The news of this decided action spread like wildfire along the coast and other cities refused to permit the tea to land or, like Charleston, S.C., permitted it to be stored and never used. 269

These Tea Parties caused great irritation in England. This irritation was increased by the knowledge that American public opinion was behind these rebellious acts.

A band of young patriots, led by John Sullivan (afterwards a Major-General in the Continental Army) attacked Fort William and Mary, at Newcastle in Portsmouth, N.H. Harbor in December, 1774. They proceeded from Portsmouth in a gondola, surprised the fort, and secured one hundred casks of powder that was used later at Bunker Hill. 270 Paul Revere was selected to notify the "Sons" at Portsmouth, N.H. that the British planned to send relief to Fort William and Mary. On December 13, 1774 he notified General Sullivan at Durham and rode on to Portsmouth. 271

Philadelphia was the place and September 5, 1774, the date of meeting of what we now call the First Continental
Chapter II.  

Congress. All the colonies were represented except Georgia. On September 16, 1774, the "Honourable delegates now met in General Congress," were "elegantly entertained by the Gentlemen of the City Tavern," in Philadelphia. Nearly five hundred "clergy, such genteel strangers as happened to be in the city," and other "respectable citizens," gave a public dinner to the delegates. After dinner many toasts "were drank, accompanied by music and a discharge of cannon." Some of the toasts were very significant. One to the "perpetual union to the Colonies," and another to no "unconstitutional standing armies," were somewhat threatening to English authority as it was then enforced. However, the King and Queen were toasted and one to "a happy reconciliation between Great Britain and her colonies, on a constitutional ground," pointed to a solution of the grave problem without force, which was never considered or, if so, was discarded by the Ministers. 272

Through the influence of this first Congress, trade with England was practically stopped.

Parliament then retaliated with a law prohibiting Americans to fish on the Newfoundland banks. This blow hurt New England. Their ships, however, did not long idle for their owners turned them into armed sea-rovers to pounce on English merchant ships and their cargoes.
Chapter II. -90- Volume One

The New York Journal, in 1774, discarded the arms of the King as an ornamental heading for its paper, and substituted the device of a snake cut into parts, with "Unite or Die" for a motto. Later the Editor issued the snake joined and coiled, with the tail in its mouth, forming a double ring; within the coil was a pillar standing on Magna Carta, surmounted with the cap of Liberty. 273

The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence is said to have been made at Charlotte, N.C., on May 20 or 31, 1775. 274

Much has been written of the fear which the British Army and Navy inspired in the Americans; but such a conclusion is not founded on fact.

No group of people, no matter how harshly they felt themselves treated by the mother country, would have the confidence to assert physical force in defense of what they believed to be their rights, unless they had considerable confidence in their ability to fight.

It takes some degree of military preparation to force a political class to enter warfare. We find this preparation in America from the very beginning. The American colonists became trained to the use of military weapons and to fighting enemies — Indians and Spanish on the south, and French on the north and west. Many Ameri-
cans had served in the war vessels of the British Navy. Thousands of American seamen were prepared to fight on the seas and thousands of tons of American shipping were afloat to carry them. War materials had also been brought over by England to fight the wars and the colonists had learned the art of manufacturing them.

"All revolutions, like armies on the march, advance with pioneers in front. Such men are sometimes a century, sometimes a few years in advance of the general movement. They often point out or shed light on the paths of progress by their sufferings, sometimes by their life's blood." The early American wars against the French, Spanish and Indians, were pioneers of the American Revolution, as were the minor, incipient revolts, against the British prior to April 19, 1775. John Adams wrote that the first revolution was "defence against the French."

The American Nation existed a long time before the American political state took form. The Americans did more than their share in winning the peace of 1763 and thus it might be said, winning their revolution against the French.

Independence had "existed in spirit in most of the essential matters of colonial life, and the British Government had only to seek to establish its power over the
colonies in order to arouse a desire for formal independ-
ence."

The fact that many people in England believed in the
principles adopted by the American states has no bearing
upon the struggle in America, for they should have arisen
in their might — by ballot or force — against the system
they considered oppressive and iniquitous. Those people
in England who did not rebel as did America were as re-
sponsible for the acts of their Government as were those
who believed in the English Ministry. This must always
be considered in keeping our own government abreast of
the times. Where men cannot obtain justice by way of the
ballot they will adopt "direct action," as did the Ameri-
cans of 1763-1783.

There is a continuity about the Marines. They have
a military-naval character that is as distinctive as the
character of the land soldier or that of the sailor of
the sea. The first chapter has shown how the Marines, or
Soldiers-with-the-Sea-Habit, performed duties on board
ships or in expeditions supporting the fleets, of all the
Eastern Hemisphere ancient navies, particularly those of
Greece and Rome. The History of the Marines was carried
forward in that chapter from the Roman Marines through the
Royal Marines of Great Britain to the Colonial Marines of
America and they in turn passed the mantle on to the American Marines of the Revolution. In this second chapter the probability of the presence of Marines in the ancient civilizations of America has been suggested; the discovery of America by Europeans has been touched on; the Marine character and duties of American Indians have been mentioned; the many over-seas expeditions by American Colonials that savored of modern Marine service, have been described; the operations participated in by Spotswood's and Gooch's Marines of 1740-1742 have been covered at length; the Maritime Fighters serving on the numerous Colonial Pri-

We will now proceed to observe the American Marines of the American Revolution.

CONTINUED WITH NOTES AND INDEX IN PART TWO
EARLY MARINES OF THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

Material and Sources
of
Chapter II, Volume I
(Part Two)

History of the United States Marine Corps

By

Major Edwin North McClellan, U.S. Marines
Officer-in-Charge
Historical Section

(Notes and Index)

(Only two hundred copies made)

First Edition
September 1, 1932
FORENOTE

This compilation is not the final manuscript of this Chapter but represents only material and sources upon which it will be based. Since the information expressed in this History required original research, which has not been completed, it was decided to publish it first in mimeographed form. Considerable additional information will have been collected by the time it is desirable to write the final manuscript for printing. It is purposely made voluminous in order to make public, details of early Marine Corps History that obviously will not be included in a printed work because of lack of space. The plan provides for seven large volumes divided into appropriate chapters.

Only two hundred copies of this chapter have been made. If for any reason those to whom it is sent do not desire to retain it please inform the Historical Section, U.S. Marine Corps, Washington, D.C. and arrangements will be made for its return.

As a matter of convenience this chapter is divided into two parts.

The following form of citation is suggested if it is desired to cite, either in published works, or manuscript, any information contained herein:

(McClellan, Hist., U.S.M.C., 1st ed., I, Ch. II, p--)


NOTES

CHAPTER II, VOLUME ONE

(Part Two)

1. See Century Mag., XLIII, January, 1892, 470.

2. Of nick-names he has many—"Leatherneck," "Gyrene," "Devil Dog," etc.

3. "Cut the ancestral knot that binds us to the waters of the oceans, seas, bays, gulfs, rivers, lakes and other wet spots and with the same notion you cut the throat of the Corps." (M.C. Gaz., Nov., 1930, p. 7)

4. In order to be eligible to the membership of the Society of Colonial Wars one's ancestor must have "served as a military, naval or Marine officer, or as a soldier, sailor or Marine, or as a privateer under the authority of the Colonies, which afterward formed the United States," at some time between the "Settlement of Jamestown, May 13, 1607" and "Lexington, April 19, 1775." (Soc. Colonial Wars, D. of C. 1904).

5. This prophecy frequently has been made and is justified by articles in magazines and newspapers. The American mind is becoming conscious of an interesting civilized Past.

6. Knut Gjerset, Hist. of Iceland, 5,9-10; Crantz, in Hist. of Greenland, I, 222 states that according to learned Icelander Argrin Jonas, Iceland was first discovered by Naddok who called it Snowland; see also Hart, Aner. Nation, III, 3-4; Harper Encyc. of U.S. Hist., I, 11; Story of Naddok discovering Snowland told in Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist., and Romance, I, 201. For Viking Ships see Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 46-51; Culver, Book of Old Ships, 25-29.

7. Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., of America, I, 61-72; Harper, Encyc. of U.S. Hist., I, 110; Nat. Intell., July 16, 1852; Fiske, Old Virginia and Her Neighbours, I, 18; The Vinland Voyages by Matthias Thordarson, translated by Thorstina J. Walters; Leif Eriksson, Discoverer of America, Edward F. Gray; Narratives of the Discovery of America, Edited by A. W. Lawrence and Jean Young; The Nation August 13, 1934, 161; for story of Norumbega,
Chapter II.

7. Continued.

see Winsor, Narr. and Crit. Hist. of America, III, 169-170; Hildreth, Hist. of U.S., I, 34, wrote that "their alleged visit to North America, though not without warm advocates, rests on evidence of too mythic a character to find a place in authentic history;" "Bjarni Herjolfsson of Iceland discovered America in the year 987." (Wash. Post, Feb. 19, 1931); Cook, Virginia, 1-3, citing Shakespeare's Tempest, questions these discoveries; Knut Gjerset, Hist. of Iceland, 101, states that in the Eriksage Rauoa, Leif Eriksson is credited with the discovery of America - Vinland, Woodland or Stoneland - but in Flateyjarbok Bjarni Herjolfsson receives the credit; Knut Gjerset, Hist. of Iceland, 103-104, states that Thorvald, went on a later voyage to Vinland with "a crew of 30 men" spent the winter in Labrador and in the following summer killed eight natives in skirmish but Thorvald was mortally wounded with an arrow; see also Grantz, Hist. of Greenland, I, 235, describing this fight, and calling the country "Wineland" or "Vinland"; see Associated Press despatch in Washington Star, November 8, 1924, for claim that a Norse Expedition reached the State of Washington in 1010 A.D.; it really is amazing to find anyone who, having studied all the evidence, does not conclude that these hardy Norsemen did not do what their sagas state. See also Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 302; M.C. Gaz., June 1917, 121; Bancroft, Hist., U.S., I, 5-7 is skeptical that they ever reached America, citing Thorfaeus, Historia Winlandiae; Robertson, Hist. Amer.; Wheaton History Northmen, 22-28; Belknap, Am. Biog., V, 47-58; Irving, Life of Columbus, III, 292-300; Franklin's Works, VI, 102; Schonig, Hist., Norv., I, 309; Leslie, Jameson and Murray, Dis. & Ad. Polar Seas, 87, etc.; Harpers, LXIV pp. 111-119; Hist. Rhode Island and Newport, Peterson, 177-178; The Sub-Arctic Ex. of Field Museum of Chicago under Donald B. McMillan, found Norse ruins in Labrador Island, September 1, 1926, (A.P. despatch of Wash. Post, Sept. 15, 1929); For Stone Mill at Newport, R.I., and Northmen see History of Rhode Island and Newport by Edward Peterson, pp. 168-178; "First white settlers of Minnesota probably Norsemen." (Wash. Star, August 20, 1932).

2. Pytheas, a Greek, undertook a voyage to Britain and the far North about 330 B.C. He apparently reached the Orkney and Shetland Islands and penetrated to a "land called Thule," which many believe was Iceland. It is also believed that long before this the Irish (Celtic) monks were inhabitants of Iceland. From 521 to 597 A.D., Kormak made three voyages from Ireland in search of Iceland, then called the Desert in the Ocean. "On the eve of national observance of Columbus Day to-morrow, geographers still are asking whether St. Brendan, Irish sailor-priest, crossed the Atlantic Ocean in the Sixth Century." (Honolulu Advertiser, October 12, 1927. See also Knut Gjerset, Hist. Iceland, 2-3); for claim of Irish regarding discovery of America and voyage of the "Sons of Ua Corra in 540 A.D. see Boven, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 301, and see also Wash. Sunday Star, March 15, 1925; Honolulu Advertiser, Oct. 12, 1927; The Norsemen took possession of the Shetland and Faroe Islands not later than 700 A.D. (Knut Gjerset, Hist. of Iceland, 1-3); Bowen writes that "Pytheas, the celebrated navigator and geographer, hailed from Marseilles." (The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 3.); For claim of Portuguese discovery of America see N.Y. Times September 30, 1923. Century Mag., November, 1923, 47. Barring the American Indians "a claim to the honor has at one time or another been put in for practically every race and nation under the sun, including the Phoenicians, the Egyptians, the Ten Lost Tribes, the Portuguese, the Spaniards, the Chinese, the Japanese, Christopher Columbus, the Norsemen, the "Elish, and last and foremost, the Irish." (Wash. Star, March 15, 1925); Washington Irving in his Life of Columbus, p. 103 Stratford Edition, stated Columbus on his second voyage on the Island of Guadaloupe "found to their surprise, the sternpost of a European vessel, which caused much speculation, but which, most probably, was the fragment of some wreck, borne across the Atlantic by the constant current which accompanies the trade winds."

10. It is said that many Welsh words in some of the Indian languages and Indian Traditions, as far south as Peru, allude to white Indians (Schonberg, Naval Chronology, I, 6, citing Can. Adm. I, 195, and Anderson, Original of Commerce); Winsor, Narr. and Crit. Hist. of Amer., I, 70-72; there is no evidence that the Norsemen saw more than the coasts of Labrador and New England—possibly New-Foundland, and the landing place of Madoc is
Chapter II.

wholly conjectural. (Harper Encyc. of U.S. Hist., I, 110); Welsh Indians idea refuted in "The Royal Navy," by Clowes, 310-311, but the same authority on pp. 303-305 gives an interesting story of Madoc; Cooke, Virginia, 1-3, doubts incidents; Boren, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 203 also doubts Madoc incident. "Various writers have asserted the existence on the American continent of a race of Indians, descended from the ancient Britons. There are traditions of a number of people from Wales landing on the continent of America, as far back as the year 1170; whose descendants are said still to form a distinct tribe, and to speak the Welsh language" wrote Charles William Janson in 1807 in "The Stranger in America", pp. 370-371.

11. It is probable that Columbus visited Iceland early in life, about 1477, and learned from the Icelanders of their ancestors' cruises and glories, (Nat. Intell., July 18, 1852, quoting the Washington Republic, and Newport, R.I., Mercury); or at least talked with these hardy sea-rovers of their voyage to Vinland. In 1293 Marco Polo, a Venetian, was made prisoner in a naval battle between the Venetians and the Genoese. His imprisonment resulted in the "Travels of Marco Polo" which "led directly to the discovery of America." (Wells, Outline of History, 673).

12. Hart, American Nation III, 20-21; Cotterill and Little, Ships and Sailors, 108-109; See also St. John, Hayti or the Black Republic, 29. For an interesting account of Columbus and his discovery see Harper's LXXXIV, pp. 728-740.


14. The Century Magazine, January, 1892, p. 470; see Wash. Star, January 18, 1932, for expedition of Smithsonian Institute to San Salvador and Cat Islands.

15. Washington Irving's Columbus, I, 417-421; Century Dictionary and Cyc. IX, 588. See Note 182.

17. Hart, American Nation, III, 130-137; Schomberg, Naval Chronology, I, 20-21; Hildebrand, Magellan 215 tells of visit to the Ladrones or "Robber Isles," of the visit to Samar (p. 217) and of Magellan's death on Mactan on April 27, 1521 (pp. 247-251); Century Dict. and Cyc. IX, p. 640; Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 239 publishes illustration, "Cavendish at Ladrone Is., 1588." Read E. F. Benson's Ferdinand Magellan.

18. Channing, Hist. of U. S., I, 181; Drake did not enter the Golden Gate; nor did he repair his ship on the shores of Drake's Bay are the negative conclusions reached by Henry R. Wagner in "Sir Francis Drake's Voyage around the World." Read E. F. Benson's Drake. "In popular estimation the BAY which Drake entered is believed to be that of San Francisco;" others believe "it must have been Bodega Bay. There is, however, another bay not far from these, and lying between them, known formerly under the very name of Sir Francis Drake's Bay, though better known as Jack's Harbor. This, on a careful examination of the subject, seems to have been the true and only bay which Drake ever visited on the coast." (Annals of San Francisco and History of California, by Frank Soule, John H. Gihon, and James Nisbet (Date of 1854) page 32);


20. Corbett, Drake and The Tudor Navy, II, 29-61; Lediard, Nav. Hist., Eng., I, 214; Col. Geo. C. Thrope, U.S.M.C., described this operation in M.C.Gaz., December, 1920, 359, as follows: One of special interest is that of the landing in 1585 or 1586 west of Santo Domingo City to take that place very much the same as was done by American Marines in 1916, with the difference that, while the Dominicans fled in the latter case, the Spaniards resisted with infantry, cavalry, artillery, and by driving a herd of long-horned cattle upon the attacking British Marines; See also Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 255. For capture of St. Augustine by Drake about 1586 see Hammond's Quaint and Historic Forts, 196-197; Hawkins also visited Port Isabela, Puerta Plata.
21. M.C. Gaz., June, 1923, 98-109; See also Fiske, Old Va. and Her Neighbors, II, 271; Hamilton, Hist. of Florida, 93-95; D.A.R. Mag., September, 1924, 572; Shipp, Hist. of De Soto and Florida; French, B. F. Ribault's Narrative in Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida; Snowden and Cutler, Hist. of South Carolina, I, 13 et seq.; Courtenay, Genesis of South Carolina, 1562 to 1670 XXXI, et seq.; Bowen, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance, I, 270 is in error in stating Fort Caroline was located at Port Royal, S.C.; The American Rifleman, June 1, 1924, 12; Motoring, May or June, 1930; Parris Island News, March 26, 1926 contains long article describing unveiling of monument; The Pathfinder, January 23, 1932. M.C. Gaz., June 1923, pp. 98-109 containing a note that subsequent to writing the article the author had been informed by Professor Bolton, Univ. of California, that existing manuscripts establish that the Spanish explorer Menendez subsequently removed and destroyed Ribault's stone pillar (p. 103); Laudonniere's Account of First Voyage of the Huguenots, translated by Hakluyt in his "Divers Voyages," etc; Narrative of Le Moyne with illustrations; "Parris Island the Site of the First Attempt at a Settlement of White People Within What is Now South Carolina," Bulletin of the Historical Commission of South Carolina, No. 5; George Bancroft's Hist. of U.S. Vol. I, 61-53 with notes; Snowden, Hist. of S.C.  

22. Shipp, Hist. of De Soto and Florida, 495-506; Fairbanks, Hist. Florida, 93-95; Lowery, The Spanish Settlement in U.S.; See also Hakluyt, Early Voyages, 378; French, Historical Coll. Louisiana and Florida, 188-189; Lodge Hist. Eng. Col. in America, 158-159; Salley, Bulletins, Hist. Comm., South Carolina, 4-6; "Twenty-six of Ribault's followers, however, agreed to remain, under the command of Albert, one of his lieutenants." Ribault sailed away in the middle of July. No relief arrived from France and dissensions arose. Laclerc led a mutiny, in which Albert lost his life. A small ship was built and the Remnant sailed for France. Becalmed for 20 days and starving. About to cast lots to see who they would eat when Laclerc offered himself for this purpose, and having eaten Laclerc, the survivors were picked up and taken to England. (Dewhurst, Hist. of St. Augustine, 26-28); Florida unveiled a monument to commemorate spot at Mayport where Jean Ribault landed on May Day, 1562, on May 1, 1924 (D.A.R. Mag., Sept. 1924, 572);
22. Continued.
St. Augustine settled in 1565 (Cohen, Notices of Florida, 16-17); Dewhurst, Hist., St. Augustine, 26-32; Florida celebrated Menendez Day on April 3, 1925 (Wash. Post, March 15, 1925).

In 1918 Colonel John Millis, Corps of Engineers, U.S. Army, visited this post, and stated that from historical investigations made by him he felt certain that it was on this island that the French, under Ribault, made a settlement in 1562. The site indicated by him had, without question, been occupied by some old fortification, but at the time of his visit the slight remaining parapets had been leveled off and remnants of the moat filled, the site being occupied in connection with the training of men. It appears from historical investigation, that a French expedition under Ribault, a French Huguenot, under the patronage of Coligny, visited these waters in the summer of 1562. Ribault decided to leave a colony of about 40 men to hold the place during his absence in Europe. Prior to leaving, a fort with stockades and moat was constructed. Owing to mismanagement, etc., dissensions soon arose amongst those left behind, they killed their commander, constructed a pinnace, and set sail for France, being eventually picked up by some British ship. A full account of the voyage as written by Laudonniere is given in Hakluyt's Voyages. In compliance with the expressed wish of Headquarters United States Marine Corps and of the Secretary of the Navy, the original site was cleared, exploration trenches were dug, and from these was determined the actual location of the stockade as originally built and as subsequently enlarged. Butts of the original cedar logs were found in an exceptionally fine state of preservation. The stockade has been marked by pillars and chains, the latter having been provided by the Commandant of the Navy Yard, Charleston, S. C. The parapet and banquette have been largely restored, and the moat excavated. Eventually it is planned to place a monument with an appropriate inscription in the interior of the original earthwork. (Annual Report, of the Major General Commandant, U. S. M. C., 1925, p. 19).
"Brigadier General Cole has recently excavated and discovered the piling of an old stockade built in 1562 by the French settlers in what was the earliest of the European colonies in the limits of the present United
23. Continued.
States. The wood piling is well preserved to this day. A park is being made of the site, and this Navy Yard (Charleston, S.C.) has furnished them with some condemned small anchor chain to properly enclose the park."
(A.P. Niblack, Commandant Sixth Naval District to Chief of Naval Operations, 8 March, 1933, H.C. Arch.) "No complete report of General Cole concerning the excavations has been found. However, full information concerning the history of the old French fort, the excavations, etc., at Parris Island is contained in a pamphlet, entitled "Transactions of the Huguenot Society of South Carolina, No. 31", published by the Huguenot Society of South Carolina, Charleston, S.C., 1926. This pamphlet also contains a picture of the monument erected by the Government of the United States to mark the site of Charles-fort built by Jean Ribault, 1562, together with an address by General Cole, the Secretary of the Navy, General John A. Lejeune, and other notables on the occasion of the unveiling of the monument in 1926." (Officer-in-Charge, Hist. Sec., U.S.N.C., to D.D. Wallace, Wofford College, Spartanburg, S.C., 15 January, 1920, M.C. Arch.)

24. "Emphasis as to early landings here in our America, has heretofore centered wholly on Virginia, Massachusetts, and New York. But recent translations in the archives of the Indies Library, Seville, Spain have changed all of that! Today history altogether stresses that area stretching from Santa Elena to San Augustin as being the arena where came to pass our country's earliest, most vital and most hotly contested events. Separated only by Port Royal River and lying close together and historically blended are, today, the three islands, Parris, St. Helena and Port Royal. Whether the first island of the trinity was named for its beauty, Paris, after the French city, by Ribault, who also named Port Royal River, or was called Parris after the man (Colonel Alexander Parris) who was the colony's first treasurer and whose home was on the island, no one knows. Localities in olden days carried no well defined borders. The whole section here by the Spanish was called Santa Elena; by the English, Port Royal, and by the Indians, Chicora. Of a certainty, however, we know that on present day Parris Island, America's first pilgrims and her first would-be settlers, the French Huguenots, May 27, 1562, were landed; that on this island the Huguenots, 1562, built our first American..."
Chapter II. -102- Volume One

Fort, Charlesfort, and built here too, our country's first ocean-going sailing ship; that on this island, as her most northern outpost, Spain, under King Phillip II, built Fort San Felipe in 1566 and Fort San Marcos in 1577, and we know that all this happened on Means Creek on the southeast end of the island. ** * It is not generally known that Parris Island was marked for a naval station by the British - but the Revolution put an end to the plan. ** * The Parris Island forts make a story of great romance. They are equally a story of tragedy and failure. Charlesfort, 1562, only a short distance from the later San Marcos, and only a small frail one, was totally destroyed in 1561 by the Spaniard, Rojas, who left behind no vestige of it and no possibility of its rediscovery. ** * In 1586 re-doubtable Drake of England played havoc with San Augustin and Marques was forced to reduce San Marcos, evacuate Santa Elena and concentrate all efforts to the relief and rebuilding of San Augustin. Many relics were in evidence of San Marcos until 1917, when the Marines levelled the place, thinking the relics to be part of a Civil War fort. ** * Till the revelations of Seville, a few years ago, there had been no dream of Parris Island forts save that of Charlesfort. The relocation of this fort was undertaken (by the Marines) ** * That this was Charlesfort there was not a shadow of a doubt and what the fort needed was a national monument dedicated to the Huguenots! And when the foundation was laid Huguenots from everywhere gathered on Parris Island - the city of Paris sent an eloquent speaker. And every visitor today to Parris Island goes to see this tall granite shaft besideMeans Creek - one of the most notable and beautiful of our American monuments. The monument is purely of French design and artistry and with many French emblems. On one of its sides we read: 'Erected 1925, by the Government of the United States of America to mark the first stronghold of France on this Continent.' If we had waited till the rediscovery of Charlesfort there never would have been on Parris Island a sacrosanct shrine granite shaft commemorating 1562! Down in old Spanish Catholic San Marcos Fort there is a tragedy it's true, in monuments! But the old fort gave us the monument and it will guard it well and furthermore the Spanish Inquisition is dead! What really counts is that the Huguenot landed on Means Creek, Parris Island, and that on Means Creek, Parris Island, stands a Huguenot monument! Not often in the world's

History do such errors occur. The Seville translations showing measurements and material not only prove that the Marines had uncovered San Marcos Fort but also show that there was a total annihilation of Charlesfort by Rojas. * * * Today as taken over and owned by the United States Government, Parris Island is known the world around, for her Marines have sailed all the seas and trod the soil of every land! But what a marvelous history and tradition is forever hers - this oldest of all our American islands!" (Article "The Romance of Parris Island" by M. L. Willot, in Leatherneck, October, 1931, pp. 7-8,51). "Work in the Spanish archives seems to have convinced Professor H. E. Bolton, and his co-worker, Miss Ross, that the ruins on Parris Island are of Spanish origin instead of French. See The Spanish Settlement at Port Royal, 1565-1586 by A. S. Salley Jr. in The S. C. Historical and Genealogical Magazine XXVI, 31, January, 1923; also The Spanish Period of Georgia and South Carolina History, 1566-1702, Bulletin of University of Georgia XXIII, May, 1923; and Spanish Settlements in S.C., in Ga. Hist. Soc. Mag. V, 251, Sep. 1923." (Anne King Gregorie to Major McClellan, 27 April 1931, M.C. Arch.)


26. Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 14-16; Wilstach, Tidewater Virginia, 52; I will not return until I have "found Patawomek, or the head of this water you conceit to be endless." (II Captain John Smith by Bradley, 416). On June 16, 1608 he "fell in with the river Patowomack" 30 miles up. Two savages conducted then "up a little bayed creeke, towards Onawmanient." On p. 8 of the booklet Quantico published in 1930 is: "Quantico on the Potomac has always been. Its quiet woods, sturdy ridges, beautiful Potomac-shore saw the aborigines long before the Red Men. The American Indians based at Quantico. Bows and arrows and wooden swords - fighting afloat on the Potomac. John Smith saw them - and fought them - in 1608. On his way up the Patawomack to near the site of Washington." The site of the "pallizadoed town" of Tocowogh described by Captain John Smith in 1608 as a flourishing Indian settlement has been relocated by the Smithsonian Institute on Kent Island, opposite Annapolis. (Wash. Star, May 14, 1930). The Washington

Star for May 24, 1925 carries a full page story of John Smith's visit to site of Washington and gives June 16, 1603 as the eventful date; John Smith's History of Virginia published in 1624. (Mentioned in Military Engineer, September-October, 1931, p.437).

"In his exploration of the Chesapeake, Captain Smith used a boat" of "two tuns." "He had a crew of 12 men, and complained that none of them were sailors." Map (p. 436) shows "Point Comfort," "Powhatan Flu" is the James River. "Patuxunt" where 300 years later U. S. and Great Britain fought a naval battle. (Military Engineer, September-October, 1931, p. 437).

27. The Brent Family after a few years at St. Mary's crossed the Potomac and bought land in the neighborhood of Aquia Creek. Land grants to this family between 1651 and 1666 show that they owned 9,610 acres on the Virginia shore some of which was located as far north as Hunting Creek where later the city of Alexandria appeared. (Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 71);

"These aristocrats were not averse to using the church to perpetuate their grandeur. * * * sovereigns themselves * * * sent engraved communion plate to several colonial parish churches. At Wycomico Church in Northumberland the tankard bore the inscription: 'The gift of Bartholomew Shriver, who died in 1730, and of Bartholomew his son, who died in 1737, for the use of the parish of Great Wycomico, in the County of Northumberland, in 1730.' The plate was inscribed: 'The gift of Reynard Delafoi to Quantico Church.' " (Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 242-243); "Quantico on the Potomac has always been. Its quiet woods, sturdy ridges, and beautiful Potomac-shore saw the aborigines long before the Red Men. The American Indians based at Quantico. Bows and arrows and wooden swords - fighting, afloat in canoes on the Potomac. John Smith saw them - and fought them - in 1608. On his way up the "Patowomek" to near the site of Washington. Situated about forty miles south of Washington on the main line of the Richmond, Fredericksburg and Potomac Railroad it is the very center of one of the most historic areas of the United States. George Washington, from his very youth, knew the spot. Alexandria, Mount Vernon, Pohick, Quantico, Aquia Village, Fredericksburg and other localities well knew the greatest of Americans. And his brother, Lawrence, an American
27. Continued.

Marine of 1741, also knew Quantico. The Colonial period of Quantico's history was brimmed with bustling trade for Quantico Creek became a point of commercial interest. Came the Scots and settled Dumfries on Quantico Creek. Archibald Henderson, Commandant of the Corps from 1820 to 1859, was born near Dumfries." (Booklet called "United States Marine Corps, Marine Barracks, Quantico, Va., 1930," p. 8); "We visit as he (George Washington) did homes or good neighbors at Dumfries * * *" (Wash. Post, Nov. 2, 1930, reviewing Andrews "George Washington's Country"); The sites of the Marine Corps Base and village of Quantico were a part of the grant of land given by King George to the Brent family, one of whom married Lady Baltimore's daughter. This grant comprised all the land lying on Aquia Creek. Brent's Village, or Aquia Village, was the largest tobacco port in the surrounding country - tobacco being used as currency in those days. It was one of the largest relay stations between New York and Florida on the old stage line, and also the center where all big horse races and cock fights were held. * * * The old graveyard is on the edge of the village. Most of the Brent family, including Lady Baltimore's daughter, are buried there. There are a number of graves and many contain very unusual inscriptions. (Article, "History of Quantico" in Leatherneck, July 24, 1930, p. 1, M.C.Arch.); "In the shadow of the famed Aquia Crucifix in Brent Cemetery near Quantico, Va., United States Marines in full dress uniform today at eleven o'clock will assist in the celebration of Catholic Church services. The Crucifix was erected in commemoration of the first proclamation of religious tolerance granted in Virginia. * * * Several thousand persons are expected to attend the services which will be held on property settled in 1686 by Colonel Giles Brent, the first Catholic colonist of Virginia." (Wash.Star, October 2, 1931).

28. Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 21-25; See also Tyler, Encyc. of Bios. Virginia, I, 236; Later Captain Henry Fleet, who owned three ships, went up the Potomac as far as the Falls. (Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 21-25); Wilstach's Tidewater Virginia, 56-57.

29. Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 143-144; "Came the Scots
Chapter II. -106- Volume One

29. Continued.

and settled Dumfries on Quantico Creek." (Booklet called "United States Marine Corps, Marine Barracks, Quantico, Va. 1930" p. 3); "The mystery of old Dumfries, Va., has been solved at last! Old store-books and the business correspondence of 'Messrs. Huie, Reid & Co., merchants of Dumfries,' recently brought to light, revive the life of this once prosperous, important town on the Potomac," is the beginning of a long article by Bessie Wilmarth Gahn in the Wash. Post Magazine, May 18, 1930; for early references to Quantico see indexes of subsequent chapters of this history.


31. Neal, Hist. New England, II, 342-343; Hildreth, Hist. U.S., I, 114-115, 136, 151, 237; These hostilities with the French were the first premonition of a mighty conflict not to be fully entered upon until the days of Argall's grandchildren, and not to be finally decided until the days of their grandchildren, when Wolfe climbed the Heights of Abraham, at Quebec. (Fiske, Old Va. & Her Neighbors, I, 170-171); Trumbull, Hist. of Conn., I, 13-19; Cooke, Virginia, 107-109; Tyler, Cyc. Biog. Virginia, I, 41; "this was the first warlike maritime expedition attempted by the American colonists, if a few parties sent in boats against" Indians, be excepted. (Cooper, Hist. of the Navy of the U.S., I, 4-7); Lediard, Naval Hist.,
31. Continued.


34. We know that the Pilgrims "adopted a military organization and chose for their leader Miles Standish, who had served as a soldier in Holland." (Hildreth, Hist., U.S., I, 166, 168-171).

35. See Charles Ray in "movie", The Courtship of Miles Standish; A description of what these Plymouth Marines did sounds like advanced base work. On the 28th (O.S.) the passengers were landed from the Mayflower, and at once "so many as could went to works on the hill, where we purposed to build our platform for our Ordinance, and which doth command all the plain, and the Bay, and from whence we may see farre into the sea." (Coast Artillery Journal, February, 1923, p. 105); See also for early Mass. Naval matters Morison, Mar. Hist., Mass., 9; Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 8; Hutchinson, Hist. Mass. Bay, 105; Mass. ship-building began with the launching in 1631 of Governor Winthrop's Blessing of the Bay on the Mystic River. (Morison, Mar. Hist. of Mass., 14; Macleay, Hist. of Amer. Privateers, 35); The 400-ton ship Seafort was built at Boston in 1643 but was wrecked.
35. Continued.
on the Spanish coast, decoyed by false lights ashore.  
(Morison, Mar. Hist., Mass., 14-15); For brief story 
of Mass. Bay Colony see Wash. Post Magazine, June 15, 
1930.

36. Cooper Hist., Navy, I, 7-8; "Not long after the landing 
of the Pilgrims at Plymouth a ship yard was established 
on the south bank of the Mystic River in Medford, Mass. 
From this yard the bark Blessing of the Bay was launched 
on July 4, 1631. This was the first ship regularly 
built in this country." (Nav. Inst. Proc., February, 
1929, p. 132).

37. Hart, Amer. Nation, IV, 136; Neill, Founders of Mary- 
land, 51-56; Hildreth, Hist. of U.S., I, 208-310; 
Fiske, Old Va. and Her Neighbors, 236 et seq.; Harper, 
Encyc. U.S. Hist., II, 181; Wiltach, Potomac Land- 
ings, 27-30, 319-320; Wiltach, Tidewater Maryland, 
41-42; Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer. III, 527; 
Lodge, Short Hist., Eng. Col. in Amer. 98; Cooke, 
Virginia, 178-180, wrote that "the Calvert fleet went 
back in triumph, with the captured Kent pinnace and 
the remnant of its crew to St. Mary's, the Maryland 
capital;" On May 10, 1635, there was another naval 
engagement between these forces in the Harbor of 
Great Wighcocomoco, at the mouth of the Pocomoke in 
which Thomas Smith, commanding for Claiborne, de-
feated the Marylanders with more bloodshed. (Old 
Virginia and Her Neighbors, 286 et seq.); Channing, 
Hist., U.S., I, 252-258. "Claiborne's men were de-
feated and taken prisoners." (Bancroft, Hist., U.S., 
I, 267); "Nothing tangible remains of Claiborne's 
days, unless the low mounds intermittently in evidence 
across the south end of the island are, as some have 
believed, the remains of the earth works, thrown up 
by Claiborne's partisans in their defence against 
Calvert three centuries ago." (Wiltach, Tidewater 
Maryland, 123).

38. Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 10-13; "This combat is the 
earliest action upon American waters of which we 
have any trustworthy records." (Willis J. Abbot, Nav. 
Hist., U.S., I, 1-20); Trumbull, Hist., Conn., I, 63-73; 

39. The English made efforts to settle Nova Scotia, but in 
1632 Acadie was relinquished by the English; See Hutch- 
Chapter II.


41. Trumbull, Hist. Conn., I, 161-162; "The Colonial fleet (of Mass.) for the most part, consisted of small single-decked sloops, the usual rig for coasters, and lateen-rigged ketches, the favorite rig for fishermen, of 20 to 30 tons burthen, and 35 to 50 feet long." (Morison, H. Hist. Mass., 15); People of New Amsterdam astounded to see, in the spring of 1649, the La Garce (Blauveldt) sailing into the harbor with a prize the Spanish bark Tobasco, which he had captured in the Tobasco River. After many years Tobasco decided to be NOT a legal prize. (J.H. Innes, New Amsterdam and Its People, 70); In 1673 or a century before the Declaration of Independence there were in Boston and adjacent ports, 750 American built vessels between 6 to 250 tons of which 30 were over 100 tons. In 1680 Connecticut had 24 vessels. (Cooper, Hist. Navy of U.S., I, 15-16). The Dutch of New Amsterdam maintained privateers. As early as 1342 they had sent out the frigate La Garce. She was operating as late as 1656 and in 1649 captured the Spanish bark Tobasco in the Bay of Campeche. (Jameson, Privateering and Piracy, Colonial Period, 9-13). In 1678 La Salle launched a vessel of 10 tons on Lake Ontario and in 1679 one of 30 tons on Lake Erie. (Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 16); "La Salle, in 1679, voyaged to Green Bay on the Griffon, the first sail vessel of the Lakes above the Falls, and which he had built on the bank of the Cayuga Creek, a tributary of the Niagara." (Kelton, Annals of Fort Mackinac, 35); "The First Vessel on the Upper Lakes, Built by La Salle, 1679," is caption of an illustration. (id.34)

42. Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 13-14; Maclay, Privateers, 34-35.

43. Barry, Hist. Mass., 345-366; Channing, Hist., U.S., I, 493; Soc. Col. Wars, D.C., 93; It was during this period that the Dutch ship Holy Ghost, of Amsterdam, renamed the Happie Entrance, was taken as a prize, carried into the Barbadoes and eventually to Nantasket and Salem. (Jameson, Privateering and Piracy, Colonial Period, 17-26).

44. Neal, Hist., New Eng., II, 342-343; In 1673 a small
Chapter II. -110- Volume One

44. Continued.
Dutch Fleet for a time possessed itself of New York but was restored in 1674 by the Treaty of Westminster. (Trumbull, Hist., Conn., I, 323-324; Channing, Hist., U.S., II, 50-52); In 1665-1636 Connecticut kept a small armed vessel cruising off Watch Hill, in order to prevent the Narragansett Indians from crossing to attack the Montauk tribe, which had been taken under the protection of the Colony. (Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 14).


46. New York Herald-Tribune, June 9, 1931 which also reports that "Colonel E. A. Greene, of the Marine Corps" made an address. It has been suggested that Richard Nicolls was a British Marine officer.


48. Edye, Hist., Royal Marines, I, 198; the disturbances were caused "by the imposition of taxes which the Colonists regarded as unjust." (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 22).

49. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 22; Edye, Hist., Royal Marines, I, 199.

50. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 22; Edye, Hist., Royal Marines, I, 300; "Never having seen any information published either establishing or concerning Marine Corps colors (generally accepted as Scarlet and Gold) it is recommended that it would be an excellent idea to have some official designation of what our Athletic Colors are and a description of their arrangement in an athletic flag or pennant. This would lead to uniformity of the colors and the pennant throughout the Marine Corps and I believe, (if you determine to issue an order) would be the first order issued in the military service of this character." (Memo, Major Edwin N. McClellan to Major General Commandant, 28 November, 1923, M.C. Arch.);

It was during Bacon's Rebellion in 1676 that Captain Charles Middleton's Company of British Royal Marines
50. Continued.

Landed in Virginia as part of what was called the Virginia Expedition. Their colors were Gold and Scarlet. Several years ago, while Major General John Archer Lejeune was Commandant, he asked the question: "Just what are the official Colors of the Corps?" Everybody scratched their heads and looked at each other blankly. They all thought that Gold and Scarlet was the answer but weren't quite sure, for no orders on subject could be found. Some time later General Lejeune, while reading a history called Britain's Sea Soldiers, saw the flag of Captain Middleton's Marines. "There are our Colors," said he, and sure enough there they were. An order was issued that - "Gold and Scarlet are the official Colors of the Marine Corps." (M.O. Manual, I - 57). See also in this connection an Address of Major General Commandant Ben Hebard Fuller at Virginia Military Institute, in April, 1931. "The Marines have a little ribbon of Gold and Scarlet, their own colors, of which they are justly proud." (Admiral Hugh Rodman, U.S. Navy, in Leatherneck, January 10, 1925, p.2).

51. Edye, Hist., Royal Marines, I, 204.

52. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 23; Edye, Hist., Royal Marines, I, 315.


55. Barry, Hist., Mass., 478, 493-503; Coast Artillery Journal, February, 1923, p. 113; Hildreth, Hist., U.S., II, 83-89; See also Osgood, Amer. Col. in the 18th Century, I, 3-4; Hart, Amer. Nation, VI, 118-134; Neal Hist., New Eng., II, 429. The Weekly Post Boy of New York about 1688 blazes with calls "to all Gentlemen Sailors" etc. (Harpers, LXXXVI, pp. 024-826) and these were the Marines of the privateers.

56. Hart, Amer. Nation, VI, 119-134; Kingsford, Hist., Canada, II, 228-245; Phips sailed from Boston with "thirty-two vessels and 2,000 men." "Three of the ships were from New York with 240 soldiers." (Hildreth, Hist., U.S., II, 133-135); See also Cooper, Hist.
56. Continued.

57. Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 137; Preble
in N. E. Hist. & Gen. Reg., 1868, 393.


59. The Massachusetts Government swept the coast from
Piscataquag to Nova Scotia with 550 men, taking the
town of Menis in 1704. (Minot's Hist. Mass. Bay, 70-71)

60. Paine, Ships and Sailors of Old Salem, 43-44.


62. Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 30-32; Abbot, Nav. Hist., U.S.,
I-20; Hart, Amer. Nation, VI, 136-153; See also Fieke,
Old Va. & Her Neighbors, II, 293-294; on July 21, 1712,
Col. William Dandridge, of Virginia, chartered his
vessel to the governor of North Carolina to carry 20
soldiers to Charleston, (Tyler, Encyc., Biog. Virginia
I, 154-155); Dewhurst, Hist. St. Augustine, 85.

63. Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 31-33, 40; Spencer, Hist.,
U.S., I, 165; Brown, The Sea, Its Hist. and Romance,
II, 13-14; Lediard, Naval Hist., of England, II,
848-849; in 1704 an expedition against Port Royal was
led by Church. (Channing, Hist., U.S., II, 531-544)
"The fortress was named Anna-polis, in honor of Queen
Anne, in whose reign it was conquered." (Historical
Record of The British Marine Corps by Richard Cannon,

64. Hutchinson, Hist., Mass. Bay, II, 165-167; See also
Hart, Amer. Nation, VI, 136-153; Cooper, Hist. Navy,
I, 31-32; Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer. V,
106; Minot, Hist., Mass. Bay, 70-71; Channing, Hist.,
U.S., II, 531-544;

Bay, 70-71; Trumbull, Hist. Conn. "400 Marines sent
to Boston under Col. Nicholson and Capt. Martin for
Port Royal Expedition." (Gillespie, Royal Marine
Corps, 28-27)
Chapter II

Hutchinson, Hist., Mass. Bay, II, 180-182, pub. in 1797; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 65; Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 408; See also Kingsford, Hist., Canada, III, 97-100; "The first American Marines to shove their heads above the historic horizon were those who served on board our ships in early Colonial Days, for the colonies did have ships of their own." (Admiral Hugh Rodman, U.S. Navy in Leatherneck, Jan. 10, 1935, 2)

For history of Castle Island see "Coast Forts of Colonial Massachusetts" in Coast Artillery Journal, February, 1923, 106-122.


Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 67.

Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 68; Nicolas, Hist. Rec., Royal Marine Forces, I, 15-16; Gillespie, Hist. Review, Royal Marines, 30, 31. Royal Marines, who had occupied Annapolis Royal since its surrender in 1709, joined this expedition. (Richard Cannon's Historical Record of the [British] Marine Corps, 19)


Maclay, Hist., Amer. Privateers, 39; Cooper, Hist., Navy, I, 40.

Morison, Mar. Hist., Mass., 20; As late as the year 1713, Trumbull enumerates the shipping of Connecticut at only two brigs, twenty sloops and a number of smaller craft. The seamen he estimated at 120. On the other hand, the commerce of Massachusetts, as appears by the Custom-house returns, taken between the years 1714 and 1717, employed 25,406 tons of shipping, 492 vessels, and 3,493 sea faring persons. (Cooper,
Chapter II

74. Continued.

Hist., Navy, U.S., I, 357); The first schooner is said to have been built at Cape Ann, by Captain Henry Robinson, in 1714. Her name has been unfortunately lost. (Cooper, Hist. Navy, U.S., I, 35)


77. For the pirates Bartholomew Roberts, Avery, Edward Low, Ned England, Howell Davis, Martel, Charles Vane, John Roacham, Anstis, Evans, and Worley see Harpers, LXXV, 502-512. For pirates Thomas Tew, James Hoar, Thomas Mostons and Delancecy see Harpers LXXIX, 813-827; For Thomas Tew in New York in 1694 and John Hoar in New York in 1698, see Rufus Rockwell Wilson's New York Old and New, I, 136-137. See Nav. Inst., Proc., July-August, 1916, 1171-1192 for a well documented article on piracy. For Marines on a buccaneer or pirate vessel see the novel Yemassee in two volumes, published in 1835. In some places Captain Chorley's landing parties of the Yemassee were made up of seamen and at other times of Marines as at II, p. 150 Chorley left Rees Matthews and her father and mother "under charge of three Marines, well-armed." For accounts of Joseph Bradish, born at Cambridge near Boston on the Adventure in 1690, William Mews, Thomas Jones, Want or Wanton on the Old Park, and Thomas Tew, see Nav. Inst. Proc., XXXVI, 423-430. For Ned Low, see Paine's Ships and Sailors of Old Salem, 46-47. For an account of the capture of the two sloops Ranger and Fortune by the British frigate Greghound and the execution of twenty-six pirates at Newport, R. I. on July 19, 1723 see Peterson's History of Rhode Island and Newport, 55-65. On October 27, 1727 the Virginia Council considered execution of certain pirates. (Virginia Hist. of History and Biography, July, 1924, 237-245.)

78. MC Arch.

80. Chapin’s R. I. Priv. in King George’s War, 6-7; Rhode Island Privateers in King George’s War, 1739-1743, by Howard M. Chapin, reviewed in Nav. Inst. Proc., Dec. 1923, 2646-2648.

81. MC Arch.

82. Lodge, Short History English Colonies in America, 28.

83. MC Gaz, Dec. 1929, 286.

84. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers.

85. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers.

86. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers.

87. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers.

88. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers.

89. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers.


91. British Home Office – Admiralty Correspondence, Vol.83.

92. British Home Office – Admiralty Correspondence, Vol.83.


94. Smollet’s Works, IV, 445-469; Benjamin Franklin on July 6, 1781 wrote Vergennes that in 1739 “England ordered 3,000 men to be raised in America, and transports with provisions to be furnished.” (Tharton, Dip. Corr., IV, 548); “even Penna. voted a contribution of money” to enlist troops. ( Bancroft, Hist., U.S., III, 440-442)

95. For biography of Spotswood see Encyc. of Biog., Virginia, Tyler, I, 58; Campbell’s Genealogy of the Spotswood Family of Scotland and America; Brock, Letters of Alex Spotswood, I, vii-xvi; born in 1676 (the year of the Virginia Rebellion) at Tangier (Morocco), arrived in Virginia in June, 1710. (Cooke, Virginia, 310-329); served as governor of Virginia, 1710 to 1723 and “1730 was appointed Postmaster General of the Colonies and in 1739 Commander of the forces raised” against Cartagena “but he died at Annapolis, June 7,
Chapter II

Continued.

1740." (Lempriere, Universal Biog. of Eminent Persons, Lord, II, 680; See also Fiske, Old Virginia and Her Neighbors, II, 370; Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer. V, 387; Mildreth, Hist., U.S., II, 240); "He was buried on his estate of Temple Farm, near Yorktown, Va.;" in "1781 the mansion at Temple Farm was known as the Moore House;" the "surrender of Lord Cornwallis was negotiated in the house which had sheltered the last years of this noble governor," (Fiske, Old Va. & Her Neighbors, II, 339-390); on November 11, 1896, a stained glass window was unveiled in the Powder Magazine in Williamsburg to the memory of Governor Spotswood who in 1716 had erected it. (Wm. & Mary College Quarterly Hist. Mag., V, Jan., 1897, 213); "His grandson Alexander married the daughter of Gen. Wm. Augustus Washington, the niece and legatee of Gen. George Washington." The "blood of the elegant and vigorous Spottswood flowed in the veins of some of our nation's heroes." His granddaughter Dorothea Dandridge married Patrick Henry. In 1730, Spotswood was made Postmaster General for the Colonies and it was he who appointed Benjamin Franklin Post Master for the Province of Pa. Alex. Spotswood held this position till 1739 when he was "appointed commander-in-chief of the Colonial Troops in the expedition fitted out against Cartagena. He died, however, on the eve of embarking at Annapolis, June 7, 1740." (Pa., Soc. of Colonial Governors, I, (1916), 139-149); He visited Williamsburg and then repaired to Annapolis with the intention of embarking with the troops, but he died June 7, just before the embarkation, and Colonel William Gooch was appointed chief in his place. Colonel Spotswood married, in 1724, Ann Butler Brain, daughter of Mr. Richard Brain, of London, and they had two sons, John and Robert Spotswood, and two daughters, Ann Catherine, who married Bernard Moore, and Dorothea, who married Captain Nathaniel West Dandridge. John, the elder son, married in 1745, Mary, daughter of William Dandridge, and had issue two sons, General Alexander Spotswood and Captain John Spotswood, both of the army and of the revolution, and two daughters, Mary and Ann. The descendants of Governor Spotswood are now represented in numerous families of distinction. (Tyler, Encyc., Virginia Biog., I, 59); Major John Henley Higbee, U.S.M.C., born September 11, 1838, on his mother's side was descended from the Henley and Dandridge families of Virginia, Leonard Henley, his grandfather having married Elizabeth Dandridge, sister of Martha Washington. (Powell, Officers who served in Civil War, 199).
95. Continued.

Mrs. Fuller, wife of Major General Commandant Ben Hobard Fuller, is a descendant of Alexander Spottswood, as is Brigadier General Randolph Carter Berkeley and Brigadier General Theodore Porter Kane. At the north end of the bridge over the Rappahannock River on Jefferson Davis Highway at Falmouth, near Fredericksburg is the following sign: "No. 157-z SPOTSYLVANIA COUNTY Area, 413 square miles." "Formed in 1720 from Essex, King and Queen, and King William, and named for Alexander Spotswood, Governor of Virginia, 1710-1722. The Battles of Fredericksburg, Chancellorsville, The Wilderness (partly) and Spotsylvania were fought in this county."

96. Field, Britain’s Sea Soldiers; See Note 101; "in 1740 three additional regiments were raised in America and assembled at New York. All the officers, excepting the captains of companies, who were colonists nominated by the provinces, were appointed by the Crown, and Colonel Spotswood of Virginia, was Colonel-Commandant of the whole". (Colburn’s United Service Mag. and Nav and Mil Journal, May, 1874, pp. 6-7); The captain of one of the Virginia companies was Lawrence Washington, the half-brother of George Washington, Lawrence, who was then twenty years of age, distinguished himself in the capture of the fort at Boca Chica, and was also in the deadly assault on San Lazaro."James Innes, citizen of New Hanover County, N. C., served as a captain in the Cartagena Expedition under Colonel William Gooch. (Official Records of Robert Dinwiddie, I, 125, 403-405); North Carolina Booklet, Oct., 1904, IV, 3-17; In 1740, 8 companies of infantry went from Philadelphia under Captains appointed by the Governor, to join Admiral Vernon in the West Indies. Similar companies also went from Virginia and Carolina. All to rendezvous at Jamaica. (Watson, Annals of Phila. & Pa., I, 257); Recruiting officers for Philadelphia were Capts. Palmer, Thomas Lawrence, Samuel Love; at Perkiomen, Marcus Huling; Manatawny, Owen Evan; Limerick, Alexander Woodrop and James Hamilton. (Scharf and Moscot Hist., Phila., I, 209); "These [British force at Cartagena] were augmented by four battalions of Americans." (Colburn's United Service Mag., May, 1874, DXLVI, 6-7); On arrival at Hispaniola further reinforcements were embarked in the shape of two of the newly raised regiments of American Marines, and a few other Colonial levies. (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 75);
Chapter II -118- Volume One

96. Continued.
Cooke, Virginia, 310-329; "Gooch assumed command of the 4 colonial battalions transported to join the British troops under Admiral Vernon in an attack on Cartagena in New Granada." (Tyler, Encyc., Biog., Va., I, 60-61); "In 1740, on account of the unexpected death of Major-General Alexander Spotswood, Governor Gooch assumed command of the four Colonial battalions transported to join the British troops under Admiral Vernon in an attack on Cartagena in New Granada. He was absent about a year, during which time Rev. James Blair, president of the College, acted as governor." "Gooch was seriously wounded, and contracted the fever from which many of the English troops died. Upon his return to Virginia in July, 1741, he resumed the government of the colony." (Tyler, Encyc. Biog., Va., I, 60-61; See also William Allen, Amer. Bio., Dict., 385, which includes the anecdote - when a slave in Williamsburg bowed to him in the street he bowed in return. He said, "I cannot suffer a slave to exceed me in good manners."); "A regiment commanded by Colonel Gooch, which was employed in North America dated from December 29, 1739 and was disbanded in 1742. It was raised for Colonial defensive service, and may have been formed from some of the independent companies of foot which at that time garrisoned our western possessions. Gooch was Governor of Virginia, where his regiment known as "the Old Americans," principally served. In Jamaica under date of 1742 we find eight of these independent companies, at New York four, in Bermuda one, at Providence one, and some had been raised for South Carolina, for they are 'ordered to be disbanded' shortly afterwards." (Royal United Service Institution, Jan., 1887, but the quoted information is erroneous for Gooch's Marines were raised to attack Spanish colonies not for defense," and the writer has probably confused them with Oglethorpe's Regiment raised a few month's earlier); For matters pertaining to Gooch, see Official Letters, Robert Dinwiddie, I, ix, 2, 376, 403, 405, 414; Va. Mag. Hist. and Biog., XXXII, Oct., 1824, 352-359; id, XXXII, Jan., 1825, 58-61 in which he wrote "it pleased Providence to wound me, and save my life, for if I had not been confined I verily believe I should have been numbered with those that died by sickness. I am still weak in my knees and very lame."

97. "Camlet' was a rough material, a mixture of cotton and wool. This clothing was ordered to be made in England." (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 88).
Chapter II

98. Gillespie, Hist. Review, Royal Marine Corps, 39-47; Nicholas, Hist. Records, Royal Marine Forces, I, 13; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 73; Colburn's United Service Mag., May, 1874, DKLVI, 6-7; From "Cannon's Records," and the "Gentleman's Magazine" of 1741, we learn that their field officers and subalterns were appointed by the King, and that their Captains of Companies were nominated by the American Provinces; "It was supposed that from climate, the natives of the American Continent were better calculated for the service upon which they were destined than Europeans."

"Three Regiments of Foot," says the contemporary Gentleman's Magazine "of a thousand men each, are raising with all speed in our American colonies, and will consist of natives or of those enured to the climate. Their general rendezvous is to be at New York, where the Royal Standard is set up." (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 32).

99. See Note 92.

100. MO Arch.

101. Among the many Virginians serving in Gooch's Marines was Laurence Washington, the eldest brother of George Washington. The Scientific American, Supplement, of January 22, 1910, 58 carries the information: "One thing lends interest to the history of this old castle and Vernon's memorable siege of Cartagena in 1741 is that Lawrence, eldest brother of George Washington, was the ranking captain of colonial troops under Vernon, and that without doubt he took part in the attack on this old fort, which ended in the defeat of Vernon's effort to capture Cartagena. Colonel Washington died after his return to Virginia from a disease contracted while engaged in that campaign." An illustration on page 57 of the above magazine, of the Battlements of Fort San Felipe de Barajas carried a caption that "It is presumed that troops were led by Col. Lawrence Washington in this attack." Colonel Cyril Field the eminent Historian of the British Marines and author of Britain's Sea Soldiers criticizes the above article in the Scientific American of March 15, 1910. All authorities, however, agree that Laurence Washington was at Cartagena. Here are a few: "A force of Virginians commanded by Gooch" and "Captain Laurence Washington, brother of Washington, accompanied the troops." (Cooke, Virginia, 310-329). Laurence Washington served in the unfortunate
101. Continued.

expedition against Cartagena. (Benjamin, Naval Academy, 15-16). Laurence Washington obtained the commendation of both Vernon of the Navy and Wentworth of the Army. (Hutchinson, III. Hist., etc., 43-44). "Among them was a certain young officer named Lawrence Washington, who enjoyed the special confidence of Admiral Vernon." (Ford, Ad. Vernon, 166-167); Laurence Washington "served under Admiral Vernon in his operations against the Spanish posts on the shores of Central American waters." (Harper's Mar., XVIII, March, 159, 443); Cooper in his History of the Navy wrote that Laurence Washington, "brother of George "served in that celebrated attack against Cartagena" under Admiral Vernon. Wiltach in his Potomac Landings refers to this subject as follows: The colonial estate of Porto Bello survives. "Its name recalls the adventures of several Potomac River lads early in the 18th century. They were Laurence Washington, Edwin Coade, and William Hebb, midshipmen in the British Navy. They were attached to the command of Admiral Vernon and fought with him at Porto Bello and Cartagena." When they returned William Hebb called his place Cartagena (now Hatton's Corbet); Edwin Coade named his place Porto Bello; and Laurence Washington, Mt. Vernon. Wiltach corrected that statement, (in a letter to Miss Elizabeth L. Hebb, great-great-granddaughter of William Hebb) and in his Maryland Tidewater for it was William Hebb, and not Coade, who named his plantation on the St. Mary's, Porto Bello for which see following Note 102.

102. "On the west side of Saint Mary's River are two houses of considerable though undefined age. One is called Cartagena, the other is called Porto Bello, two names which at once recall the Spanish-English war early in the eighteenth century and the part played in the West Indian campaign by several Potomac River young men who enlisted in the British colonial forces and fought at Cartagena and Porto Bello under Admiral Vernon. Thomas cites the names of three of these Potomac youths: Laurence Washington from the Virginia side of the river, and William Hebb and Edwin Coade from the Maryland side. When these young men returned to their river to settle in civil life we know that Laurence Washington named his home Mount Vernon after their commander, and Thomas says that Hebb called his place Porto Bello and Coade named his place Cartagena.
Continued.

This last fact seems to be controverted by a unique bit of testimony in the little brick house itself, a feature of it that I have never seen repeated elsewhere. Cartagena is a small story-and-a-half brick house. Into its front, obviously at the time it was built, were set, on either side the front door, the initials W and H, each letter some three feet high in black head bricks. The Piney Point neighborhood, in which Cartagena stands, originally Evelyn Manor, granted Captain George Evelyn in 1637, was widely settled by the Hebb family of which several were named William, and it seems obvious that this house was built by the William Hebb who fought in the West Indies, put his own initials curiously but not unnaturally in the structure of his house, and named it after his own great adventure. Cartagena has succumbed to the more modern name of Hatton's Corbett.

It is believed that the William Hebb buried beneath the handsome table tomb at Porto Bello is the presumed builder of both these old houses."(Cedwater Maryland, by Paul Wilstach, pp.310-311); William Hebb gave his plantation on the St. Mary's River the name Porto Bello and named one son Vernon. William Hebb was with Admiral Vernon in 1741 in the West Indies Expedition and attack on both Porto Bello and Cartagena in Central America. In Annapolis on file is a document showing him the owner or rather the 'lessee of my Lord's Land' for 3 Lives, a sort of entailment. This property he named 'Porto Bello' and after the Revolution his son became the owner outright to it. A part of the 'Porto Bello' estate was originally taken from West Saint Mary's Manor, one of the manors reserved by Lord Baltimore and was only leasehold until after the Revolution when by the act of 1761 all of Lord Baltimore's ground rents were confiscated and the fee simple interests therein became vested in the lessees, and so this property was passed from son to son in the Hebb family, for three generations. William Hebb named the creek nearby Cartagena and a property known as 'Cartagena' near 'Porto Bello'. His daughter Ann lived on after her marriage to a Mr. Fenwick. The family tradition is that William Hebb owned both estates and from the above facts it would seem to be the truth. His son born in 1743 he named Vernon out of courtesy to his Admiral and every generation since there has been a Vernon Hebb. This son became an officer in the Re-
olution and bore the titles of Capt, Lt. Col., and Colonel. He married Anna Hopewell, granddaughter of Sir Hugh Hopewell of England. William Hebb passed away May 25, 1758 and is buried in the family burying ground at 'Porto Bello'. There is a large, high, flat tablestone to mark the spot and it is said the family sent to England for it. 'Porto Bello' is beautifully situated on the St. Mary's River opposite St. Mary's City which was the capital of Maryland before it was moved to Annapolis." (Miss Elizabeth L. Hebb, daughter of Col. Clement Dorsey Hebb, to Major E. H. McClellan, 5 July 1932, MC Arch); "Clement Dorsey Hebb was born July 10, 1820 on the estate, of his father Col. William Hebb, called 'Snow Hill,' near Haymarket, Va. ** He was the great-grandson of William Hebb who served as an officer of Trench's Marines, in 1741 under Admiral Vernon and was at the attack on ** on Cartagena in Central America. Upon his return to his home on the St. Mary's River, William Hebb named his estate 'Porto Bello' and later named his son Vernon for Admiral Vernon. Thus, Clement D. Hebb was a direct descendant of an officer in the first Marine Corps of America." (id) Colonel Clement Dorsey Hebb was appointed Second Lieutenant in the Corps 14 March 1856; promoted First Lieutenant 7 May 1861, Captain 26 July 1861, Major 12 January 1876, Lieutenant Colonel 13 April 1879, and Colonel 10 August 1889. (Hamersly, Gen. Re., 632; See also M. Amy Aldrich, Hist. USMC, 236; Collum, Hist. USMC, 432). Colonel Hebb retired 10 July 1892 and died 23 June 1897. (Collum, Hist. USMC, 432). "He was ordered by the Secretary of the Navy in September 1890 to report at Headquarters as Acting-Commandant as Commandant Charles R. McCawley was sick on six months leave before retiring." (Let. Miss Hebb, 5 July 1832, MC Arch); "Ordered to Headquarters to take command of the Marine Corps September 23 (?) 1890. Assumed command September 30(?). Relieved from command February 10, 1891. ** Placed on the retired list July 10, 1892. Died June 23, 1897 at Washington D.C." (History of Col. Hebb signed by Major and Asst George C. Reid, 7 Aug, 1837 in Let. Press Bk., No.6, pp.273-274, MC Arch); Marine Corps Muster Rolls from September, 1890 to January 31, 1891 are headed: "Washington, D.C., Station under the command of Col. C. D. Hebb, Comdg." (MC Arch); "Colonel Clement D. Hebb was born in Virginia, but was appointed a Second Lieutenant in the Marine Corps of the United States, from California, March,
102. Continued:

1856. After going through his preliminary training at Headquarters, and at the Marine Barracks at Philadelphia, where a large force of Marines was always then kept, he was ordered in command of the Marine Guard of the Sloop-of-War Falmouth, and served in the Brazils for three years. During the year 1359 he was attached to the Preble of the Paraguay Expedition. After returning from the South American Station, Lieutenant Hebb served at Headquarters; at Marine Barracks, Pensacola; and at Headquarters again in 1360-61. These were trying times and people had to declare their sentiments very plainly. Lieutenant Hebb was ordered, with a detachment of Marines, to occupy Fort Washington, on the Potomac to prevent that Fort from falling into the hands of the rebels. In June, 1861 he was commissioned a First Lieutenant, and after a short term at the Marine Barracks at Boston, was ordered to the frigate Santee of the West Gulf Squadron. He was promoted to Captain while thus serving, and being detached served at the Marine Barracks at Norfolk, Virginia, and at Philadelphia. During a portion of the year 1865 he served with the battalion of Marines at Morris and Folly Islands, South Carolina. During 1864 and 1865 he was on duty at New York, Portsmouth, New Hampshire, and at Washington; was attached to the flagship Colorado of the European Squadron, from April 1865, to August 1867. Captain Hebb was, after this date, in command of the Marine Barracks at Washington; the Marine Barracks at Mound City; and again at Washington, D.C. Thence he went to the Marine Barracks at Boston, and was transferred to the command of the Marine Barracks at Pensacola, where he remained from October, 1869, to June, 1872. In 1872-73 he was stationed at Annapolis, afterwards serving in the flag-ship Pensacola, Pacific Squadron. From July 1874, to May 1880, he commanded the Marines at the Mare Island Navy Yard, California. Commissioned Major 1876. From May 1880, to February, 1885, commanded Marines at Boston Navy-Yard; commissioned Lieutenant-Colonel April, 1880 commanded Marines at Navy-Yard, Portsmouth, New Hampshire, 1885 to August 1889. Commissioned Colonel August 1889, and stationed for a few months at League Island, Philadelphia. March 1, 1890, appointed to the command of the Marine Barracks at the Navy-Yard, Boston,
102. Continued.

Massachusetts. Colonel Hebb was ordered by the Honorable Secretary of the Navy on September 7, 1891, to Washington, D.C. to command the Marine Corps while the Commandant (McCawley) was sick, and until his retirement and successor was appointed in February, 1891, when he returned to the Boston Marine Barracks." (Officers Who Served in the Civil War, Major William H. Powell and Medical Director Edward Shippen, 193.) I am "the daughter of the late Colonel Clement Dorsey Hebb, Acting Colonel Commandant of the Marine Corps at the time of President (Benjamin) Harrison, 3rd. My father was the great grandson of an officer, William Hebb, evidently in 'Gooch's Marines,' for he and his friend Lawrence Washington served under Admiral Vernon. In the family annals these two young men are referred to as being 'sort of Ensigns,' in the expedition to Porto Bello and Cartagena. My forebear thought so kindly of Admiral Vernon that he named his only son Vernon and there has always been in the Hebb family a Vernon Hebb in each generation since." (Elizabeth L. Hebb to Editor, Marine Corps Association, 20 January, 1930, M.C. Arch.). In Brumbaugh's book there are 2 fac-similes of leased land to Wm. Hebb: One, the 29th April, 1742 — 157 acres of which lays in Eldon surveys except 70 acres. Vernon Hebb in possession, son of said Wm for 3 Lives—Wm. Hebb dead. Hopewell Hebb, 60 years, healthy (his widow). Priscilla Hebb gone to England. Annual rent —— no fine due—no improvements. Badly——well timbered, lays levil — soil stiff and good. (This is numbered 13) two Leased to Wm. Hebb 20 Jan. 1741 for 52 acres and contains 52 acres. Vernon Hebb in possession. Wm. Hebb dead, Hopewell Hebb 60, healthy. Priscilla Hebb gone to England. ——— soil stiff and poor. (This is numbered 14.) William Hebb sold Porto Bello about 1815. (Miss Hebb's information). "From St. Inigoes my canoe bore me to the opposite side of the river, where I called upon Mr. J. Edwin Coad, a descendant of a colonial family and a gentleman of the old school. Mr. Coad is an antiquarian and well posted on the history of the section. Adjoining his place was the manor of the Hebb family. 'Col. Hebb' said Mr. Coad 'sailed with the Marylanders and Virginians, among whom was Captain Lawrence Washington, in the expedition of Admiral
Continued.

Vernon against Spanish America in 1741. You will recall that Great Britain in 1740 had declared war against Spain for interfering with British trade in the West Indies and Admiral Vernon was dispatched to the south with a great fleet and about 25,000 sailors and soldiers under Wentworth. Volunteers from the colonies joined the expedition and with them went Colonel Hebb and young Washington who was appointed a Captain of Infantry. Porto Bello was taken and Cartagena bombarded but the British were repulsed with immense loss and the expedition proved disastrous. Washington called his home Mount Vernon in honor of the Admiral and Hebb gave the same name to his son. The creek which you can see over there was named by Colonel Hebb, Cartagena, and his place Porto Bello titles which they bear to the present day."

(From an Account of Ancient St. Mary's, by R.B.H. Wash, Star, August 10, 1895.) The direct line of the Hebb Family: Thomas Hebb; William Hebb (who served under Admiral Vernon and named his estate Porto Bello); Vernon Hebb; William Hebb; Colonel Clement Dorsey Hebb, U.S. Marine Corps; Howeowell Hebb, brother of Miss Elizabeth L. Hebb. (Miss Elizabeth L. Hebb) to Major McClellan, 25 July, 1929, M.C.Arch.).

103. See Note 102.

104. See Notes 96 and 105.


108. Tyler wrote that "in 1740, on account of the unexpected death of Major-General Alexander Spotswood, Governor Gooch assumed command of the four Colonial battalions transported to join the British troops under Admiral Vernon. " He "was absent about a year, during which time Rev. James Blair, president of the College, acted as governor." Gooch "was seriously wounded, and contracted the fever from which many of the English troops died. Upon his return to
108. Continued.

Virginia in July, 1741, he resumed the government of the colony." Colonel Gooch wrote that "it pleased providence to wound me, and save my life, for if I had not been confined I verily believe I should have been numbered with those that died by sickness. I am still weak in my knees and very lame." See also Note 96.

109. "So named from 'Old Grog', a nickname given to Admiral Vernon, in allusion to his wearing a grogham cloak in foul weather. He is said to have been the first to dilute the rum of the sailors." "A mixture of spirit and water not sweetened; hence, any intoxicating liquor." (Webster's New Inter. Dict.); See also pp. 42, 57-58 and Notes 116, 171.

110. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers.

111. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers.

112. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers.

113. Gillespie, Hist. Rview, Royal Marine Corps, 39-47; Nicholas, Hist. Record, Royal Marine Forces, 18; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 73-83; Colburn's United Service Magazine, May, 1874, DXLVI, 6-7; "the Admiralty had actually sent the fleet to sea without providing it with a trained body of Marines." (Ford, Admiral Vernon, 125-126).


117. Ford, Admiral Vernon, 149-150; See also Vernon to Pattin, 10 Nov. 1740, (Etting; Collection of the Manuscript Department of the Hist. Soc., of Pa., in Philadelphia).

118. Etting Collection of the Manuscript Department of
118. Continued.
the Hist. Soc., of Pa., in Philadelphia.

119. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 290.

120. Colomb, Naval Warfare; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 290.

121. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 290.

122. Colomb, Naval Warfare; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 290.

123. Ford, Admiral Vernon, 149-151; Smollett wrote that
at Dominica, Ogle found "Admiral Vernon with his
Squadron and the regiment of North Americans who
were 'quartered ashore'". (IV, 445-469).


125. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 290.

126. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers; M. C. Gaz., Dec.,
1929, 290.

127. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers; This paragraph of
Colonel Field was written from the viewpoint of the
arriving Fleet of Ogle. As a matter of fact we have
already seen that Gooch's American Marines had al-
ready joined Vernon.; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers,
I, 88; This is no doubt an error for Gillespie, Hist.
Review, Royal Marine Corps, 62-63, shows a list as
follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battalion</th>
<th>1st Bn.</th>
<th>2nd Bn.</th>
<th>3rd Bn.</th>
<th>4th Bn.</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Squad</td>
<td>16 sgt.s.</td>
<td>10 sgt.s.</td>
<td>10 sgt.s.</td>
<td>6 sgt.s.</td>
<td>42 sgt.s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>11 cpl.s.</td>
<td>7 cpl.s.</td>
<td>7 cpl.s.</td>
<td>7 cpl.s.</td>
<td>32 cpl.s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>3 dmrs.</td>
<td>3 dmrs.</td>
<td>3 dmrs.</td>
<td>1 dmrs.</td>
<td>10 dmrs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private</td>
<td>129 pvt.s.</td>
<td>90 pvt.s.</td>
<td>79 pvt.s.</td>
<td>107 pvt.s.</td>
<td>405 pvt.s.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

128. British Home Office and Ad. Corr., Vol. 92; M. C.
Gaz., Dec., 1929, 290.

129. British Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence,
Vol. 92.

130. H. O. Corr. with Ad. Vol. 92; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929,
290.


139. See Colomb, Naval Warfare; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 291.

140. See Colomb, Naval Warfare; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 291.


142. Fort St. Joseph also crumbled.

143. Britain's Sea Soldiers, by Field, See also Ford, Admiral Vernon, 154-167.

144. "This may have been Laurence Washington, elder brother of George, who, according to a writer in the Scientific American, was senior Captain of the Colonial troops, under Vernon, at Cartagena. He died after his return to Virginia of disease contracted there. (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 78; Scientific American, January 22, 1910, 57, 59 (Sup), and March 19, 1910, 187 (Sup); North Carolina
144. Continued.
Booklet, October, 1904, IV, 3-17). See also Note 101.

145. Smollett's Works, IV, 445-469; See also Field,
Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 78.

146. Smollett's Works, IV, 445-469; At daybreak, April
9, 1741, 500 Grenadiers, supported by a thousand
Marines, some Jamaican levies, advanced against the
enemy's lines in front of the fort. These were fol-
lowed by a body of Americans, with wool-packs, scal-
ing ladders, and hand grenades. The Spaniards were
intrenched and their works were "over-awed by St.
Lazar." The attackers drove the Spaniards from the
trenches into the fort. Efforts to scale the walls
of St. Lazar failed. (Gillespie, Hist. Review, Roy-
al Marine Corps, 49-50; See also Field, Britain's
Sea Soldiers, I, 81-84; see Trumbull, Hist., Conn.,
II, 265-269; Grant, British Battles, I, 570-573;
Hildreth, Hist., U.S., II, 376-382; Cloves, Royal
Navy, III, 71; Roderick Random, Smollett's Works,
I, Intro. p. XIII.)

147. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929.


149. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers.

150. British Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence,
Vol. 91; N.B: The above mentioned 2 Regts had not
been intended to form part of the Expedition but had
been put on board to complete the complements of
the men-of-war since seamen could not be obtained.

151. British Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence,
Vol. 87.

152. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293.

153. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293.

154. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293; See pp. 55-56 and Note
165.

155. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293.
156. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293.
157. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293.
158. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 293.
159. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 294.
163. Colomb, Naval Warfare; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929.
168. Mahan, Inf. of Sea Power upon History, 261; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929, 295.
173. It is a melancholy truth, which, however, ought to be told that a low, ridiculous, and pernicious jealousy subsisted between the land and sea officers during this whole expedition; and that the chiefs of those were so weak or wicked as to take all opportunities of thwarting and manifesting their contempt for each other, at a time when the lives of so many brave fellow-subjects were at stake, and
173. Continued.

when the interest and honour of their country re-
quired the utmost zeal and unanimity. Instead of
conferring personally, and co-operating with vigour
and cordiality, they began to hold separate councils,
drew up acrimonious remonstrances, and send irritat-
ing messages to each other; and while each of them
piqued himself upon doing barely as much as would
screen him from the censure of a court-martial, nei-
ther seemed displeased at the neglect of his colleague;
but, on the contrary, both were in appearance glad
of the miscarriage of the expedition, in hope of see-
ing one another stigmatized with infamy and disgrace.
(Smollett's Works, IV, 445-469); "I have myself
heard it said, and meant too, 'A messmate before a
shipmate; a shipmate before a stranger; a stranger
before a dog; but - a dog before a soldier.'"
(Laughton, Studies, Naval Hist. Biog., 343-347); The
attack on Cartagena "failed largely through the want
of harmony which existed between" Vernon and Went-
worth. (Winson, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., VIII, 292;
See also Tobias Smollett, Roderic Random, and Com-
pendium of Voyages, or "An Account of the Expedition
against Cartagena"; Hart. Amer. Nation, VII, 101-103);
Captain Marryatt in one of his stories speaking of
this attack on Cartagena said: 'The Army thought the
Navy might have beaten down the stone ramparts ten
feet thick and the Navy wondered why the Army did not
walk up the same ramparts which were thirty feet per-
pendicular.' The attempt failed because of lack of
Army and Navy cooperations and because of the stout-
ness of the defense. (Nav. Inst. Proc., Sept. 1924,
1, 418; Mahan, Influence of Sea Power Upon History,
260-261); See in this connection Nav. Inst. Proc.,
Jan., 1925, 2-3, 8. This expedition produced an in-
teresting legal case, Lieut. Frye of Marines being
illegally sentenced by court-martial sued in civil
court and won verdict in 1746. (Field, Britain's
Sea Soldiers, I, 316-316).

174. "More than a thousand men died in a day for several
days. Of nearly 1,000 men from New England, not 100
returned." Of 500 men from Massachusetts, 50 only
returned. (Trumbull, Hist. Conn., II, 265-269); Gor-
don wrote that "scarce one fifty" of the Massachusetts
troops returned; Gordon, The American Revolution, I,
110; The Mass. troops were paid off and dismissed
174. Continued.

175. Letter, February 16, 1925, Colonel Cyril Field, Royal Marine Light Infantry to Major Edwin North McClellan, U.S. Marine Corps. The letter also stated that Captain William Meyrick was senior Captain in "Wynyard's" and received a captain's commission, September 4, 1735. He was Captain in "Wynyard's" on November 30, 1739.

176. Colonel C. Field, British Marines, to Major McClellan, January 9, 1926, M.C.Arch.

177. British Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence, Vol. 88.

178. British Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence, Vol. 91.

179. "The selection of Santiago as an objective was governed by three reasons. First, it would be valuable as a base for further operations against Cuba. Such operations were under consideration and Governor Shirley of Massachusetts was already offering land grants to prospective settlers in Cuba. Second, Santiago was strategically located between the Spaniards in Cuba and the French in Haiti whose entry into the war was imminent. Third, and most important of all, it was urgently necessary to check the depredations of Spanish privateers operating from Santiago." (Nav. Inst. Proc., April 1931, 510.)


181. Hildreth, Hist., U.S., II, 376-382; "Attempts were made upon both Cartagena and Santiago de Cuba, in the year 1741 and 1742, but in both wretched failures resulted; the admiral and the general quarrelled, as was not uncommon in days when neither had an intelligent comprehension of the other's business." (Mahan, Influence of Sea Power Upon History, U.S., II, 376-382).
182. M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929; "they anchored in a broad bay, which they called Puerto Grande, from its size, but is now known by its previous name of Guantanamo." (Francesco Tarducci, Life of Christophe Columbus, I, 315); On July 18 the fleet arrived at Guantanamo, which had recently been reconnoitered and found undefended, and which was at that time known to the English as "Walthenham Harbour." Hervey, in 1779, described Guantanamo as "a large and secure haven, which protects the vessels that ride in it from the hurricanes which are so frequent in the West Indies." (Hervey, Naval History of Great Britain, 1779, quoted by Nav. Inst. Proc., April, 1931, 510). Called Cumberland in 1797. (Morse Amer. Gazetteer).

183. Vice Admiral P. H. Colomb's Naval Warfare, 346-348, quoting Entick at times; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929; "when in 1741, Guantanamo was a British Base of operations against the Spaniards in nearby Santiago, one of the American Colonials" was "Laurence Washington, brother of the first President of the United States." (Washington Star, Feb., 24, 1931 quoting National Geographic Society Bulletin); "Among the troops was the remnant of the American regiment, in which served Lawrence Washington." (Nav. Inst. Proc., April 1931, 510).


188. British Home Office and Admiralty Correspondence; M. C. Gaz., Dec., 1929.


192. Hervey, Naval History of Great Britain, 1779, quoted by Nav. Inst. Proc., April 1931, 512; General Shafter stated after the war that, while en route to Cuba in June, 1898, he read an account of Wentworth's failure and that it convinced him that his sole chance of success would lie in the very impetuosity of his attack. (Alger, The Spanish American War).


195. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 88-89; "1742. The Island of Rattan, in the Bay of Honduras, taken possession of, and placed in a state of defence." (Hist. Rec. of the Br. Marine Corps, Richard Cannon); "The Bay Islands (Roatan, Bonaco, etc.) were seized by the British" etc. (Auto. Charles Biddle, 32); A large force under Vernon were at Jamaica in January, 1742. Trade in logwood and commercial intercourse with South America made it desirable to send a force to "Rattan, an island in the Bay of Honduras." "An establishment having been formed there in the early part of the year (1742), it was determined in a Council of War to send a force of 50 Marines and 200 Americans, under Major Caulfield, in order to place the island in a state of military defence." "On the 23d of August the troops reached Fort Royal on the south side of the island, where they formed a camp and erected Fort George to defend the harbor, as well as Fort Frederick on the western part of it. A proportion of the Americans, who were papists, formed a plot to render the settlement abortive, and to rise upon the Marines. Her Majesty's ship the Litchfield, then in the harbor, hearing the alarm-guns, instantly landed her party of Marines, who, with those on shore, soon checked the daring mutiny, secured the delinquents, and preserved the settlement to the British Crown." In September, 1742 orders recalling Vernon arrived and he was succeeded by Ogle. (Richard Cannon's Historical Record of the Marine Corps. (Royal Marines). )
Chapter II

196. Cooper, I, 40-41; Maclay, Hist. of Amer. Privateers, 39.

197. William Dandridge, of Virginia, commanded the South Sea in Admiral Vernon's attack on Cartagena. (Tyler, Encyc., Biog., Va., I, 154-155).


200. M.C. Arch.

201. Chapin's Rhode Island Privateers in King George's War, 1739-1748, 17-20; Privateering and Piracy, 276, 473, 503, 571. The very interesting journal of Captain Norton's sloop Revenge is in Ibid, 380; many other privateering narratives will be found, mostly in court proceedings, in this volume. Instructions for privateers at different periods are in Law and Custom of the Sea, I, 197, 218, 252, 410, 502, II (Navy Records Society, I), 403-435; Privateering and Piracy, 347. (Allen, Mass. Priv. in the Rev., 9); "As time went on and the American colonists grew in numbers, they took an increasing interest in privateering. The more enterprising and adventurous American merchants and seamen engaged in this pursuit whenever England was at war with other nations. American newspapers recount the fortunes of these sea-rovers." (Allen, Mass. Priv. in the Rev., 9); "In time of war the Colonial Governors, along with their judicial functions, were given authority to issue letters of marque or privateer commissions. During the war of 1739 with Spain, such a commission was granted to Captain Benjamin Norton, of Newport. This long document differs little from those of the fifteenth century, in contrast with the much briefer form used a generation later, during our Revolution. It is here quoted" in part: "Richard Ward, Esq., Governor and Commander-in-Chief in and over His Majesty's Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations in New England * * * And Whereas Benjamin Norton, Mariner, and John Freebody, Merchant, both of Newport in the Colony aforesaid have equipped, furnished, and victualled a sloop called the Revenge of the burthen

-135-
Chapter II.

201. Continued.

of about 115 tons, whereof the said Benjamin Norton is Commander; who hath given bond with sufficient sureties. * * * Given under my Hand, and the Seal of said Colony, at Newport aforesaid the Second day of June, Anno Dm 1741," etc. (Allen, Mass. Priv. of the Rev., 10-12, stating that the "original letter, with accompanying documents, in Massachusetts Historical Society collections.")

202. Hart, Amer. Nation, VI, 261-264; Trumbull, Hist., Conn., II, 265-269; 500 men enlisted, partly in South Carolina, and partly "in Virginia." This "gave Oglethorpe 1,200 men & Indians." (Hildreth, Hist. U.S., II, 376-382); Dewhurst, Hist., St. Augustine, 89-97 gives an interesting account. Richard Cannon in his Historical Record of the [British] Marine Corps, 32, wrote Admiral Vernon in 1742 sent "500 men to the assistance of General Oglethorpe, in South Carolina, and to repel the menaces of the Spaniards against the infant colony of Georgia." On p. 50 Cannon wrote: "The Corps which had been formed in 1737 by Colonel James Oglethorpe for service in Georgia and South Carolina, was disbanded in 1749. It had not been ranked in the number of regiments of infantry in the Official Records of the Army, although in some publications of that period it was numbered the Forty-second regiment, according to its seniority and the date of its formation." See also Gillespie, Royal Marine Corps, 66.

203. Hart, Amer. Nation, VI, 261-264; Trumbull, Hist., Conn., II, 265-269; William Dandridge of Virginia commanded the South Sea in Oglethorpe's attack on St. Augustine. (Tyler, Encyc. of Biog., I, 154-155); See also Cohen, Notes of Florida, 17.

204. Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 12, 136,145. On June 4, 1744 the Governor of Rhode Island publicly read at Newport His Majesty's declaration of war against the French. (Chapin's R.I. Priv. in King George's War, 10-11).

205. MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg, 5-7; See also Gordon, Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 110; See Cooper, Hist. Navy, I, 41-45 gives a fine account of this.
Chapter II.  

206. MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg, 5-7; Minot, Hist. Prov. Mass. Bay, p. 75; 500 from Conn.; and 300 from R.I., who arrived after surrender and ten provincial vessels of Connecticut and Rhode Island; Barry, Hist. Mass., 141-147, wrote enlisted strength was Mass. 3,250; Conn. 516; N.H., 304; R.I., 300 (arrived after surrender), and colonial naval force was three frigates of 20 guns each, a snow of 16 guns, a brigantine of 12 guns, and five sloops, all provided by Mass., Conn., and R.I., one armed sloop each and a small vessel from N.H.; Kingsford, Hist. Canada, III, 313, states Mass. had supplied 3,170 of total 4,070; Huidekoper, Sieges Louisburg, states strength as Mass., 3,300; Conn., 516, N.H., 454 and R.I., 150, arrived after surrender; Drake, Taking of Louisburg, 66-70, states that "Pepperel said that one-third of the whole force came from Maine."; Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist. Amer., V, 410-411, shows Mass., 3,250, Conn., 500, N.H., 300; R.I., 300; Hart, Amer. Nation 1-17, shows Mass., 3,300, Conn., 516, N.H., 454, R.I., 150. Rhode Island resolved to "raise a regiment of 150 men, exclusive of officers, and that the Colony sloop Tartar be fitted out with a compliment of 90 men, exclusive of officers." (Peterson, Hist. of R.I., and Newport, p. 95).


209. Hildekoper, Sieges, Louisburg; 500 British Marines were present. (Gillespie, Royal Marine Corps, 77).


211. Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist. Amer., V, 410-411; MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg, 5-7; "The troops were under the command of Brigadier-General William Pepperel, a native of Picocatway, and Colonel of American militia." (Richard Cannon, Hist. Rec., British.
211. Continued.
Marine Corps, 36); "Mighty Louisburg, today Cape Breton, Nova Scotia." Preacher Whitefield gave Pepperell a motto for the Expedition - "Nil Desperandum Christo Duce." (Hammond's Quaint Historic Forts of America, pp. 2,5).

212. Drake, Taking of Louisburg, 1745, 60-70.

213. MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg, 5-7; id., 15-16 shows there were 16 armed vessels and 30 transports, 240 guns, in the Provincial Fleet.

214. MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg, 15-16; in Royal United Service Institution, Journal, 1783, 51, Major Knolly states that "5,000 American volunteers, reinforced by 1,000 Marines" under Pepperell "convoied by Commodore Warren," captured Louisburg; See also Channing, Hist. U.S., II, 546-548, which discounts American valor and discipline; A large French brig was captured on May 19, 1745, and the frigate Renommee was driven back to France by the American cruisers. (MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg, 5-7);
"After the 20-gun ship Shirley (Captain Rouse) had completed her work in the Louisburg Expedition in May, 1745 she separated from her consorts and captured eight French vessels." (Maclay, Hist. Amer. Priv. 39); for an illustration of "Capture Of Louisburg," see Catalogue, MacPherson Collection (Naval Section), A. G. H. MacPherson, 21. "By indefatigable labor the British Marines, and the American provincials, succeeded in effecting an entrance into the harbor." (Richard Cannon's Hist. Rec. British Marine Corps, 36).

215. Barry, Hist. Mass., 153; See also Drake, Taking of Louisburg, 130-131; The MacPherson Collection (Naval Section), p. 21; "These bold and successful adventurers astonished, not only Europe, but America herself; for brave, hardy, enterprising and valiant as they had proved themselves to have been, in their wars with the French and Indians, they had yet to learn that their strength could be carried abroad successfully, in distant naval enterprises." At the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748, Louisburg was restored. (Cannon's Hist. Rec. British Marine Corps, 37; Gen. View, Rise, Progress, and Brilliant Achievements,
Continued.

Amer. Navy, 13-17); In these operations, in the Cartagena Expedition of 1741, and in the defense of Nova Scotia; New England lost three or four thousand of her young men. (Trumbull, Hist., Conn., II, 294).

Maclay, Hist. Amer. Priv., 39-42; "A Boston ship belonging to Josiah Quincy, had by exposing hats and coats on handspike above her rail, allured a heavier Spanish ship into a surrender." (Winsor, Narr, & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 143); For "New York Colonial Privateers" by Thomas A. Janvier mentioning privateers Prince Charles, Snow Dragon, Greyhound, Grand Diable, and William, see Harpers, May, 1845, p. 333; about 1745 there were the New York privateers Prince Charles, Snow Dragon, Greyhound, Grand Diable and William. (Harpers); "Massachusetts seamen took a leading part in the Louisburg Expedition of 1745." (Allen, Mass. Priv. in the Rev., I?).


Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 132, quoting Gomer Williams, Liverpool Privateer and Liverpool Slave Trade.


Esek Hopkins Let. Bk., Intro. by Alverda S. Beck, 8, citing Notary Public, V, St. Arch. of R.I.; Sheffield in his "Privateers" says that the privateer Wentworth sailed in 1741 under Capt. Esek Hopkins (Chapin's R.I. Privateers in King George's War, 207).


Hopkins Papers (Photographs), pp. 177-179 in Navy Library; Field, State of Rhode Island & Providence Plantations, II, 422, cited by Paullin, Navy, Amer. Rev., 53; Moses Brown of Providence on February 23,
223. Continued.
1757 wrote that "Captain Esek Hopkins has taken and sent in here a snow of about 150 tons," etc. (Field, Esek Hopkins, 11-12). Esek Hopkins who, in 1775, became the first Commander-in-Chief of the American Fleet Commanded a privateer in the year 1757. At New London in November of 1757 there was a sale of "sundry Prize Goods sold at Vendue, taken New London by Captain Esek Hopkins Condemned in the court November, 1757, of Vice Admiralty of Connecticut." He was given credit for 184 pounds, 2 shillings and 7 pence on October 2, 1758.

224. Peterson, Hist., R.I. and Newport, 94-95; Page 67 of Mr. Peterson's book carries information concerning a disastrous explosion that occurred on September 17, 1744 at Newport aboard two privateers at the wharf of Colonel Malbern (Malborn), causing the deaths of William Coddington, Mr. Grant, John Gidley and others and injuring many.

225. Harper's, XC, Feb. 1895, 341; For Castor and Pollux see Chapin's R.I. Privateers in King George's War, 8-9.


229. Hart, Amer. Nation, VII, 123; Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist. Amer. V, 8; "Amon: the many reductions which took place during 1743 consequent on the General Peace, the Ten rofiments of (British) Marines were
229. Continued.

Dissolved in November of that year the officers of which were placed on half-pay." (Cannon, Hist. Rec. British Marine Corps, 46).

230. Channing, Hist. U.S., II, 569; "a conference of the colonies was called at Albany in 1754, which had been commanded through the Governor of New York by the Board of Trade. Boston rejected the Albany Plan and on December 14, 1754, the Legislative rejected it." (Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 150, 205).

"Shirley had not attended the Congress. He had left Boston in June, 1754, on the province frigate Massachusetts, with the forces under John Winslow to build a fort on the Kennebec." (Id., 151).

231. D.A.R. Mag.; "Seventeen hundred and 55, Georgius Secundus was then alive, - Snuffy old drone from the German hive, That was the year when Lisbon-Town Sow the earth open & gulp her down, And Braddock's Army was down so brown Left without a scalp to its crown." (The Deacon's Masterpiece; or The Wonderful One-Hoss Shay, by Oliver Wendell Holmes).

232. Wilstach, Potomac Landings, 324-325; the Marine Corps Expeditionary Forces traversed part of the same route covered by Braddock when in 1922 they conducted maneuvers at Gettysburg and 1924 in their maneuvers at Antietam; By the middle of the 18th century horse racing "developed many jockey clubs, not least famous among them being the jockey clubs of Federicksburg, Dumfries and Alexandria, where the then Colonel George Washington was a frequent visitor." (Wilstach's Tidewater Virginia, 98). Duelling in Colonial Virginia was rare. "In 1765 John Scott, the 18-year-old son of the rector of Quantico Church" sent a challenge to John Baylis. Scott's second tried to patch quarrel up but ended by killing Baylis. (Mary Newton Stanard, Colonial Virginia, etc. p. 159). "In the highlands behind Quantico is a charming old brick colonial derelict called Belle Ayr, home of the Ewells. One of the daughters of this family was married to Dr. James Craik, General Washington's life-long friend & physician, and another daughter was married" to "Parson" Weems, the author of the Cherry Tree Story. (Wilstach's Tidewater Virginia).
Chapter II.  

233. "The joke took, to the no small amusement of the British Corps. Brother Jonathan exclaimed it was nation fine, and in a few days nothing was heard in the provincial camp but the air of Yankee Doodle." (quotation from Albany Statesman, edited by N. H. Carter, in John Philip Sousa's National, Patriotic and Typical Airs, 19); Harpers Encyc. U.S. Hist., X, 471-472; Watson, Annals and Occur., N.Y. City and State, in Olden Time, 342-343.

234. 10,000 of the seamen in the British Navy in 1756 were of Amer. birth. From the year 1754 to 1762 there was raised by Massachusetts 35,000 men; and for three years successively 7,000 men each year. (Walsh, in his Appeal, 131, quoted in Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 154); Neff, Army and Navy of America, 166-167; "American privateers were active during the Seven Years' War." (Allen. Mass. Priv. in the Rev., 12).

235. Official Records of Robert Dinwiddie, II, 448-449, 501-502, 519-520, 540-541, 578; See standard works for "Royal American Regiment"; "The scarlet jackets of the 'Royal American" (Cooper, Last of Mohicans, Chap. XVIII); For material resources, See Colonial Background Amer., Rev., 82-83; 62d or "Royal American Regiment of Foot" raised in 1755, but number changed in 1756 or 1757 to 60th; motto, given to it by Wolfe at Quebec was "Bold and Swift;" now known as "The King's Royal Rifle Corps, 60th Foot" (Wallace, Reg. Chron., Ch. I); Journ. Soc. Army Hist. Res., II, 108; Hutton, Henry Bouquet, 39; Fortesque, Hist., Br. Army, II, 333, 578; Parkmen, Montcalm and Wolfe, II, 93, 139; R.U.S.I., LVII, July-Dec. 1913, 1192; File AG 332.2 (11-24-24) Misc. -D, Amer. War Dept. Off. Adjt. Gen., Nov. 25, 1924.


238. Huidekoper, Sieges, Louisburg; See also MacDonald, Last Siege Louisburg.


240. Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 136-137.

242. Kingsford, Hist., Canada, IV, 341-347; Trumbull, Hist., Conn., II, 400-402, wrote that Amherst built a "sloop of 16 guns and a radeu, of 84 feet in length to carry 36 4-pounders"; Channing, Hist., U.S., II, 584-585, states Amherst "was obliged to build boats to transport his troops and to combat a fleet of French vessels. By the time this was accomplished the season was too far advanced to permit of further pursuit. Amherst's failure left Wolfe to struggle alone against nearly the whole remaining force of New France"; Nav. Inst. Proc. June, 1932, 862.

243. "In the Campaign of the next year (1759) Mass. and Conn. put at least 1/6 of all their males able to bear arms into the field." (Winsor, Narr. & Crit. Hist., Amer., V, 154; See also Hutchinson, Hist. Mass. Bay, III).

244. Hart, Amer. Nation, VIII, 261-263.


248. Peterson, Hist., R.I., and Newport, 94-95.

249. For an account of an American officer in the "Expedition against the Spanish in Cuba," see Journal Amer. Hist. III, 1st Quarter, 1903, 113-114 – The Article is headed "Log of an American Marine in 1762, on a British Fighting Ship. Original Journal of Lieutenant William Starr, narrating his adventures with His Majesty's Fleet in the Expedition against the Spanish in Cuba Bombarding Ancient Havana from a man-of-war before America was a Nation. Life of
249. Continued.

the Soldier at Sea." Lieutenant William Starr re-
turned to his family on November 30, 1762, holding
the rank of First Lieutenant in the Sixth Company
of the First Connecticut Regiment, which was command-
ed by General Israel Putnam. His diary mentions
embarking on Amherst May 19, 1762 and then on board
"transport ship Swallow" on 27 at New York; of the
fleet, including Intriped, Chesterfield and trans-
ports sailing; with 3,000 troops, June 11, 1762; of
"part of Ye N.Y.Regt" being captured by French ships;
"Shooting at Mark on Nut Island at New York;" "Cape
Sanana, on ye N.E. part of Hispaniola"; Cape Nicolos
on the N." part of Hispaniola; "Bite of Leogan."
of "Connecticut troops" and "Provincial" troops; and
of helping to capture "St. Deaga" (Santiago), Cuba in
August, 1762. Lieut. Starr was lost at sea some time
during the years 1763-1764.

following; "Privateering and Piracy, 531-535. See
Hough, Reports of Cases in the Vice Admiralty of
the Province of New York. In Emenos, Statistical
History of the U.S. Navy, 134-125, is a list, doubt-
less incomplete of colonial privateers."


252. Lamb, Journal During Late Amer. War, 6-7; The colonies
had taken a splendid part in these 8 years of war as
often as pecuniary or military (naval) aid had been
required, they had been generally given. "Very power-
ful assistance was given." (Grinshaw, Hist. U.S., 83-
89); See also Morrison, The Amer. Rev., xi-xii; Barry,
Hist. Mass., 164-165 cites Franklin's Wks and Writings
of John Adams, 6; "It was on the banks of the Missis-
ippi, that uncontrolled impulses first unfurled the
flag of a Republic." When the French heard of cession
of their country, "an Assembly sprang into being;"
and they entreated France not to sever them from her.
(Bancroft, Hist., U.S. VI, 217). At the peace of
1763 the fame of England was exalted throughout Eu-
rope above that of all other nations. She had tri-
umphed over those whom she called her hereditary en-
emies, and retained half a continent as the monument
of her victories. Her American dominions stretched
without dispute from the Atlantic to the Mississippi,
252. Continued.
From the Gulf of Mexico to Hudson's Bay; and in her older possessions that dominion was rooted as firmly in the affections of the colonists as in their institutions and laws. The ambition of British statesmen might well be inflamed with the desire of connecting the mother country and her transatlantic empire by indissoluble bonds of mutual interest and common liberties. (George Bancroft, Hist. U.S. V, 78).


254. Maclay, Hist., Amer. Privateers, 43-44.


256. Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 233; See also Everett, First Battles of Rev., 11-13; Neff, Army and Navy of America, 197.


258. See New York Times, June 23, 1931 reporting a celebration of these Resolves at Stratford Hall, Westmoreland Hall, Va.

259. Barry, Hist., Mass., 351-353; Wildman, Founders of America, 53-55; Field, Esek Hopkins, 31; See also Hildreth, Hist., U.S., II, 544; See letter of Commodore Hood, in Halifax, October 15, 1763, to George Grenville, pub. in "George III and the American Revolution," Mumby, 217-221, regarding this affair and his drastic criticism of the Governor as well as his low opinion of the American "lower class" and "demagogue." "In the northern colonies of America, many of their principal merchants were engaged in clandestine trade" (Stedman, Hist., Amer. War, I, 13); "finally the collector's boat was carried in triumph, and burnt before the door of the owner of the sloop." (Stedman, Hist. Amer. War, I, 63); "The case was defended by John Adams on the ground that a law had been broken which the colony had no share in the making. It was the beginning of the end - an end that was contested at Concord and Lexington, and led to an uprising of the Colonies, equally oppressed by offensive and arbitrary acts of the mother country, in which they were not per-
259. Continued.mitted to have a voice or representation." (Wildman, Founders of America, 53-55).


261. Maclay, Hist., Amer. Priv., 44; See Paine, Joshua Barney, 8-9, quoting Boston Gazette and Country Journal, September 25, 1769, for another incident. "The old patriots" claim "that the first act of popular resistance to English oppression that occurred in the country" was the destruction of the Liberty in Newport Harbor, in 1769. (Tuckerman, Silas Talbot, 39); "The first overt act in the great drama which separated the Colonies from Great Britain and which finally resulted in the American independence" was the destruction of the Liberty at Newport in 1769. (Peterson, Hist. of R.I. and Newport, 199-200).

262. Morrison, Amer. Revolution, 1764-1783, xxxii.

263. Leake, Memoir, Gen. John Lamb, 53-57; See also "New York, Old and New," by Rufus Rockwell Wilson, I, 213-233; "It would be matter for surprise, however, were the average New Yorker, born and bred, to discover acquaintance with the New York Tea Party, which, without the cover of the night or Indian disguise, sent one of the laden tea-ships out of our harbor back to England, and upset the cargo of another into the waters of the bay; or had he so much as heard of the Battle of Golden Hill, where in the first blood of the Revolution was spilt, two months earlier than the Boston Massacre, and more than five years before the Lexington affair." (Charles H. Haswell, Reminiscences of an Octogenarian, 1-2); In Meeser's Despatches of Shuldham, p. 109 we read that on February 5, 1776 the Rebels "removed all the guns up on the lower Batteries up to what is called the Liberty Pole near the Barrack" in New York.


265. Lamb, Journal, During Late Amer. War, 15; Hutchinson, Hist., Mass. Bay, III, 271-272; See also Yudock, "The
Chapter II. 

265. Continued.

19th of April, 1775," 14-15; Barry, Hist., Mass., 414-416; Everett, First Battles, Rev., 15; Carrington, Battles, Amer. Rev., 31; Becker, The Eve of the Rev. II, 128-129; W.D. Cooper's Hist. of North America (1814); Stedman, Hist., Amer. War, I, 76-77; The Boston Herald, March 7, 1936 carried an article "Boston Massacre took place 158 years ago," and published an illustration from an Old Print. See BALLOU's Pictorial, February 3, 1855, 72, for Illustration.

266. Field, Esek Hopkins, 31; See Washington Star, April 9, 1925 for an illustration of this "first armed uprising," against "the despotic Governor Tryon. - In the Battle of Alamance, the Colonists were defeated and Tryon hanged seven patriots as rebels."

267. Arnold in his Hist. of R.I.; I, 351, calls this the real "Lexington of the Seas;" Spear in his Hist., Our Navy, I, 2, calls this the "Saltwater Lexington and the "First Fight afloat."


Chapter II.

270. Harper's, LXIII, 240-241. At Portsmouth, New Hampshire, on Wednesday, the fourteenth of December (1770), just after letters were received from Boston, members of the town committee, with other Sons of Liberty, preceded by a drum and fife, paraded the streets till their number grew to four hundred, when they made their way in scows and "fondolas" to the fort at the entrance of the harbor, overpowered the few invalids who formed its garrison and carried off upwards of one hundred barrels of powder, that belonged to the province. The next day, without waiting for a large body on the road from Exeter, John Sullivan, who had been a member of the Continental Congress, led a party to dismantle the fort completely; and they brought away all the small arms, a quantity of shot, and sixteen light pieces of artillery. (George Bancroft, Hist. of U.S., VII, 183-184). For insurrection in Rhode Island and in New Hampshire late in 1774 see Stedman, Hist. Amer. War., I, 111-112.

271. Gettemy, True Story of Paul Revere, 64-68; See also Stedman, Hist. Amer. War., I, 111-112.

272. Jones, Hist., N.Y. During Rev. War, I, 475-476; See also Colonial Background of Amer. Rev., 63; Stedman, Hist. Amer. War., I, 102; Scharf and Wescott, Hist., Phila., I, 291; For an illustration of this event and "Carpenter's Hall" see Wash. Star, April 13, 1925.

273. Lamb's Hist. New York City, II, 23; Bradford's Pennsylvania Journal continued the device of the divided snake and the motto Unite or Die, from 1774 to October 1775. (Greenwood's John Manley, 171); "The emblem of the rattlesnake was a colonial thought, often employed before the Revolution, to warn the mother-country that the colonies would resist if the attempt were made to impose on them. It was figuratively used in Franklin's Pennsylvania Gazette as early as 1751; in 1754 the figure of the severed snake and the motto, Unite or die, were used to insist upon the necessity of colonial union against the French and Indians, and in 1775 this snake was made the head of the Pennsylvania Journal, and the idea of the resemblance between the colonies and the rattlesnake was often brought up in the newspapers. Paul Jones' flag may have been Franklin's own contrivance." (Scharf
and Wescott, Hist., Phila., I, 302-303.) "The rattlesnake was a favorite device with the colonists, and its origin as an American emblem deserves investigation as a curious feature in our national history. The choice of this reptile as a representative of the colonies had attained a firm position in the regard of the colonists long before difficulties with Great Britain were anticipated. As early as 1751, an account of the trial of Samuel Sanders, an English transported convict, for the murder of Simon Gerty, occasioned the following reflections, which were published in Franklin's paper, the Pennsylvania Gazette regarding the rattlesnake, etc.: "This idea of rendering the rattlesnake a means of retribution for the wrongs of America could scarcely have been forgotten, and received a new value three years afterwards, when, to stimulate the colonies to a concert of measures against the Indians, the device of a snake cut into eight parts, representing the colonies then engaged in the war against the French and Indians, was published at the head of the Gazette, with the motto, Join or die. This device was adopted by other newspapers in the colonies, and in 1775 it was placed at the head of the Pennsylvania Journal, the head representing New England, and the other disjointed portions being marked with the initials, N.Y., M.I., P., M., V., N.C., S.C., and G. The motto then was Unite or die. These matters kept the rattlesnake in the memory of the provincials, and may have led to its early adoption." John Holt, who edited the New York Journal, was one of the most fearless of printers; having in 1774 discarded the arms of the king as an ornamental heading for his paper, and substituted the device of a snake cut into parts, with Unite or die for a motto, he about this time issued the snake joined and coiled, with the tail in its mouth, forming a double ring; within the coil was a pillar standing on Magna Carta, surmounted with the cap of Liberty. (Mrs. Martha J. Lamb, Hist. of City of N.Y., II, 33). Bradford's Pennsylvania Journal continued the device of the divided snake and the motto Unite or die! from July, 1774, to October, 1775. (Greenwood's Captain John Manley, 171). Arousing the American Colonies to concerted measures against the French and Indians, Franklin's Pennsylvania Gazette of May 3, 1754, appeared.
Chapter II. -150- Volume One

273. Continued.

With the device of a snake divided into eight pieces
and the motto, Join or die! The pieces were labeled
New England, New York, New Jersey, Maryland, Virginia,
North Carolina, and South Carolina, and the de-
vice, with an account of some late depredations by
the enemy, was repeated at the time in several other
Colonial papers. After the passage of the Stamp Act
in 1765, a single half-sheet, printed in September
at Burlington or Woodbridge, New Jersey, and entitled the
Constitutional Courant, appeared in the streets of
New York. It had practically the same device of a
snake facing to the right and divided into eight parts,
the head, with its darting tongue, thrown well up,
and a label floating from its jaws, with the words,
Unite, all, and conquer; while below it was the motto,
Join or die! (Greenwood's Captain John Manley, 170).

274. Century Dict. and Cyc., IX, 670. On May 20, 1906,
the Marine Band, and a company of Marines, proceeded
to Charlotte, North Carolina, for the purpose of participat-
in the celebration of the anniversary of the Mecklen-
berg Declaration of Independence, May 21 to 23, 1906.
A model camp was established and the detachment re-
mained encamped there from May 20 to 24, 1906 when it
returned to its station at the Marine Barracks, Washing-
ton, D.C. "The services rendered were eminently satis-
factory to the authorities, and were the subject
of a letter of thanks and commendation from the mayor

275. For example see Nav. Inst. Proc., September, 1917
that describes service of Nicholas Piddle.

276. "The vessels which were first equipped by the Ameri-
can colonists during the French War were privateers.
Afterwards, several of the Colonies maintained pub-
lic armed ships, and, even before the Revolution, the
organization of their officers and crews were suffici-
ently well developed to enable the officers of the brig
Boston, in 1772, to wear a uniform, the details of which
were minutely prescribed, even to the wig with two
curls." The uniform was the same for all grades and
it was a scarlet coat and a white waistcoat decorated
with gold lace at the button holes, snowy nether gar-
ments, and a laced cocked hat. After the Revolu-
tion the uniform was changed to green - that is the color
of the coat. (Benjamin, Naval Academy, 16-17); Towards
Continued.

the close of the year 1774, there were one hundred and fifty sail of vessels, in the whaling service, belonging to the Island of Nantucket, and the greater part of them at sea. (Macy, Hist., Nantucket, 79, 30, 31; See also Douglas—Lithgow, Hist. Nantucket, 366-367); "At the commencement of the Revolution, the colony of Massachusetts employed more than 15,000 tons, and more than 4,000 seamen," in the whale fishery. (Gen. View, Rise, Prov. Brill. Achieve. Amer. Navy, 13-17); "The soldiers of 1775-1781 were not deficient in military skill and ready appliance of the known engineer and principles of war." (Carrington, Battles, Amer. Rev., 3); The very nature and situation of the settlements of American colonists developed "the seafaring habit and training; of the early colonists." (Francis J. Reynolds, "U.S. Navy", 9); From the very start American privateers had swarmed over the seas, and this implied the existence, at the outbreak of the Revolution, of an element of naval preparedness in the American Colonies, which has not been appreciated. The fact was, there were no harder and more intelligent seamen in the world than the Americans of 1775. Their ships had been on all the oceans navigated in those days, and American designers were already noted for the speed and staunchness of their ships. American sailors had also learned the lesson of experience in fighting on the seas, which made them especially well equipped for warfare against the commerce of a superior naval power. Just as, on land, the experience of the "French Wars" was of great value to American officers, from Washington down through all grades; so, on the sea, the experience of naval warfare in these same "French Wars" was for American seamen a preparation for their successful raids upon British commerce. (Nav. Inst., Proc., December, 1926, p. 2847). In the merchant service there were 15,000 seamen and 198,000 tons of shipping; (Humphrey's Works, 49, cited in Clark, Nav. Hist., I, 13-14); Contrasted to this true viewpoint is T. O'Connor who, in 1815, wrote in his Hist. War of 1812, 33; "With a stone and a sling; only, America commenced the War of Independence. Without arms, without clothing, without money, and without credit, we took the field. * * *" Captain Charles Biddle was one of the many examples of American seamen that formed part of "American Naval preparation for war." In 1764 served as second
Chapter II.

276. Continued.

mate on an American snow, Captain John Luckart Nesmith, that cruised to the Bay of Honduras for logwood. Touching "at the Mosquito Shore" they hired an Indian as a striker "to supply the crew with fish, turtle and maniti or pacon, which is excellent eating." While here they had two clashes with "a brig belonging to New York." Captain Biddle described one of the many duels that occurred at the Bay of Honduras. It occurred in 1769 between "the celebrated Benedict Arnold" and "one of the Bay men. It was said that Arnold frightened his antagonist, who agreed that he should fix the distance, by making five yards." Biddle sailed from the Delaware Capes on December 10, 1769 in command of a ship and in due time arrived at Port-au-Prince, Haiti. Sailed from there February 2, 1770 and landed at Cape Nicola Mole on the 4th. Biddle anchored at Petit Guave, Haiti, in command of the Charming Nancy on December 16, 1772. He carried "an officer of the (Italian) Army" to Port-au-Prince. While there a French frigate took his ship but matters were fixed and he sailed on March 23, 1773. He was back at Port-au-Prince in the Charming Nancy in May 1773. Biddle refused the order of a French frigate to haul down his pennant. Other trouble with the French occurred. Biddle made another cruise on the same ship to Haiti, sailing from there in February, 1774. Another cruise to Haiti was made in a brig "leaky as a basket," and another in a large schooner to Cape Francois. Another voyage to Haiti in the brig Swift which was sold there. Purchased the brig Greyhound and returned to Haiti arriving at the hole, April 4, 1775, having on board Captain Stephen Decatur." (Auto. of Charles Biddle, 15-71).


Chapter II. -153- Volume One

280. See Lucas, Hist. Canada, 1763-1812, 253; Hart, Amer. Nation, IX, 5; "The Revolution was effected before the war commenced. The Revolution was in the minds and hearts of the people." (Moore, Annals, Amer. Rev., 217-223); See also Barnes, Short. Amer. Hist., Part 2, 3; O'Connor, Hist., War of 1812, 7; address of Secretary of Navy H. A. Herbert, August 10, 1896 in gov. printed pamphlet.

281. M. C. Gaz., June, 1924, 97; On both land and at sea the American revolution began with citizens "rising en masse - the movement of the people in their original and elementary capacity, resisting oppression, and annoying the oppressor by any means that were within their reach whenever an opportunity for action presented itself." (Frost, Book, Navy, II, 15-17); See also Morse, Annals, Amer. Rev. 217-223, 246, 247; Morrison, Amer. Rev. xi-xii.
INDEX FOR CHAPTER II
Volume I.

Acadia (Acadie).................. 11, 15, 20, 22, 27, 74, 106, 103
Acadia, ceded to England.................. 27
Acting Commandant, U.S. Marine Corps........ 39, 122, 134
Adam and Eve, Berkeley's vessel in Bacon's Rebellion..... 13
Adams, John.................. 145
Adjutant and Inspector, U.S. Marine Corps.. 122
Adjutant General.................. 53, 54
Admiral.................. 26, 27, 30
"Admiral" Christopher Columbus.................. 5, 7, 97
Advanced base, See also Base.................. 107
Adventures - "Gentlemen Adventurers", See also........ 10, 12, 138, 139
Africa.................. 4, 81
Aix-la-Chapelle, Peace of.................. 73, 133
Alamance, Battle of.................. 147
Albany, New York.................. 23, 73, 75, 141
"Albany Plan".................. 141
Albert, one of Jean Ribault's Lieutenants.................. 9, 33
Alexandria, Virginia.................. 74, 104, 141
Allen, Joseph.................. 46, 53
American, British war vessel.................. 67, 73
American, discovered.................. 1, 2, 3, 4, 33, 94, 97
American-born British seamen.................. 142
American Colonial Marines.................. 92
American Indians.................. 5, 9, 10, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 23, 74, 75, 90, 91, 93, 96, 101, 103, 104, 106, 110, 136, 138, 143
American Indians - Marine character of.................. 9, 93
American Marines.................. 11, 24
American Marine - "Log of an American Marine".................. 143
American Marines of Ancient America.................. 93
American Marines of the American Revolution.................. 93
American Marines of 1316.................. 98
American National March - Yankee Doodle.................. 75
American principles.................. 81
"American Regiment" - Gooch's Marines, See also........ 44, 51
American Revolution.................. 1, 71, 79, 80, 93, 98, 102, 116, 121-122, 131, 135, 146, 148, 150, 151, 153
"American soldiers".................. 48, 49
"American Soldiers of the Sea" on the Colonial war vessels.................. 23
"American troops".................. 25
Amherst, General ........................................... 70, 77, 79, 143
Amsterdam, Holland ........................................ 109
"Ancestral knot" ............................................... 94
Anchor chain .................................................. 101
Ancient American civilization ................................ 3
Ancient Britons ................................................ 97
Ancient Maritimes of America ................................ 2, 93
Ancient navies ................................................ 92
Andros, Governor .............................................. 20
Ann, Cape ...................................................... 114
Annapolis, Maryland ........................................... 15, 103, 115, 116, 121, 122
Annapolis, Maryland Marine Barracks ..................... 133
Annapolis, (Port Royal) See also Port Royal. 25, 112, 113
Annapolis Royal ................................................ 113
Anne, Queen ................................................... 111, 112
Anstis - Pirate ................................................ 114
Antietam - Maneuvers of U.S. Marine Corps in 1924 .... 114
Aquia Creek .................................................... 104, 105
Aquia Crucifix ................................................ 105
Aquia Village, Virginia ...................................... 104, 105
Argall, Samuel, Captain ...................................... 11, 15, 106, 107
Armada - "Colonial Armada" ................................ 69
Arms, See also Firearms; Firelocks ......................... 32, 92, 143
Armstrong, Chief Engineer ................................. 52
Army, United States ........................................... 100
Arnold, Benedict - fights a duel in Honduras .......... 153
Arrows .................................................................. 95, 103, 104
Artillery ........................................................... 47, 52, 56, 68, 98, 148
Artillery - Chief of ............................................ 58
"Artillery preparation" ........................................ 47, 52, 56
Ashmore, William .............................................. 14
"Athletic Colors" of U.S. Marine Corps .................... 110
Avary - Pirate ................................................... 114
Aztecs ............................................................. 13
Bacon, Nathaniel ............................................... 17, 13, 19
Bacon's Rebellion .............................................. 17, 13, 19, 110
Bahama Channel, Old ........................................ 64
Ballot .................................................................. 86, 92
Baltimore, Lord. See Lord Baltimore ....................... 13
Baltimore, Lady. See Lady Baltimore ....................... 105
Band - Marine Band ............................................ 150
Banquette .......................................................... 100
Barbadoes ........................................................ 42, 109
Barbary ............................................................. 15
Barge .................................................................. 10
Baron Renfrew, a raft-ship ................................... 140
Barradera Fascine Battery
Barradera peninsula
Bases
Base - "Guantanamo was a British base of operations"
in 1741
Battery de Chamba
"Battle of Alamance"
Battle of Bladensburg
Battle of Golden Hill
Battle of Lake Champlain
Batteaux
Baylis, John
Bay of Gaspee
Bay of Honduras
Bayonets
Beal, John, Captain of the Essex
Bedford, galley
Beer - "small beer"
Belle Ayr, in the highlands behind Quantico
Bellson, John
Berkeley, Randolph Carter, Brigadier General, U.S.N.C.
Berkeley, Sir William
Berkley, Massachusetts
Bermuda
Bethel, letter of marque of Boston
Bjarne or Bjarni
Biddle, Charles, Captain
Biddle, Nicholas
Bilbao, Spain
Bishop, Captain
Bite of Legane
"Bivouacked"
Bjarni
Black Republic
Blair, James, The Reverend
Blakeney, William, Colonel and Adjutant General
Bland, Colonel
"Blank Commissions"
Blessing of the Bay of Governor Winthrop - launched
at Medford, Massachusetts
Block Island
Block, Schipper Adrian
Blockade
"Boarded"
Board of Trade
Boca Chica Castle. See also Boca Chicas Forts
Chapter II.

Boca Chica Forts. See also Boca Chica Castle... 47, 117
Bodega Bay.......................... 98
Bolton, H.E., Professor of the University of
    California.......................... 99, 103
Bomb ketch................................ 24
Bombarding by Fleet.......................... 52
Bombarding Santo Domingo City.................. 9
Bonaco Island, Bay of Honduras (Bonac or Guanaja Is.) 134
Bones of Christopher Columbus...................... 6
Bonfires........................................ 40
Boom........................................ 47
Booty.......................................... 32
Boscawen, British war vessel..................... 78
Boscawen, Captain.......................... 43, 70
Boston, American Colonial brig.................... 150
Boston, British war vessel .................... 67
Boston, Massachusetts.. 14, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 67, 81, 82, 83, 85,
    86, 107, 109, 111, 112, 114, 139, 140, 141, 148
Boston Marine Barracks.......................... 123, 124
Boston Massacre of March 5, 1770............. 86, 146
Boston Packet, Colony warship.................. 68
Boston Tea Party................................ 88, 147
Boswell, Captain-Lieutenant...................... 59, 60
Bows and arrows.................................. 103, 104
Boycott of English goods.......................... 83
Braddock, General.......................... 74, 141
Bradish, Joseph - Pirate......................... 114
Bradstreet, proclaimed Governor............... 20
Brain, Ann Butler.......................... 116
Brain, Richard, of London, England........... 116
Brandy......................................... 57
"Bravely" did Gooch's Marines behave said Smollet...... 54
Brazil........................................ 123
Brent Family.................................. 104, 105
Brent's Village or Aquia Village............. 105
Brevet rank.................................. 72
Brewer, Captain................................ 96
British...................................... 102
British Marines................................ 120
    11, 17, 18, 19, 24, 26, 30, 31, 52, 76-77,
    92, 98, 110, 115, 126, 131, 136, 137, 138, 140
British Navy.................................. 123
Britons, Ancient.......................... 97
"Brother Jonathan"............................ 142
Browne, Captain.......................... 59
Brown, Moses.................................. 71, 139
Browns of Providence, Rhode Island............ 71
Brown University .................................................. 107
Buccaneers. See also Pirates .................................... 29
Buddhist ............................................................... 95
Bunker Hill .......................................................... 68, 88
Burchen, Nat, Captain ............................................. 21
Burgos, Tristan ..................................................... 139
Burial place of William Hebb ................................ 121, 122
Burlington, New Jersey ............................................ 150
Burning British boats .............................................. 31, 84–85, 87, 145
Bushbrow, Captain ................................................ 60

Caesar, Colony warship .......................................... 68
California .............................................................. 8, 122
Calvert, Calvert's Fleet, and Leonard Calvert 13–14, 108
Cambridge, Massachusetts ...................................... 15, 114
"Camlet" coats of Gooch's Marines ............................ 37, 118
Campbell, Lieutenant Colonel .................................... 59
Campechie Bay ....................................................... 109
Canada and Canadians ........................................... 11, 23, 73, 77
Cannon ................................................................. 89
Canoes - "large war canoes" of American Indians .......... 9
Canseau (Canso, Cape Breton Island) ....................... 67, 69
Canso, Cape Breton Island ...................................... 67, 69
Canvas trousers - of Gooch's Marines ....................... 37
Cap of Liberty ......................................................... 149
Cape Ann ............................................................... 71, 114
Cape Bacca ............................................................. 64
Cape Breton and Cape Breton Island ......................... 27, 69, 137, 138
Cape Cod .............................................................. 12, 13, 67, 107
Cape Corrientes ....................................................... 64
Cape Francois, Haiti ................................................. 64, 152
Cape Gracias a Dios, Nicaragua ............................... 6
Cape Nicola (Nicolas) ............................................... 6, 80, 144, 152
Cape Samana, Santo Domingo ................................... 80, 144
Cape Tiberon, Haiti ................................................ 45
Caribbean Sea ........................................................ 29
"Carleill's force" .................................................... 9
Caroline Fort ......................................................... 39
Carpenter's Hall .................................................... 148
Cartagena, South America 11, 29, 30, 39, 45, 46, 49, 50, 54, 55, 58, 60, 64, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 124, 125, 128, 131, 132, 139
Cartagena - Colonial estate on the St. Mary's River, Maryland ......................................................... 120, 121
Carthagena Creek ................................................... 121, 135
Castar and Pollux ................................................... 72, 140
Castine Bay ............................................................ 106
Castle Island

Castle of St. Lazar. See also St. Lazar.

Casualties of Goach's Marines.

Cat Island.

Cathcart, Lord.

Cathedral, at Santo Domingo City.

Catholic Church services.

Cattle, long-horned — driven on attackers.

Caulfield, Major.

 Cavendish, James, Lord.

Cayuga Creek.

"Cedar timber" ruins at Parris Island, S. C.

Celtic.

Central America.

"Chains of forts" — French.

Challenge for duel.

Chambra Battery.


Character — Distinctive Character of American Marines.

Charles brigantine of Daniel Powman.

"Charlesfort" (Charles Fort) See also Fort Charles.

Charles I, King.

Charles, King of England.

Charleston, South Carolina.

Charlotte, North Carolina.

Charming Nancy, of Captain Charles Biddle.

"Cherry Tree Story" of George Washington.

Chesapeake.

Chesterfield, British warship.

Chorley, Captain of Yemassee — a pirate ship.

Chichester, British warship.

Chicora (Indian name for Parris Island, S. C. area).

Chief Engineer Armstrong.

Chief of Artillery.

Chief of Naval Operations.

China and Chinese.

Church (an officer).

Church, The.

Circumnavigation of globe.

City Tavern, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

Civil Court overruled court-martial.

Civil War.

Claiborne (Cleburn or Clayborne), William.

"Clandestine trade".

Clark, Captain.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clifton, Captain</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate's effect on Gooch's Marines</td>
<td>34, 33, 43, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cond, J. Edwin</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coade, Edwin, Captain</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coats, Captain (Is this Coade?)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cock fights</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cockatrice, armed sloop of Claiborne</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cockran</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coddington, William</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee House, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cole, Eli Kelley, Brigadier General, U.S.M.C</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coligny</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colomb, Vice Admiral P.H.</td>
<td>42, 43, 55, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Colonel Commandant&quot; of Colonial Marines</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colonial American Marines</td>
<td>24, 32, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colonial fleet of Massachusetts</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Colonial force&quot;</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Colonial troops from Jamaica&quot;</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colonial Wars - &quot;Society of Colonial Wars&quot;- Marines eligible for</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colonial war vessels</td>
<td>11, 15, 16, 23, 34, 28, 39, 79, 113, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colorado, U.S. flagship</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Colors&quot; of the United States Marine Corps</td>
<td>19, 110, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbus, a raft-ship</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbus, Christopher</td>
<td>1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 95, 96, 97, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbus, Diego</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander-in-Chief of American Fleet</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Command of the sea&quot;</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commandant, Acting, U.S. Marine Corps</td>
<td>39, 122, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commandant of the United States Marine Corps</td>
<td>105, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissions - &quot;Blank Commissions&quot;</td>
<td>32, 37, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissions, for privateers. See also Privateers</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission of Alexander Spotswood</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Common&quot;, The</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communion plate</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conception, vessel of Magellan</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concord, New Hampshire</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concord, vessel of Gosnold</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confederacy - War with</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference of Colonies at Albany, New York</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congress, assembled in 1765</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecticut</td>
<td>12, 14, 15, 16, 22, 23, 24, 31, 35, 39, 67, 68, 75, 84, 109, 110, 113, 137, 143, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental Marines. See also Gooch's Marines</td>
<td>11, 20, 24, 92, 128, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuity of the Marines</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Chapter II.**

Convent of La Popa. ........................................... 51
Convoi duty. .................................................. 63,72
Cooper, James Fenimore ...................................... 13,14,15
Cooperation - Lack of between Army and Navy. ........ 58,61,131
Cornwallis, Lord .............................................. 116
Cotterell, Colonel. ............................................ 50
Court-martial .................................................. 57,131
Craik, James, Doctor .......................................... 141
Cranston, Captain .............................................. 72
Crown galley ................................................... 82
Crown Point .................................................... 77,78
Crucifix - Aquia Crucifix in Brent Cemetery .......... 105
Cuba ... 5,6,7,11,29,40,60,61,62,63,64,80,132,134,143,144
Cumberland Bay (Guantanamo Bay) See also Guantanamo 61,133

Curls .......................................................... 150
"Cut the throat of the Corps" .................................... 94
Cuttyhunk ....................................................... 107

Dale, Sir Thomas ............................................... 11,106
Dairyman, Captain ............................................. 116
Dandridge, Dorothea ........................................... 116
Dandridge, Elizabeth .......................................... 116
Dandridge, Mary ................................................. 116
Dandridge, Nathaniel West, Captain ....................... 116
Dandridge, William, Colonel ................................. 112,116,135,136
Davis, Howell - Pirate ........................................ 114
Davis, Jefferson ................................................ 117
Dawson, William ................................................ 14
Decatur, Captain Stephen - the first .................... 153
Declaration of Independence .................................. 109
Decoy ........................................................... 108
Defiance, British warship ..................................... 44
Definition of "A Marine" ....................................... 1,2,5,92
Delabarre, Edmund Burke, Professor of Brown University 107
De Laet .......................................................... 13
Deladie, Reynard ............................................... 104
Delancey - Pirate .............................................. 114
Delaware River and Delaware Capes ....................... 17,38,152
Demagogue ...................................................... 145
Dennis, John, Captain ......................................... 80
De Pointis ...................................................... 46
Deptford (Stulkley), British war vessel .................. 23
Deptford, galley ................................................ 83
"Desert of the Ocean" or Iceland ............................ 96
Designers of ships ............................................ 151
Chapter II.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De Soto, Hernando (Fernando)</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Devil Dog,&quot; nickname of Marines</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dighton Rock near Berkley, Massachusetts</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinwiddie, Robert, Governor</td>
<td>39, 117, 118, 125, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Direct action&quot;</td>
<td>17, 86, 87, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discipline</td>
<td>12, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovery of America. See America, Discovered</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Disguise&quot;</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinctive character of the Marines</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ditch</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dog — &quot;a dog before a soldier&quot;</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominica, Isle of</td>
<td>42, 43, 127, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominicans</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominican Republic</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsetshire, British transport</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dragon, Privateer</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drake's Bay</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drake, Sir Francis</td>
<td>8, 9, 46, 98, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Drudgery of the service&quot;</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drums and Drummers</td>
<td>9, 33, 43, 127, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duchambon, Governor</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Duck shot&quot;</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ducked&quot;</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke of Cumberland, British brigantine</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke of Newcastle</td>
<td>31, 32, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duelling</td>
<td>141, 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dumfries, Virginia. See also Quantico</td>
<td>10, 74, 105, 106, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Dunkirk of America&quot; — Louisburg</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunster, Major</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durham</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch. See also Holland; Netherlands; New Amsterdam; New Netherlands</td>
<td>12, 13, 16, 17, 106, 109, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duties of American Marines</td>
<td>1-2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysentery</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eager, Richard, Lieutenant</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earthquake at Lisbon, Portugal</td>
<td>74, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earthwork</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Hemisphere</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Shore of Virginia</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edgar, Flagship of Vice Admiral Walker</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptians</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elizabeth's Isle or Elizabeth Islands (Cuttyhunk)</td>
<td>12, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elleguava, 16 miles from Santiago de Cuba</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter II.

England — Claims to Oregon ........................................... 8
England, Ned — Pirate .................................................. 114
Ensigns (officer) .......................................................... 33
Eric the Red ............................................................... 14
Ericson, Lief (Eriksson, Leif) ...................................... 4, 95
Erie, Lake .................................................................. 109
Essex, British war vessel ............................................... 67
Essex County, Virginia .................................................. 117
Essex of Salem ............................................................. 21
European Squadron ..................................................... 123
Evon, Owen, Captain .................................................... 40, 117
Evans — Pirate .............................................................. 114
"Eve of sailing" ............................................................. 40
Ewells — home of — charming old brick colonial derelict called Belle Ayr in highlands behind Quantico, Virginia ......................................................... 141
Exeter, New Hampshire ................................................ 143
Expedition ................................................................. 1
Expeditions — "Maritime military expeditions" .............. 11
Expeditions against Port Royal (Annapolis) Acadia
See also Port Royal ...................................................... 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 112
Expedition against Quebec ............................................. 20
Expedition against the Spanish in Cuba ..................... 30, 30, 143
"Expeditions of a naval status" ..................................... 2
Expedition of British Marines to Virginia during Bacon's Rebellion .............................................. 19
Expedition of Columbus ............................................... 5
Expedition of Drake against Santo Domingo City ...... 8
"Expedition of Marines" ............................................... 8
Expedition of Marines on Morris and Folly Islands,
South Carolina during Civil War .......................... 123
Expedition — "Paraguay Expedition" ......................... 123
"Expeditions of the nature that the Marine Corps
would now organize" ................................................... 15
Expeditions — Overseas Expedition of American Co-
lonials .................................................................. 2, 93
Expeditions supporting the fleets ................................ 92
"Expeditionary Force of Marines" or Oversea Sol-
diers .......................................................................... 68, 77
"Expeditionary Forces" of U.S. Marine Corps, 1922 ...... 141
Expeditionary Ribbon, U.S. Marine Corps ................. 111
"Expeditionary service — First ................................. 24
Experiment, British warship ...................................... 44

Falls of the Potomac River ......................................... 105
Falmouth, British warship .......................................... 44
Falmouth, U.S. sloop of war .................................... 123
Chapter II. -164- Volume One

Falmouth, Virginia...........................................117
False lights ashore...........................................109
Farmer, Captain...............................................39, 60
Faroos, Islands...............................................3
"Fascine and pickets".......................................45
"Fascine battery", called Barradera........................47
"Fast", day of................................................26, 69
Faulkland, British man-of-war................................21
Fenwick, Mr., husband of Ann Hebb..........................121
Field, Cyril, Colonel of the British Royal Marines...
                                                                 42, 43, 54, 55, 58, 119, 127, 132
Fife. See also Drums and Drummers.........................148
Fighting men - "American fighting men afloat"............1, 2, 5, 11
"Fighting men of the Sea" ................................5, 93
"Fighting spirit".............................................12
Filipinos.......................................................3
Firearms. See also Arms......................................12
Firelocks. See also Arms....................................54
Fireships.......................................................43
"First American Marines"................................113, 122
"First armed uprising".....................................147
"First battle between Europeans in America"................11
"First blood of America shed by British soldiers"...........85
First Catholic Colonist of Virginia..........................105
First Commander-in-Chief of the American Fleet............140
First Continental Congress................................88-89
"First docked vessel" in America...........................12-13
"First European settlement in America" at La Navidad..6
First European settlement in United States.............100, 101
First "expeditionary" service................................24
"First Fight Afloat".........................................147
"First forcible resistance"................................182
First man-of-war constructed in America was the
Faulkland.......................................................21
"First Marine Corps of America". See also First
American Marines............................................122
First "mystery of the sea"...................................16
"First overt act" against Great Britain.....................31, 146
"First regular cruisers" of American colonists...........18
"First regular naval combat"................................16
First Revolution was "defense against the French"...........91
First ship regularly built in America......................103
Fisheries.....................................................22, 67, 89
"Fishing fleets"...............................................28
"Fish nor flesh" - The salt pork of New England...........57
FitzHugh, Captain............................................60
"Flag of a Republic".........................................144
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flag of truce</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag, white</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleet bombarding shore position</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleet, Captain Henry</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleet - First Commander-in-Chief of American Fleet</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Fleets of Indian canoes&quot;</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floki Vilgerdsson</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida</td>
<td>21, 99, 100, 105, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folly Island, South Carolina</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreigners - enlistment of &quot;continental foreigners&quot;</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forrest, Lieutenant</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort at Port Royal, Nova Scotia. See also Port Royal</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort at Portsmouth, New Hampshire</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Boca Chica</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort - built by Gosnold</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Caroline</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort &quot;Charles Fort&quot;. See Charlesfort.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort - Dutch fort in New York</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Edward</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Frederick on Roatan Island, Honduras</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort George on Roatan Island, Honduras</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Louis</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort on the Kennebec River</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort San Felipe</td>
<td>102, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort San Marcos</td>
<td>102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort St. Jago</td>
<td>46, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort St. Joseph</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort St. Lazar. See also St. Lazar</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort St. Louis (Boca Chica Castle)</td>
<td>46, 47, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort St. Philip</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Ticonderoga</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Washington on the Potomac</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort William and Mary</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortress of Grande Castillo</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortress of Louisburg on Cape Breton Island. See also Louisburg</td>
<td>27, 69, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forts - &quot;Chain of forts&quot; built by French</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forts of Colonial Massachusetts</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortune - Pirate ship</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France and French</td>
<td>9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 17, 20, 21, 25, 27, 41, 46, 67, 70, 72, 73, 74, 76, 77, 78, 79, 81, 90, 91, 99, 100, 103, 106, 107, 115, 128, 143, 144, 148, 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franklin, Benjamin</td>
<td>75, 115, 118, 148, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Franklin's Regiment&quot;</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fredericksburg, Virginia</td>
<td>104, 117, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freebody, John</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter II.  

Freeman, Isaac, Captain .......................... 73
French and Indian War ............................. 74, 150, 151
French Fleet ........................................ 45
French in Haiti ...................................... 152
"Fruitless Expedition" ................................ 30, 56
Frye, Lieutenant, British Royal Marines ............. 131
Fuller, Ben Hobard, Major General Commandant, USMC 111, 117
Fuller, Mrs. Ben Hobard ................................ 117
"Fusan" as Chinese are alleged to have called America ......... 4, 95

Gahn, Bessie Wilmarth ................................ 106
Galicia, Spanish flagship ............................. 47
Gallup, John .......................................... 14, 15
Galway, Ireland ....................................... 5
Game Cock, American Privateer ........................ 60
"Gardar " the Swede Gardar" ............................ 4
Garland, British warship .............................. 74
Gaspee, Bay of ....................................... 36
Gaspee (Gaspo), British warship ......................... 86, 87, 88, 147
Gaspee Point, Rhode Island ............................. 87
Genoese .............................................. 97
"Gentlemen Adventurers" See also Adventurers ....... 4
"Gentlemen Sailors" ................................ 72, 98, 111, 137
"Gentlemen Seamen" .................................. 98
"Gentlemen Volunteers" ................................ 98
George - King George's War .......................... 29
George, King of England ................................ 105
George II, King ....................................... 65
George III, King of England ........................... 145
Georgia ................................................ 38, 66, 89, 103, 136
Georgius Secundus .................................... 141
Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, U.S.M.C. Maneuvers .......... 141
Gibraltar ............................................... 15
Gidley, John .......................................... 140
Gillespie, Captain .................................... 60
Gineks, Captain ....................................... 21
Goat Island ........................................... 85
Geffe, Daniel, Captain ................................ 39
Gold ..................................................... 29

"Gold and Scarlet" See Colors of U.S. Marine Corps
Golden Gate, The ..................................... 98
Golden Hill - Battle of ............................... 146
Gondolas .............................................. 88, 148
Gooch, Colonel William 34, 36, 37, 39, 40, 42, 93, 116, 117, 118, 119, 125, 126
"Gooch's Marines" 30, 31, 34, 44, 51, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 93, 118, 119, 122, 124, 127
Chapter II. -167- Volume One.

"Gooch's Regiment" .................................................. 44
Gordon, Captain ...................................................... 60
Gosnold, Bartholomew ................................................. 12, 107
Gracias a Dios, Cape, Nicaragua ................................ 46
Grand Diable, American privateer ............................... 139
Grande Castillo, Fortress of ....................................... 48
Grant, Colonel .......................................................... 48, 52
Grant, Mr .............................................................. 140
Grave of William Hebb ............................................... 121, 122
Grave Yard at Aquia Village ........................................ 105
Great Britain .......................................................... 27, 30, 58, 125
Great Lakes ............................................................. 38
Great Wicomicooco .................................................... 108
Great Wicomico Parish ............................................... 104
Greece and Greek ........................................................ 9, 92, 96
Green Bay (Great Lakes) ............................................. 103
Greene, Edward H., Colonel, U.S. Marine Corps ............ 110
Greenland ................................................................. 3, 4, 94, 95
Gregori, Anne King ................................................... 103
Grenades, hand .......................................................... 52, 53, 129
Grenville, George ...................................................... 145
Greyhound, American privateer .................................... 139
Greyhound, brig of Captain Charles Biddle ................... 152
Greyhound, British frigate .......................................... 114
Gridley, Richard, Chief of Artillery .............................. 68
Griffin, La Salle's ship ............................................... 109
Grog ...................................................................... 42
Grogan cloack ........................................................... 42, 53, 126
Guadalupe Island ..................................................... 77, 80, 96
Guam ..................................................................... 7, 98
Guanaahani Island (San Salvador; Watling Island) ......... 5
Guantanamo Bay Cuba (Cumberland; Walthenham) 6, 61, 63, 64, 133
Guantanamo City, Cuba ............................................... 62
Guise, Brigadier .......................................................... 49
Gulf of Mexico .......................................................... 29, 145
Gunboats ................................................................. 79
"Gyrene," nickname of Marines .................................... 94

Haiti and Hayti .......................................................... 5, 45, 64, 80, 97, 132, 143, 144, 152
Hakluyt ................................................................. 99, 100
Half Moon, Hudson's vessel ........................................ 12
Half-pay ................................................................. 141
Halifax, Nova Scotia ................................................ 145
Hamilton, James, Captain .......................................... 40, 117
Hand grenades .......................................................... 52, 53, 129
Hannah, American sloop ............................................. 87
Happy Entrance, (old Dutch ship Holy Ghost) ............... 109
Harmony — "Want of". See also Cooperation, lack of. 131
Harison. 59
Harrison, Benjamin, President. 134
Harris, William, of Galway, Ireland, with Columbus. 5
Hartford, Connecticut. 16
Hattom's Corbett, Maryland. 120, 121
Havana, Cuba. 29, 63, 64, 145
Hawaiian Islands. 96
Haweke, Privateer. 71
Hawkins, Sir John. 93
Haymarket, Virginia. 122
Highbee, John Henley, Major, U.S. Marine Corps. 116
Hispaniola. 43, 45, 80, 117, 144
Hoar, James — Pirate. 114
Hobby, Sir Charles. 34
Holland, See also Dutch. 12, 13, 16, 17, 21, 107
Holt, John. 149
Holy Ghost, Dutch ship. 109
Honduras. 6, 65, 134, 152
Honolulu, Hawaiian Islands. 96
Hood, Commodore. 145
Hopewell, Anna. 122
Hopewell, Hugh, Sir. 123
Hopkins, Esek. 71, 139, 140, 145, 147
Hopkins, William, Captain. 39
Horse races. 105, 141
Hospital — Gooch's Marines admitted to. 44
House of Commons. 30
Hudson, Henry. 12
Hudson River. 12, 13
Hudson's Bay. 145
Huguenots, The. 99, 100, 101
Huic, Reid and Company. 106
Huling, Marcus, Captain. 10, 117
Hunting Creek, Virginia. 104
Hurricanes. 133
Headquarters, United States Marine Corps. 122, 123
Hebb, Ann. 121
Hebb, Clement Dorsey, Colonel, U.S.M.C. 39, 122, 123, 124, 125
Hebb, Elizabeth L. 122, 124, 125
Hebb, Hopewell (wife of William Hebb who served
under Vernon). 124
Hebb, Priscilla. 124
Hebb, Thomas (father of William Hebb who served
under Vernon). 125
Chapter II.

Hebb, Vernon (son of William Hebb who served under Vernon) .................................................. 121, 122, 124, 125
Hebb, William, Captain (who served under Vernon) .................................................................................. 39, 120, 121, 122, 124, 125
Hebb, William (father of Colonel C.D. Hebb, U.S.M.C.) ................................................................. 122, 125

Heights of Abraham ................................................. 106
Hell Gate .................................................................. 13
Henderson, Archibald, Colonel Commandant, U.S.M.C.... 105
Henley family ........................................................................ 116
Henley, Lechard .................................................................. 116
Henry, Patrick .................................................................. 116
Herjolfsson, Bjarni ........................................................ 95

Iceland ................................................................. 3, 4, 94, 95, 96, 97
Illinois ...................................................................... 133
Indes Library, Seville, Spain .................................................. 101
India ......................................................................... 4
Indians, American. See American Indians.
Indians, Mosquito ........................................................... 152
Indians, White .................................................................. 96
Innes, James, Captain ......................................................... 39, 117
Intriped, British warship ...................................................... 144
"Invalid companies" ......................................................... 30
Ireland and Irish ............................................................... 5, 33, 98
"Irish Horse" — Putrid salt beef of New England ................. 57
Isabela ........................................................................ 8
Isle Aux Noix ................................................................. 77, 78
Italian Army Officer ........................................................ 152

Jack's Harbor ............................................................... 98
Jamaica ..................................................................... 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 52, 54, 59, 61, 63, 117, 118, 129, 134
Jamaica rum and water — grog ............................................. 58
James II, King .................................................................. 20
James River ..................................................................... 18, 104
Jamestown, Virginia .......................................................... 10, 18, 94
Japan and Japanese .......................................................... 14, 96
Jealousy — "between the land and sea officers" .................... 130
Jefferson Davis Highway .................................................... 117
Jesus Maria y Josep, Spanish ship ........................................ 73
Jockey clubs ................................................................... 141
"Join or Die" .................................................................. 149, 150
Jonas, Arngrim ................................................................ 94
Jones, John Paul ............................................................... 148
Jones, Thomas — Pirate ...................................................... 114
Jurisdiction — "Naval jurisdiction" ....................................... 13
Jurisdiction of Court-martial ............................................... 131
Chapter II. -170- Volume One

Kane, Theodore Porter, Brigadier General, U.S.M.C. ... 117
Kappel, Commodore ... 74
Kennebec River ... 141
Kent, British warship ... 60
Kent Island, Maryland ... 13, 14, 103
Kent, pinnacle ... 103
"Keys of the fortress" ... 25, 69
King and Queen County, Virginia ... 117
King Charles I ... 75
King Charles of England ... 107
King George ... 105
King George II ... 65
King George III ... 115, 135
King, James II ... 80
King of England ... 30-31
King of Spain ... 65
King Philip II ... 103
King Philip's War ... 80
King William ... 81
King William County, Virginia ... 117
King William's War ... 80
Kittery, Maine ... 63
Knolly, Major ... 133
Kormak ... 96

Labrader ... 95, 96
Lachine ... 79
Laclerc ... 99
Ladders ... 52
Ladrones or "Robber Islands" ... 98
Lady Baltimore ... 105
La Garce, Dutch ship ... 109
La Guirra ... 60, 64
La Hacha ... 64
Lake Champlain ... 77, 78
Lake Erie ... 109
Lake George ... 77
Lake Ontario ... 109
La Navidad ... 6
Land grants - in Cuba ... 132
Landing party ... 8, 65
"Land Men" and "Landsmen" ... 5, 65, 66
Language "Land and Water" did not "understand each other's language" ... 50
Lanterns ... 73
La Popa Convent ... 51
Chapter II. —171— Volume One

La Quinta. ............................... 51
La Salic .................................... 109
Las Casas .................................. 5
Latin—American service .................. 15
Laudonnierc, Rene de .................... .99,100
Lawrence, Thomas, Captain ............. 40,117
La Vigillette, French warship on Lake Champlain ..... 77
League Island Marine Barracks .......... 123
"Leatherneck", nickname of Marines .... 94
Lee, Colonel, "Naval Officer of the Potomack" .. 28
Lee, Richard Henry ....................... 83
Leif Eriksson (Lief Ericson) ............ 4,95
Leighton, Francis, Lieutenant Colonel .. 59
Legal case of Lieutenant Frye .......... 131
Lejeune, John Archer, Major General Commandant 101,111
Leogane, Bate of Leogane, Haiti ....... 80,144
Letters of marque or privateer commissions. 28,65,135,140
Lexington, Massachusetts ............... 81,83,94,145,146
"Lexington of the Seas" ................... 86,147
Liberty, British armed sloop ............ 84,146
Liberty — John Hancock's sloop ........ 84
Liberty Pole of the Sons of Liberty at New York. 88,146
Limerick, Pennsylvania .................. 40,117
Lisbon earthquake ....................... 141
Litchfield, British warship ............. 45,65,134
Liquor, "tree to all" .............. 40
Lodge, Henry Cabot ....................... 30,56
Logwood trade ............................ 134,152
Long—horned cattle driven on attackers. 98
Long Island and Long Island Sound .... 13,15,16
Long Trail, Claiborne's pinnace .......... 14
Lord Baltimore ......................... 13,121
Lord Cornwallis ........................... 116
Louisburg (Cape Breton) ... 27,67,68,69,70,73,76,78, 136,137,138,139
Louisiana ................................ 99
Love, Samuel, Captain ................... 40,117
Low, Edward or Ned — Pirate .......... 114
Lowther, Lieutenant ...................... 44

Mactan Island ........................... 8,98
Madoc ..................................... 5,96,97
Magellan, Ferdinand ..................... 7,98
Magna Carta .............................. 90,149
Maidstone, British warship ............. 81
Maine .................................. 68
Major General Commandant, U.S. Marine Corps. 100,110
Chapter II. -172-

Malaria.................................................. 62
Malber (Malborn), Dodfrey, Colonel.................... 71,140
Manatawney, Pennsylvania.............................. 140,117
Maneuvers of 1922 - United States Marine Corps...... 141
Manhattan, Dutch colony at............................ 16,106
Manzanilla Battery........................................ 48
Map made by John Smith................................... 107
March, John, Colonel.................................... 22
Marco Polo.................................................. 97
Mare Island, California, Marine Barracks................. 123
Marine Band............................................... 150
Marine, A - defined...................................... 1
"Marines" of Ribault..................................... 9
Marines of Romney ordered to fire........................ 83-84
Marines of the Colonies. See also Continental Mar—
ines......................................................... 34
"Marines of the Mayflower"............................... 12
Marines on a Buccaneer or Pirate vessel................ 114
Marines serving on vessels on Lake Champlain........... 78
"Maritime Fighters".................................. 93
"Maritime Soldiers".................................... 1,3,7,13
Marlborough.............................................. 26
Marque, Letters of Marque and reprisal.................. 23,65,35,140
Marques.................................................... 102
Marryat, Frederick, Captain (The novelist)........... 56,131
Marseilles................................................. 96
Mars, New York private armed brigantine................ 80
Martel - Pirate.......................................... 114
Martin, Captain.......................................... 60,112
Martinique............................................... 76,77
Martha's Vineyard.................................... 12,67
Maryland.................................................. 13,14,31,35,73,108,134
Massachusetts.. 22,23,24,26,31,35,39,61,65,67,68,73,
101,109,112,113,131,132,137,139,142,143,151
Massachusetts, colony warship........................... 68,141
Matthews, Boss.......................................... 114
Mayan..................................................... 3
Mayflower................................................ 12,107
Mayflower's Marines.................................... 107
McCawley, Charles G., Colonel Commandant, USMC..... 122,124
McClellan, Edwin North, Major, U.S.A.C. ....... 103,110,
122,125,130,132
McDougal, Alexander, Captain.......................... 79
McMillan, Donald B...................................... 95
Means Creek, South Carolina............................ 102
Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence................ 150
Medford, Massachusetts.................................. 108
Chapter II. 

Mediterranean ................................................................. 67
Menendez de Aviles, Pedro .................................................. 99,100
Menis, town of ................................................................... 113
Messar, Captain .................................................................. 60
Mews, William — Pirate ......................................................... 114
Meyrick, William, Major ....................................................... 59,132
Middleton, Charles, Captain .................................................. 110,111
Midshipmen .......................................................................... 120
Military — naval character of the Marines .............................. 92
Militia .................................................................................... 20,23,35,137
Millis, John, Colonel, U.S. Army (See Lt. Col. Ralph Millis, U.S. Army) ....................................................... 100
Minnesota .............................................................................. 95
Missions ................................................................................ 2
Mississippi River ................................................................... 23,141
Moat at Parris Island .............................................................. 100
Mole St. Nicolas, Haiti. See also St. Nicholas .......................... 152
Monks, Irish (Celtic) .............................................................. 96
Montague, British warship ...................................................... 45
Montauk Tribe of Indians ....................................................... 110
Monte Christi .......................................................................... 6
Montreal, Canada .................................................................. 23,79
Monument at Louisburg ......................................................... 69
Monument at Mayport, Florida, for Ribault ............................. 99
Monument to the Huguenots at Parris Island, South Carolina .... 99,100,101,103
Moore, Bernard ...................................................................... 116
Moore House (Yorktown, Virginia) ......................................... 118
Morocco .................................................................................. 115
Morris, Governor .................................................................. 75
Morris Island, South Carolina ............................................... 123
Mortars ................................................................................... 33,46
Mosquito Indians ................................................................... 152
Mosquito Shore ...................................................................... 152
Mostone, Thomas — Pirate ..................................................... 114
Mother Country ..................................................................... 30,145
Mottos ................................................................................. 90,138,142,148,149,150
Motto given to "Royal Americans" by Wolfe at Quebec was "Bold and Swift" ......................................................... 143
Motto — "Join or Die" ............................................................. 143,150
Motto — "Unite all, and Conquer" ......................................... 150
Motto — "Unite or Die" ........................................................ 148
Mound City Marine Barracks ................................................. 123
Mount Desert Island .............................................................. 11
Mount Vernon ....................................................................... 104,135
Moyne, La. ............................................................................. 99
Murra, Captain ...................................................................... 47
Chapter II. -174- Volume One

Murray, Mr. ........................................... 43
Muskets. See also Arms; Firearms; Firelocks. ....... 33
Muster Rolls, United States Marine Corps .......... 122
Mutiny. .................................................................. 99, 134
"Mystery of the Sea", first. See also Sank without trace. .............................................. 16
Mystic River. ......................................................... 107, 108

Naddod or Naddok - "the Norseman Naddod" .......... 4, 94
Nantasket Roads. .................................................. 69, 109
Narragansett Bay. .................................................. 87
Narragansett Indians. ............................................. 110
"Naval jurisdiction" ................................................ 2
"Naval machine" ................................................... 2
"Naval Officer of the Eastern Shore" ...................... 28
"Naval Officer of Potomack" ................................... 28
Naval status - "expeditions of a naval status". See also Expeditions; Expeditionary .............. 2
Navies of the States ................................................ 79
Navigation acts ..................................................... 19, 82
Navy - "the modest prototype of the" U.S. Navy .... 69
Navy Yard, Charleston, South Carolina ........... 100, 101
"Necessity" - diluted brandy or rum. ...................... 58
Negroes ................................................................. 61, 62, 72
New Amsterdam .................................................... 12, 17, 109
Newcastle in Portsmouth, New Hampshire ........... 88
New England. 15, 16, 36, 57, 65, 67, 70, 96, 106, 107, 113, 131, 139, 149
New England Marines. See also Colonial American Marines ................................................. 24
Newfoundland ......................................................... 21, 69, 39, 96
New France .......................................................... 79, 80, 143
New Granada ........................................................ 118
New Hampshire ..................................................... 22, 24, 31, 33, 67, 68, 73, 137, 147, 148
New Hanover County, North Carolina ............... 117
New Haven, Connecticut ........................................ 16
New Jersey ............................................................. 23, 31, 35, 39, 67
New London, Connecticut ....................................... 140
New Netherlands .................................................... 16
Newport, Rhode Island. 39, 71, 72, 80, 81, 94, 114, 135, 140, 146
Newton, Captain ................................................... 41
New York - First American blood shed. .............. 85
New York, galley privateer of New York ................. 21
New York Marine Barracks ....................................... 123
"New York Tea Party" .............................................. 146

-174-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Niagara River</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niblack, Albert P., Rear Admiral, U.S. Navy</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td>5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicholson, Francis, Colonel</td>
<td>24, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nick.Names of Marines. See also Sobriquets</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicola (Nicolas). See Cape Nicola; St. Nicholas</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicolls, Richard, First British Colonial Governor of New York</td>
<td>17, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night attack</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nightingale, British warship</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nil Desperandum Christo Duce</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nina, vessel of Columbus</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norfolk, Virginia Marine Barracks</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norsemen and Northmen</td>
<td>2, 4, 5, 95, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;North American Regiment&quot;</td>
<td>60, 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Carolina</td>
<td>31, 35, 38, 39, 112, 117, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Carolina revolt</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Providence, Rhode Island</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northumberland County</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norton, Benjamin, Captain</td>
<td>135, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norumbega</td>
<td>94-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwich, flagship of Commodore Kappel</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nut Island, New York</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occoquan Creek</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ogle, Sir Chaloner</td>
<td>42, 43, 127, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oglethorpe, James Edward</td>
<td>66, 118, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ohio River</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Old Americans&quot; The - Gooch's Regiment. See also Gooch's Marines</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Bark - Pirate Ship</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Old Brog&quot; - Admiral Vernon's Nick-name</td>
<td>40, 42, 58, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Point Comfort, Virginia</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old World</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oldham, John</td>
<td>14, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onawmanient</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ontario, Lake</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Opinionated&quot;</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange, William III, Prince of Orange</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oregon Coast</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orford, British warship</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orkney Islands</td>
<td>3, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oswego</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Overbearing attitude&quot;</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Over-seas expedition by American Colonials. See also Cuba; Louisburg; Port Royal; Cartagena. 2, 93

Oviedo. 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pacific Coast of United States</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pacific Squadron</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palmer, Captain</td>
<td>40, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papists</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Paraguay Expedition&quot; of U.S. Navy and Marines</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parapet</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pardon</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paris, France</td>
<td>80, 101, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parliament</td>
<td>30, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parris, Alexander, Colonel</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parris Island, South Carolina</td>
<td>9, 99, 101, 102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Parson Weems&quot;</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patawomeck River</td>
<td>103, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattin, James, at Barbadoses</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Patumut&quot;</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pay - &quot;half-pay&quot;</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peace of Paris, 1763</td>
<td>80, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Peace of Utrecht&quot;</td>
<td>23, 29, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennsylvania</td>
<td>23, 31, 35, 39, 68, 73, 75, 115, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penobscot Bay</td>
<td>11, 12, 17, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pensacola, United States flagship</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pensacola, Florida, Marine Barracks</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentagoet on Castine Bay</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pepperell, William, Brigadier General</td>
<td>68, 69, 70, 137, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pequot War</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perkiomen, Pennsylvania</td>
<td>40, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persian galleys</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petit Guave, Haiti</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philadelphia, Pennsylvania</td>
<td>39, 40, 42, 75, 88, 89, 117, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philadelphia, Marine Barracks</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip – King Philip’s War</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip, II, King</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phillips, Thomas, Captain</td>
<td>39, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippine Islands</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phips, Sir William</td>
<td>20, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenicians</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picataway</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pickets – &quot;fascine and pickets&quot;</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilgrims on Mayflower</td>
<td>12, 106, 107, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilots, blamed</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter II

Piney Point, Maryland.......................... 121
Pinnaces........................................ 5, 8, 14, 100, 108
Pinta, vessel of Columbus.................... 5
Pioneers — American Marines.................. 1, 48, 51
"Pioneers of the American Revolution"....... 91
Pirates and Piracy............................... 28, 29, 114, 135, 144
Piscataqua...................................... 112
Plaza Grande Bay................................ 46
Plymouth Marines............................... 107, 108
Pocahontas...................................... 106
Pocomoke, Md.................................... 14, 108
Pohick, Virginia................................ 104
Point Comfort.................................. 104
Point de Canca.................................. 46
Point Mayasi, Cuba............................. 6
Polo, Marco...................................... 97
Port-au-Prince, Haiti........................... 143, 153
Port Isabel...................................... 93
Port Louis, Isle of Vache, near Hispaniola... 45
Port Royal, (Annapolis) Acadia (Acadian) See also Annapolis......................... 11, 12, 20, 23, 25, 35, 112
Port Royal, Jamaica............................ 43, 44, 45
Port Royal River................................ 101
Port Royal, Roatan Island, Honduras........... 134
Port Royal, South Carolina.................... 39, 101, 103
Porto Bello..................................... 29, 41, 42, 64, 120, 121, 124, 125
Porto Bello, colonial estate on the St. Mary's 120, 121, 122, 124, 125
Porto Cavallo.................................. 60, 64
Porto Ricco...................................... 5
Portsmouth, England........................... 41
Portsmouth, New Hampshire.................... 21, 28, 148
Portsmouth, New Hampshire dock-yard........ 73
Portsmouth, New Hampshire Marine Barracks... 123
Porto Rican..................................... 96, 107
Postmaster General of the Colonies........... 115, 116
Potomac River................................... 10, 74, 103, 104, 105, 120, 123
"Potomack ships"................................ 23
Powder.......................................... 148
"Powhatan Flu".................................. 104
Powman, Daniel.................................. 21
Prayer, day of.................................. 69
Preble, U.S.S.................................. 123
Prehistoric man.................................. 2, 3
Preparation for the American Revolution...... 90, 151
Prescott, John, Captain....................... 39
President of the United States................ 124, 133

-177-
Chapter II.  -178-  Volume One

Chapter II.

Press-gang .......................... 81, 83
Prevost, Captain ...................... 69
Prince Charles, American privateer .... 72, 139
Princess Amelia, British warship .... 45
Princess Carolina, British warship .... 45, 50
Principles of war .................... 50, 151
Prisoners ................................ 52
"Private men-of-war" .................. 65, 66, 71
Privateers ............................ 11, 21, 23, 28, 29, 35, 65, 66, 67, 68, 70, 71,
79, 87, 93, 94, 96, 109, 111, 114, 115, 132,
135, 137, 139, 140, 142, 143, 144, 150, 151
"Privateers carried Marine Detachments" .... 70, 71
Prizes .................................. 63
"Protesting period" .................... 93
Providence, Rhode Island ............ 39, 71, 87, 118
Province galley (Southack) of Massachusetts .... 23
"Provincial Fleet" ..................... 133
"Provincial troops" .................... 27
Puerto Hata ........................... 98
Puerto Grande — now Guantanamo Bay, Cuba .... 6, 133
Putnam, Israel, General .............. 144
Pytheas, a Greek ........................ 96

Quantico, Virginia. See also Dumfries .... 10, 74, 103,
104, 105, 141
Quantico Church ...................... 104, 141
Quantico River or Creek .............. 10, 105, 106
Quebec, Canada ........................ 20, 78, 79, 106, 142
Queen Anne ........................... 31, 112
Quincy, Josiah ........................ 139

Racham, John — Pirate .................. 114
Radeau (a floating battery). See also Radeau .... 143
"Radeau" (Radeau), of 84 feet in length to carry
26 4-pounders .......................... 143
Raft-ships ............................. 140
Rafts-of-war on Lake Champlain ....... 78
Raids on British commerce ............ 151
"Raked her fore and aft" .............. 15
"Rammed the sloop" .................... 15
Ramparts, stone — of St. Lazar ....... 53, 56, 131
Ranger — Pirate ship ................. 114
Rapids ................................ 79
Rappahannock (Rappahannock) River .... 29, 117
Rattan Island (Roatan) Bay of Honduras 65, 134
Rattlesnake — as an American device .... 90, 148, 149, 150
Ray, Charles, movie actor ............ 107
Reading, Colonel ..................... 24

-178-
Rebel — Bacon was "first successful American Rebel"...18
Recruiting.................................................40
Reid, George C., Major and Adjutant Inspector, USMC...122
Reid — "Huie, Reid & Co."..............................108
Rendezvous for Colonial Marines at New York........119
Rennomee, French frigate..............................138
Republic — "first unfurled the flag of a Republic"...144
"Respectable citizens"....................................89
Revenge, sloop, American privateer..................135
Revere, Paul.............................................70,88
Revolution, American. See American Revolution
Rhett, Lieutenant Colonel and Vice Admiral.........22
Rhode Island. 16, 22, 23, 24, 31, 35, 39, 66, 67, 68, 71,
72, 73, 87, 115, 136, 137, 139, 147, 148
Rhode Island — Insurrection in Rhode Island........147
Ribault (Ribaut), Jean..................................9, 99, 100, 101
"Ribbon of Gold and Scarlet"..........................111
Richmond, Fredericksburg and Potomac Railroad....104
Rippon, British warship..................................44
"Rising en masse".......................................153
Rising Sun, French armed vessel......................72
Roatan Island, Bay of Honduras. See also Rattan
Island....................................................65, 134
"Robber Islands" or Ladrones...........................93
Roberts, Bartholomew — Pirate.........................114
Robinson..................................................59
Robinson, Captain Henry................................114
Robinson, Frigate........................................29
Robinson, Sir Thomas......................................39
Roderick Random, novel by Tobias Smollett.........57, 129, 130
Rodman, Hugh, Admiral, United States Navy.........111, 113, 128
Rojas, a Spaniard........................................103
Rome.......................................................32
Romney, British warship................................83, 84
Rose, British frigate....................................20
Ross, Miss...............................................103
Round Robin..............................................63
Rouse, Captain...........................................138
"Royal American Regiment".............................75, 77, 142
Royal Marines of Great Britain. See British Marines.
Royal Standard...........................................35, 119
"Ruins including some cedar timber" at Parris
Island, South Carolina.................................9, 100
Rum........................................................42, 57, 126
Russell, British warship................................45
Chapter II. -130- Volume One

Sagas, The .................................................. 5, 95
Salem, Massachusetts ........................................... 21, 109
Salem Packet ................................................... .31
Salt Beef called Irish Horse ...................................... .57
"Salt Provisions" .............................................. 33
"Salt water" Lexington ......................................... 147
"Salute of cannon" ............................................ 40
Salutes - "rude salutes of the English shells" .................. 25
Samar, Philippine Islands ...................................... .8
Samson, John, coxswain of the Essex ......................... 31
San Antonio, vessel of Magellan ................................ .7
San Augustin, See also St. Augustine ......................... 101
Sanders, Samuel ................................................ 149
San Felipe, Fort ................................................. 102, 119
San Francisco Bay ............................................... .98
San Francisco City ............................................. .8
"Sank without trace". See also "Mystery of the Sea" ....... 16, 72, 80
San Lazardo ..................................................... 49, 117
San Marcos, Fort ................................................. 102, 103
San Salvador (Watling Island or Guanahani) .................. 5, 97
Santa Catalina de Guantanamo ................................ 62
Santa Elena ..................................................... 101, 102
Santa Maria, vessel of Columbus ............................... .5
Santoec, United States frigate ................................ 133
Santiago, vessel of Magellan ................................... .7
Santiago de Cuba. See also St. Jago de Cuba; St. Jago ....... 7, 61, 62, 63, 64, 80, 132, 133, 144
Santo Domingo, and Santo Domingo City ................. 6, 8, 9, 45, 98, 144
Santo Domingo City Cathedral ................................ 6
Santo Domingo City occupied by American Marines in 1916 8
"Scalado" ....................................................... 55
"Scale the walls" ............................................... 52
Scaling ladders ................................................ 52, 53, 54, 129
Scalp ............................................................. 10
"Scarlet and Gold" - Colors of the Marine Corps ........ 90, 110, 111
"Scarlet jackets" of the "Royal American" .................... 142
Scotch (Scott) settled Dumfries, Va. ......................... 10, 105
Scott, John ...................................................... 141
Scows ............................................................ 148
"Sea attack" ..................................................... 20
"Sea characters" ............................................... 1
Sea - "familiarity with the sea" .............................. 2
"Sea force" ..................................................... 70
Sea Horse, British Warship ................................... 74
Sea - "Matters of the Sea" ................................... 1
Sea - "Soldiers accustomed to the ways of the sea" ......... 5
Sea - "Soldiers used to the ways of the sea" ............... 15
Chapter II

Sea - "trained to the way of the sea" ........................................2
Seafort, 400 ton ship ..........................................................107
Sea-habit ..................................................................................92
Sea-power of Colonies .............................................................151
Sea-robbers of New York .........................................................114
Sea-rovers .............................................................................89, 97, 135
"Sea-soldier" .............................................................................1, 2, 8, 12, 14, 75, 119
"Sea-stealing" ............................................................................114
"Secret landing" ........................................................................8
Sample Farm, Yorktown, Va .....................................................116
"Serenade of French Horns and Trumpets" ...............................73
Seven Years' War ..................................................................71, 74, 142
Seville, Spain ........................................................................101, 102, 103
Shafer, Major General U.S. Army ...........................................134
Shakespeare's Tempest ............................................................95
Sheffield, Joseph, Captain .......................................................33
Shetland Islands ......................................................................96
Ship Yard on Mystic River .......................................................107, 108
Shirley, Governor of Massachusetts .......................................133
Shirley, 20-gun American ship ..............................................68, 138
Shriver, Bartholomew .............................................................104
"Shooting at Mark" ..................................................................144
Sir Francis Drake's Bay (Jack's Harbor) ..................................98
Sixth Naval District .................................................................101
Slave .......................................................................................118
Small-beer .............................................................................153
Smith, John, Captain .............................................................10, 11, 103, 104, 107
Smith, Thomas .........................................................................108
Smuggling ..................................................................................83
Snake, rattle - as an American device ...................................90, 148, 149, 150
Snider - a German lad killed at Boston .................................85
"Snow" (type of ship) ...............................................................137, 140, 152
Snow Dragon, American privateer .......................................139
"Snow Hill," Hebb Estate near Haymarket, Virginia .............122
"Snowland" as Naddok called Iceland .....................................94
Sobriquet, See also Nicknames of Marines ...........................53
Society Hill, Philadelphia ......................................................40
Society of Colonial Wars - Marines eligible for ..................34
Soldier - "a dog before a soldier" .........................................131
"Soldiers accustomed to the ways of the sea" .......................5
"Soldier of the Ocean" ............................................................1
"Soldiers of the Sea" ................................................................29
"Soldiers used to the ways of the sea" ....................................15
Soldiers-with-the-Sea-Habit ..................................................92
Sons of Liberty .................................................................82, 85, 88, 148
Sons of the Revolution ..........................................................85
Chapter II.

"Sons of Ua Corra".......................... 96
South America.............................. 123, 134
South Carolina.............................. 9, 10, 21, 38, 66, 93, 101, 102, 103, 117, 118,
123, 136
South Sea, American warship under William Dandridge... 136
Southack, Captain of Massachusetts Province galley... 23
Spain, Spaniards and Spanish.................. 7, 9, 10, 21, 29, 30, 31,
34, 35, 40, 41, 48, 49, 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 73, 80, 90, 91,
96, 98, 101, 102, 103, 108, 125, 129, 133, 136, 139, 143
Spanish—America............................ 29, 46
Spanish—American War of 1898................ 134
Spanish "Captain of Marines"................... 47
Spanish Inquisition.......................... 102
Spanish—Main................................ 71
Spartanburg, South Carolina.................... 101
Speed, Major................................ 59
Spelman, Harry............................... 10
"Spiked the Spanish guns"..................... 47, 48
Spithend................................... 51
Spotswood, Alexander, Major General.............. 23, 31, 32, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 93, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 125
Spotswood, Alexander, Major General, death of... 36, 115, 116
Spotswood, Alexander, General (son of John and grandson of Alexander Spotswood).............. 116
Spotswood, Ann (daughter of John)................... 116
Spotswood, Dorothea.......................... 116
Spotswood, John, Captain (son of John and grandson of Alexander Spotswood).............. 116
Spotswood, Mary (daughter of John)................... 116
Spotswood, Robert................................... 116
"Spotswoods Marines", See also "Gooch's Marines"... 30, 93
Spotsylvania Battle (Civil War).............. 117
Spotsylvania County, Virginia.............. 117
Squirrel, British man of war...................... 32
St. Augustine, Florida. See also San Augustine... 39, 66, 93, 100, 101, 102, 136
St. Brendan.................................. 96
"St. Deaga". See also Santiago de Cuba........... 80, 144
St. Helen, Maryland vessel.................. 14
St. Helena Island, South Carolina............. 101
St. Inigoes.................................. 124
St. Jago de Cuba (Santiago). See also Santiago de Cuba.............................. 7, 46, 47, 60, 61, 62, 63
St. Jago, Fort. See also Santiago de Cuba; St.
Jago de Cuba................................. 60, 61, 62, 63
St. Johns.................................. 17
St. John, British cruiser....................... 82
St. Joseph, Fort.............................. 47
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St. Lawrence River</td>
<td>25, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Lazar. See also Fort St. Lazar</td>
<td>50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 56, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Louis, Fort</td>
<td>46, 47, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Margaret, Maryland vessel</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Mary's Isle</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Mary's, Maryland</td>
<td>14, 104, 108, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Mary's River, Maryland</td>
<td>120, 121, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Nicholas, See also Cape Nicola</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Philip, Fort</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Sauveur, French post on Mount Desert Island</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage line</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stained glass - memory of Spotswood</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stamp Act</td>
<td>82, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stamp Office in Boston</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards - &quot;Colonial Standards&quot;</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard, Royal</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standish, Miles</td>
<td>12, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starr, William, Lieutenant</td>
<td>80, 143, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Navies</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stephen, Captain</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stewart, George, Captain</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stockades</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone Mill at Newport, Rhode Island</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone ramparts</td>
<td>53, 56, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoneland (America)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store—vessels</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Stormed and carried&quot; fort</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stratagem - Used to capture enemy ship</td>
<td>72, 73, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stratford Hall, Westmoreland Hall, Virginia</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stulkley, Captain of the Deptford</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffolk, British warship</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffrage, denied. See also Ballot</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar—producing island of Guadaloupe</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sullivan, John, General</td>
<td>83, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superb, British warship</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Surprise&quot; - element, lacking</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swallow, transport ship</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swede - &quot;the Swede Gardar&quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swift, brig of Captain Charles Biddle</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swords, wooden</td>
<td>103, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailer, Colonel</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tangier, Morocco</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tankard</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tar - crew of Castar and Pollux tarred a woman</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Target practice ........................................... 80, 144
Tartar, colony sloop of Rhode Island .................. 68, 137
Taxes and taxation ........................................ 85, 110
Tay, American privateer ................................. 80
Tea – destroyed ............................................ 88
Tea – duty on .............................................. 85
disguise" See also Boston Tea Party ...................... 146
Tea-ships ...................................................... 148
"Ten Lost Tribes" ........................................... 96
Tew, Thomas – Pirate .................................... 114
Thanks – "Resolution of Thanks" by South Carolina Senate to Marines .............................. 10
Thin, Captain ................................................ 60
Thomas (an author) ....................................... 120
Thorpe, George C., Colonel, U. S. Marine Corps .... 38
Thorvald ....................................................... 95
Thule (possibly Iceland) .................................. 96
Ticonderoga, Fort .......................................... 77
Tierra Bomba peninsula .................................... 46, 47, 48
Tiger, Harry Spelman's vessel ......................... 10
Toasts ....................................................... 32, 89
Tobacco ....................................................... 105
Tobasco River .............................................. 109
Tobasco, Spanish bark ................................... 109
Tobaske, Dutch ship ....................................... 109
Tocwogh ...................................................... 103
Toltecs ....................................................... 3
Tongrelow, Regnier, Captain ......................... 81
Torbay, British warship .................................. 45
Trade winds .................................................. 96
Tradition ..................................................... 1, 4
Transports ................................................... 22, 24, 26, 30, 61, 65, 68, 144
Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle ............................... 73, 133
Treaty of Paris, 1763 ..................................... 80, 81
Treaty of Utrecht .......................................... 21, 27, 83
Treaty of 1763 ............................................. 144
Treaty of Westminster ................................... 110
Tree – "Dead Tree to which Columbus is said to have moored his vessels" ......................... 6
Trelawney, Governor of Jamaica ....................... 31
Trevor, Captain ............................................ 43
Trinidad, vessel of Magellan ............................ 7
Truce, Flag of .............................................. 25
"True Marine style" ....................................... 87
Trumpets ..................................................... 9
Tryon, Governor .......................................... 147
Tun Tavern, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania ........................................... 75
Turtle............................................................................................... 152
Tyger, American privateer............................................................... 80
Tyng, Edward, Captain...................................................................... 68

Un Corra, Sons of.............................................................................. 96
Uniform - of Colonial Navy.............................................................. 150
Uniform of Spotswood's and Gooch's Marines................................. 36-37
Union - "development of the Union"................................................ 30, 56
"Unite, all and conquer"................................................................. 150
"Unite or Die"..................................................................................... 90, 148
United States Marines...................................................................... 105
University, Brown, See Brown University.
University of California.................................................................... 99
University of Georgia....................................................................... 103

Vache, Isle of..................................................................................... 45
"Valor and discipline"...................................................................... 133
Vane, Charles - Pirate......................................................................... 114
Vasco de Gama Club.......................................................................... 107
Venetian............................................................................................. 97
Vera Cruz............................................................................................ 64
Vergennes......................................................................................... 115
Vernon, Edward, Vice-Admiral. 11, 30, 38, 39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 45, 48, 50, 52, 54, 55, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 124, 125, 127, 128, 131, 134, 136.
Vessels - "American built vessels".................................................... 109
Victoria, Vessel of Magellan.............................................................. 7
Vikings............................................................................................... 4, 94
Vilgerdsson, Floki............................................................................... 4
Vineyard Passage.............................................................................. 13
Vinland.............................................................................................. 4, 5, 94, 95
Virgin Islands................................................................................... 5
"Virginia Expedition" during Bacon's Rebellion......................... 111
Virginia Military Institute................................................................. 111
"Virginia Rebellion"....................................................................... 115
Volunteers......................................................................................... 138
Voyage around the world by Drake............................................... 8

"Wages" of an officer......................................................................... 44
Waistcoats, brown linen - of Gooch's Marines................................ 37
Wales............................................................................................... 4, 97
Walker, Hoveden, Sir Vice-Admiral............................................... 25, 113
Wallace, D.D.................................................................................... 101
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Waller, Littleton Waller Tazewell, Major (later Major General), U.S. Marine Corps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52, 53</td>
<td>Walls, scaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61, 133</td>
<td>Walthenham Harbour (Guantanamo Bay, Cuba).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Walton, Colonel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Want or Wanton – Pirate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>War vessels of the American Colonies. See Colonial Warships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>Ward, Richard, Governor of Rhode Island.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>&quot;Warfare of words&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68, 69, 133</td>
<td>Warren, Peter, Commodore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Warren, Radcliffe, Lieutenant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10, 103, 104, 122</td>
<td>Washington City.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Washington, George – Birthday of in 1770.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35, 39, 47, 48, 60, 104, 117, 119, 120, 124, 125, 128, 133</td>
<td>Washington, Laurence (Lawrence).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>Washington, Martha.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>Washington, State of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Watch Hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 97</td>
<td>Watling Island (San Salvador or Guanahani).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Watson, Captain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Weems, &quot;Parson&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, 96, 97</td>
<td>Welsh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71, 139</td>
<td>Wentworth, American privateer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43, 44, 50, 51, 55, 58, 60, 61, 62, 65, 120, 125</td>
<td>Wentworth, General.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>West Coast of United States.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>West Gulf Squadron in Civil War.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, 11, 39, 41, 44, 58, 64, 65, 69, 79, 117, 120, 121, 125</td>
<td>West Indies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>West Saint Mary's Manor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Western Hemisphere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Westminster, Treaty of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83, 145</td>
<td>&quot;Westmoreland Resolves&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 77, 79</td>
<td>Whale boats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151</td>
<td>&quot;Whaling service&quot; Nantucket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30, 67, 147</td>
<td>Whipple, Abraham, Captain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>White Flag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>White Indians.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>Whitefield, Preacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Whitfield, Lieutenant Colonel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Whiting, Colonel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>&quot;Wig with two curls&quot; – part of American Colonial Naval Uniform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrase</td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilderness, The (Civil War)</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willet, N. L.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William, American privateer</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William, King</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William - King William's War</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William III, Prince of Orange</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William and Mary College</td>
<td>116, 118, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williamsburg, Virginia</td>
<td>116, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windward Passage</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wineland (America)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winslow, John, Captain</td>
<td>39, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winthrop, Governor</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wofford College, Spartanburg, South Carolina</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wolf, British Warship</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wolfe, James, General</td>
<td>78, 78, 106, 142, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woman on board Castar and Pallux</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Wonderful One Horse Shay&quot;</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodbridge, New Jersey</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wooden Swords</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodland (America)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodrop, Alexander, Captain</td>
<td>40, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wool-packs - to fill ditch</td>
<td>52, 53, 54, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worley - Pirate</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wycomico Church in Northumberland</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wynyard, Colonel</td>
<td>52, 59, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yacht</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Yankee Doodle&quot; (patriotic song)</td>
<td>74-75, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yard-arm</td>
<td>72, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow fever</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Yemassee&quot;, a novel</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yucatan</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zacharias, Captain</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE BIRTHDAY
of the
UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS

Chapter III, Volume I,
History of the United States Marine Corps

By
Major Edwin N. McClellan, U.S. Marines
Officer-in-Charge
Historical Section.

First Edition
May 5, 1925.
FORENOTE

If details concerning the participation of the Navy and Army in any operation or incident described herein do not appear, such omission occurs only because it is impracticable in a history of this character to set forth more than the work of the Marines themselves. To do more than this would extend the history beyond the scope and size planned. In many of the operations described, the Navy or the Army, or both, have been present in greater strength than the Marines, and full credit is here given for their splendid achievements.

The following form of citation is suggested if it is desired to cite, either in published works, or manuscript, any information contained herein:-

(McClellan, Hist., U.S.M.C., 1st ed., I, Ch. 3, p--)

"At no period of the naval history of the world is it probable that Marines were more important than during the War of the Revolution," wrote James Fenimore Cooper, and "the history of the Navy, even at that early day, as well as in these latter times, abounds with instances of the gallantry and self-devotion of this body of soldiers."

The first American blood of the Revolution proper was shed at Lexington on the 19th of April in the year 1775. It was none other than an officer of the Royal Marines of Great Britain - Major Pitcairn - who snapped out the order "Disperse ye Rebels," which was answered in lead with the "shot heard round the world."

Neither the Colonies nor Congress, at this time, possessed a single vessel of war; but in the merchant service there was an unlimited supply of able seamen and thousands of tons of shipping. The American veterans of Cartagena, Louisburg, Quebec, of the Battles on Lakes George and Champlain, and of the Indian Wars produced a state of American naval preparation for war that is sometimes overlooked. It must be remembered that merchant ships, whalers and other craft of the pre-Revolution period always went to sea armed and ready to defend themselves. This experience together with that gained at privateering during the various
wars and the above-mentioned expeditions, produced a group of trained sea-fighters ready to challenge British supremacy of the seas. 5

Ticonderoga and Crown Point were captured about the tenth of May. Then in order to secure command of Lake Champlain it became necessary to secure possession of an armed sloop, the Enterprize, lying at St. John's at the north end of the Lake. To effect this, a schooner, the Liberty, which lay at South Bay was armed and Benedict Arnold given its command. Arnold, although a soldier, had had considerable experience at sea, and selected soldiers who had served on the water for his sailors and Marines. Ethan Allen took command of a number of batteaux and he and Arnold sailed for St. John's to capture the British armed sloop there. Arnold was the first to arrive at St. John's and secured possession of the enemy sloop. 6 These Americans who served as Marines on the Liberty may be classed amongst our earliest Marines.

Three days after the capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, information was received at Hartford, Connecticut, "representing the garrison at Ticonderoga in a feeble state," and that "men and money" were needed. 7 Continental Congress, sitting at Philadelphia, also received appeals for assistance from these two garrisons, and resolved "that the Governor of Connecticut be requested
to send a strong reinforcement to those garrisons."

Right here is where the first American Marines appeared in our history, and the whole story is told to Silas Deane by Jesse Root in a letter dated May 25, 1775. A reinforcing expedition was immediately organized and soon left Hartford, Conn., with 500 "money escorted with Eight Marines," of Connecticut "well spirited and equipped." Arriving at Albany, additional troops joined the expedition which soon arrived at Ticonderoga after passing through territory infested by hostile Indians and treacherous renegades. No doubt these Marines, who are referred to as the "Original Eight," and others saw service on the American armed vessels operating to retain control of Lake Champlain in the summer and fall of 1775.

In this same month of May Americans along the coast annoyed the enemy war vessels wherever the opportunity showed itself. The Falcon captured two American sloops at Bedford, Mass., on May 5, 1775. The Bedford people, however, fitted out two sloops, with thirty men, and re-took the captured vessels. Later in the same month, sixty armed Americans put off in whale boats armed with three swivels, from Martha's Vineyard and captured the British armed schooner Volante, tender to the frigate Scarborough.

The capture of the British vessel Margaretta and two sloops at Machias, Me., by Jeremiah O'Brien and his thirty-five quasi-Marines armed with pitch-forks axes, and a few
firearms came in May or June, 1775. The British Marines who were killed in this fight, popularly called by some the "Lexington of the Seas," were probably the first to fall in the war afloat. The vessel was repaired and became the Machias Liberty of the Massachusetts Navy. O'Brien captured two prizes, naming them Liberty and Diligent.

On May 28, 1775, the British "armed schooner Diana, 6, Lieutenant Thomas Graves, had to be abandoned and burnt by her crew in face of the colonists," near Boston.

At the end of May, 1775, the British warship Asia entered the port of New York. The British women and children were transferred to Governor's Island and the troops sent aboard the Asia. As the troops marched to embark they were harangued by the mob of Americans, and called upon to desert. Two or three did leave the ranks with arms in their hands, were protected by the Americans, and could not be arrested.

The British armed sloop of war Falcon captured one American schooner from the West Indies, on August 9, 1775, and chased another into Gloucester Bay. A whale boat from the Falcon was sent into the Bay to capture this schooner. A group of Americans not only retained the American schooner and recaptured the other, but captured the whaleboat also.
While these were all private ventures, their military-maritime nature suggests Marines.

The Marines of the State Navies antedated the Continental Marines and thousands of them served on the many State vessels. Some of them were attached to the Katy and Washington of the Rhode Island Navy when those warships chased ashore and destroyed, on June 15, 1775, an armed tender of the British frigate Rose - the first enemy vessel captured by a public armed vessel during this war.

On July 10, 1775 forty men of South Carolina in two large and well-armed barges assisted the Georgians in a 10-gun schooner to capture a British supply ship at Savannah.

The Experiment, launched on July 19, 1775, was the first vessel of the Pennsylvania Navy. The first Marine, so far known to have enlisted in the Pennsylvania Navy, was Private Charles White, who "entered" the Franklin, commanded by Captain Nicholas Biddle, on September 22, 1775; South Carolina had vessels in commission by July, 1775; Connecticut and Massachusetts commissioned war vessels in the following month; and Virginia in December of that year. The other states (except New Jersey and Delaware which had no navies but sent out privateers) acquired naval vessels at later dates.

Came Bunker Hill on June 17th, and on July 3rd
George Washington assumed command of the Army around Boston. As additional duties, however, Washington, under orders of Congress, had "direction of the Naval Department," and well might be hailed as the "Father of the American Navy." Prior to any instructions from Congress, however, Washington had begun to commission vessels. It was Colonel John Glover of Marblehead, a man as much at home on ship as on shore, who had much to do with getting these cruisers of Washington to Sea. His men were ideal Marines for they were soldiers of sea-going habits. His men were called "Glover's Maritime Regiment," "Amphibious Regiment," and other Marine-like names.

On August 4, 1775, Washington asked Rhode Island to send a cruiser to Bermuda to secure the contents of an unguarded magazine. On September 2, 1775, he ordered the Hannah in commission at Continental expense. These vessels carried the Pine Tree Flag. The Hannah sailed on September 5th and two days later carried into Gloucester the unarmed Unity an American vessel recaptured from the British.

The first prize of a Connecticut State vessel was captured by the tiny schooner Spy. Early in October, 1775, she captured and carried into New London a large ship containing 8,000 bushels of wheat. Her Marine Officer was William Goldsmith.
On October 5th, Congress directed General Washington to secure two armed vessels from Massachusetts, place them "on the Continental risque and pay" and use them to capture two unescorted brigs loaded with munitions of war that had sailed from England. He was also instructed to give orders for the "proper encouragement to the Marines and seamen" that served on the vessels. This was the first time Continental Congress ever mentioned "Marines." Washington soon gathered together a fleet from the Navies of the New England States. The vessels were manned by crews, including Marines, taken from his Army and flew the Pine Tree Flag. On October 13, 1775, General Washington wrote his brother that he had "fitted out" and was "fitting out several privateers with soldiers who have been bred to the sea." Once on board, however, they belonged to the Naval service, then administered by General Washington, and in many instances there are references to the Marines serving on the Hannah, Hancock, Lee, Lynch, Warren, Franklin, Harrison and Washington. Floating batteries were also used in the Charles River. The duty performed by these vessels had considerable effect in forcing the British to evacuate Boston on March 17, 1776, and thus the Marines shared in that success.

The experience of Washington in Manning the vessels of this fleet was similar to that of the Fathers of the
British Navy - soldiers were not Marines unless trained and accustomed to the ways of the sea. In one case some of Washington's soldiers ordered aboard ship as Marines were unwilling to serve afloat as they had enlisted for land duty, not for duty afloat as Marines. 45

On December 1, 1775, we read in a letter of Colonel S. Moylan at Cambridge, Mass., to William Watson, at Plymouth, that "that mutinous spirit which reigns through the Marines and sailors, makes the General [Washington] despair of your being able to effect this to any purpose." 46

General Washington at Cambridge, Mass., in a letter to President of Congress dated December 4, 1775, which was read before Congress December 13, 1775, wrote that "the plague, trouble, and vexation I have had with the crews of all the armed vessels, is inexpressable. I do believe there is not on earth a more disorderly set. Every time they come into port we hear of nothing but mutinous complaints. Manly's success has lately, and but lately, quieted his people. The crews of the Washington and Harrison have actually deserted them; so that I have been under the necessity of ordering the agent to lay the latter up, and get hands for the other on the best terms he could." 47

Thus in the American naval service, as in the
British service, the practice of using land soldiers as Marines was tried, and failed lamentably. Gradually, however, the right men were selected and efficient Marine Guards disciplined and trained for these vessels.

Washington's Fleet around Boston, the armed vessels on Lake Champlain, and the war vessels of some of the State Navies, all antedated the beginning of the Continental or regular Navy.

On August 26, 1775, the Rhode Island Legislature in writing instructed its representatives in Congress to propose the establishment of a Navy "at the Continental expense." The question of forming a Navy was first brought to the attention of Congress on October 3, 1775, when these Rhode Island members presented their instructions. It was not until October 5, 1775, that a Committee, formed of John Adams, John Langdon and Silas Deane, was appointed and General Washington given the orders, already referred to, regarding the use of two State ships. Then on October 13, 1775, Congress directed that two vessels be fitted out. On this date a Naval Committee of three was appointed. On October 30 two more vessels were ordered to be fitted out, and the Naval Committee increased to seven members of which John Adams was one. This Committee was called "the Committee for fitting out armed vessels," occasionally the "Marine Committee" but more frequently the "Naval Committee."
this was the beginning of the Continental or Regular Navy and Corps of Marines as far as materiel is concerned. But these resolutions of Congress did not provide, properly speaking, for an American Navy. Many preliminary details had to be arranged before Congress would be ready to take the important step of establishing a Navy as a branch of the public service. As we shall see, this was done on December 22, 1775, when the first officers were actually commissioned by Congress.

On November 2, 1775, Congress authorized the Naval Committee to "agree with such officers and seamen as are proper to man and command the four vessels - Alfred, Columbus, Cabot and Andrea Doria - that had been authorized. It is known that the Naval Committee agreed with Essek Hopkins as Commander-in-Chief, on November 5, 1775, with Samuel Nicholas, as the Captain of Marines for the Alfred, and Isaac Craig as Lieutenant of Marines for the Andrea Doria, about the same time. However, Congress confirmed the "agreements" of the two Marine Officers with signed commissions long before it confirmed the "agreement" with Hopkins. Nicholas was commissioned November 28, 1775, Craig the next day and Hopkins not until December 22, 1775. John Paul Jones wrote that his commission, as a Lieutenant, bore date of December 7, 1775, but no evidence is available at this time to justify that claim.
Ships of war and officers and crews for them having been authorized by Congress, it only remained for the personnel to be actually appointed or enlisted.

By every Resolution of Congress, concerning the manning of the new vessels of the Continental Navy, Congress had authorized Marines, for Marines in those days were as necessary to a warship as its mainmast. Even in America, Marines had become well established. The Revolution of November 10, 1775, did not, therefore, bring American Marines into being, but it did bring a Corps of Marines into existence. As we shall later see, the Corps was really organized for expeditionary purposes under naval jurisdiction.

The efficiency and fighting qualities of those earliest of American Marines, enlisted in 1740 to serve under the British Flag and who wore the camlet coats, brown linen waist-coats and canvas trousers, had not been forgotten. They were a Corps of expeditionary Marines. Indeed the value of the early American oversea Soldiers, those "Salty Birds," who were as much at home afloat as ashore and who had served in the many over-seas expeditions, north and south, with the British Marines and those who had served on the Colonial American privateers was well appreciated by Congress. Frequent notices appearing in American newspapers about the British Marines...
and of their courage at Lexington, Boston, Bunker Hill and Quebec and other places, were cited by those who had faith in the value of a Corps of Marines.

The presence of the strong body of Pennsylvania State Marines right before the eyes of Congress in Philadelphia also had an effect. Indeed, according to John Adams, "the Congress and the Assembly" of Pennsylvania made an excursion on September 22, 1775, down the Delaware River on the Washington, Effingham, Franklin, Dickinson, Otter, and Bull Dog, of the Pennsylvania Navy and had a splendid opportunity to observe these Pennsylvania Marines.

Members of Congress again on September 28, 1775, "dined by invitation on board of the Row Gallies which sailed down to the Chevaux de Frize near Mud Island and up to Point-no-Point." John Adams was the leader in bringing about the organization of Marines and wrote many letters about this branch of the Naval service. He is often referred to as the Father of the Marine Corps.

These Pennsylvania State Marines served both as infantry and artillery and gave Washington his artillery leader at the Battle of Trenton.

It was not the intended acquisition of Federal warships that impressed Congress with the necessity of legislating for an organization of a Corps of Continental Marines, for if sea service only were expected of the
Marines an organization of them, while desirable, would not have been necessary. A complete regiment of Marines officered "as usual in other regiments" meant only one thing - expeditionary duty under naval jurisdiction. Clark wrote that "it was not long before this patriotic body discovered the great utility, in a large extent of sea-coast, of a Corps of soldiers trained to serve both on land and at sea." The absolute necessity of establishing and maintaining a body of men who should combine the duties of the trained sailor and of the disciplined soldier, met with the ready recognition and approval of the Fathers of the country.

There is a date that is celebrated every year by American Marines wherever they are stationed throughout the world. It is November Tenth - the Birthday of the United States Marine Corps. The Marines could claim a date in May, 1775, or one in October, 1775, but this date of November 10th is when first "personnel" for the Corps of Marines - or in fact for the naval service - was expressly authorized. On that date in 1775, Congress resolved:

That two battalions of Marines be raised, consisting of one Colonel, two Lieutenant Colonels, two Majors, and other officers as usual in other regiments; and that they consist of an equal number of privates with other battalions; that particular care be taken, that no persons be appointed to office, or enlisted into said Battalions, but
such as are good seamen, or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve to advantage by sea when required: that they be enlisted and commissioned to serve for and during the present War between Great Britain and the Colonies, unless dismissed by order of Congress: that they be distinguished by the names of the First and Second battalions of American Marines, and that they be considered as part of the number which the Continental Army before Boston is ordered to consist of. 64

This legislative authority for Marines left no doubt as to their character. They were to be soldiers selected from the Army of Washington who were "good seamen or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve with advantage by sea when required." In short, it was a regiment of Sea Soldiers, serving under Naval authority, to be used for expeditionary purposes and "when required" as Marine Detachments aboard ships of war. 63

This is the only instance where Congress provided that the Corps of Marines should be divided into organizations. Thus the action of Continental Congress in 1775 acted similar to Congress' action under the Constitution. First, Congress authorized ships, and officers, seamen and Marines, for them, and finally authorized an organization of Marines.

At first the enlistment period was for the war; later this was changed to include the period up to January 1, 1777 and after that the enlistment was for a stated term.
No more convincing proof that land soldiers are unfitted to serve as Marines, without special selection and training, is afforded than that given by George Washington in his letters to Congress. Washington received orders to supply the personnel for this Corps of Marines with dismay and informed Congress on November 19, 1775, that to supply them would "break through the whole system," in his Army which had "cost us so much time, anxiety, and pains, to bring into any tolerable form." This was because the Marines "must be acquainted with maritime affairs," wrote Washington, and because he would have to pick the Marines "out of the whole Army, one from this Corps, one from another." He recommended that the Marines be raised "in New York and Philadelphia." It was quite apparent that Washington had learned much about Sea Soldiers from his experiences with manning his vessels around Boston. He could not send an "intact" regiment of his Army to the Marines - he must carefully select men and even after that, intelligent training would be necessary before a regiment of Marines would be available. What a remarkable fact - Washington's entire army would have to be disrupted to obtain two battalions of Marines!

Then on November 28, 1775, Washington wrote Congress that an "insuperable obstruction" consisted in the im-
possibility of getting the men to enlist for the "continuance of the war." On December 8, 1775, John Hancock, President of Congress, wrote George Washington that Congress had "relieved" his "difficulties with respect to the two battalions of Marines, having ordered that the raising them out of the Army be suspended." The President wrote further that it was the "desire of Congress that such a body of forces may be raised, but their meaning is that it be in addition to the Army voted," and that Congress expected Washington to "think of proper persons to command that Corps and give orders for enlisting them wherever they may be found." On December 14th, not having received the letter of the 8th, General Washington wrote the President of Congress, "I am at a loss to know whether I am to raise the two battalions of Marines here or not." On December 19th General Washington wrote Congress that "you have removed all the difficulties which I labored under about the two battalions of Marines. I shall obey the orders of Congress in looking out for proper officers to command that Corps."

On January 4, 1776, Washington again wrote the President of Congress that "Congress will think me a little remiss, I fear, when I inform them that I have done nothing yet towards raising the battalion of Marines." Washington had ample excuse for this reluctance and procrastination.
for he had twenty-six incomplete regiments at the time. His views evidently prevailed for Congress soon directed that the Marines be raised from a source other than from his Army.

All this time, however, the Continental Marines had been in existence and were working out their own salvation. The unwillingness or inability of George Washington to give up sufficient personnel for the organization of the two battalions had no retarding effect upon the appointment of officers or the enlisting of Marines. Samuel Nicholas received a commission as Captain of Marines signed by John Hancock on November 28, 1775, the date of the Rules for the Regulation of the Navy. Isaac Craig the next day received a commission as Lieutenant of Marines. One of the earliest muster rolls of Marines is that of Captain Isaac Craig's Company, dated December 19, 1775, that served on the Andrea Doria. It contains 44 names, and shows nine of them having enlisted on December 9, 1775. The Muster Roll of the Alfred which went into commission on December 3, 1775, with Captain Samuel Nicholas commanding her Marines, will show Marines existed at a very early date.

As events turned out the Colonel, the two Lieutenant-Colonels, one of the Majors, and the Staff Officers were not appointed. The highest ranking officer* of Marines
serving during the Revolution was Major Samuel Nicholas, who after active service with Hopkins' fleet and in the Battles of Trenton, (Assanpink) and Princeton, performed duties at the Capital that correspond more or less to those of the Commandant today and in addition acted at various times as Muster Master for the Navy. 77

The "First and Second Battalions of American Marines," were never actually organized and named as such. When the emergency or demand arose for the use of Marines, provisional units, from a squad to a battalion, were organized as has been the custom in the Marine Corps from that time on. When a vessel of the Navy went into commission a Marine Guard was formed and marched on board. When the object for which the provisional unit was organized had been accomplished, or a vessel no longer required a Marine Guard, the unit was disbanded and the officers and men used for other purposes.

After the Resolution of the 10th establishing a Corps of Marines, Naval legislation moved rapidly in Congress. On November 5, 1775, the Naval Committee had appointed Esek Hopkins, as Commander-in-Chief of the Fleet. However, this "appointment" was not confirmed with a commission from Congress until December 22, 1775. He was the first Commander-in-Chief of the American
On November 25, 1775, Congress enacted some very important naval legislation, which in John Adams' opinion was "the true origin and foundation of the American Navy," and in producing which he "had at least as great a share" as "any man living."

The Rules for the Regulation of the Navy were adopted by Congress on November 28, 1775, the date that John Hancock signed Captain Nicholas' commission. On the same date Congress used for the first time the term "Navy of the United Colonies." It was not until December 2, 1775, that the form of a commission for naval officers was adopted by Congress; but notwithstanding this, the commission of Captain Samuel Nicholas dated November 28, 1775, is in existence.

On December 2, Congress authorized two more vessels. On December 5, 1775, Congress fixed the compensation of recaptors; two days later Congress established grades of midshipman, armorer, sailmaker, yeoman, quartermaster, quarter gunner, cook and coxswain; on December 13, the wages of able-bodied seamen were raised to $8.00 a month; and on the 22d the salary of the Commander-in-Chief of the Navy was fixed at $125.00 a month.
Thus, by December 22, 1775, and not until then, do we have all the necessary elements to form a Navy. An officerless Navy is not a Navy and there were no naval officers (excluding Marine officers) commissioned by Congress until December 22, 1775. The Naval Committee had agreed upon several, such as Hopkins in November, but only Congress could commission them. Spears wrote that "of all the dates in American history not yet so commemorated, there is none so well worthy of recognition as a national holiday as the 22d of December; for it was on December 22, 1775, that the American Navy came into existence." On that date the Naval Committee laid before Congress a list of the officers they had agreed with and they were accordingly commissioned.

Thus did the American Navy and the Corps of American Marines first appear in our history.
NOTES.

CHAPTER III.


2. Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 62, 195; A.&N. Reg., August 25, 1906, Article by Col. T. M. Wood, U.S.M.C.; Pitcairn had been "Military Commandant at Boston," and "had endeared himself to the people;" (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 166); Major Pitcairn had been detached by General Gage to assist in preventing the accumulation of military stores at Concord. (Colburn's United Service and Nav. and Mil. Journal, DXLVII, June, 1784, 208-209).


4. In the merchant service there were 15,000 seamen and 198,000 tons of shipping (Humphrey's Works, 49, cited in Clark, Naval Hist., I, 13-14).
5. See Chapter II.

6. National and Civil Hist. of Vermont, II, 36-39, citing Gordon, Hist. of American War, I, 335; It is said that Fort William Henry was also captured about this time. (Hist. of N.Y. During the Rev. War, I, 550-551); Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 161-162, states that the sloop 470 tons) was renamed Enterprise and the small schooner seized from Major Skene, the Liberty; further that early in 1776 Continental Congress had offered the position of "Commodore on the Lakes" to Major William Douglas, pending whose acceptance Captain Jacobus Wynkoop was recognized as Commodore until August when he was superseded by Benedict Arnold; John Lendrum in his Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 312, wrote "they took, also, two small vessels," and "obtained command of Lake Champlain."; Jones, Hist. N. Y. During Rev. War, I, 547; Gordon, Hist., Amer. Rev., II, 13-15; Clowes in his "Royal Navy," III, 356 writes that the wind failed Arnold when (in the schooner) still 30 miles from St. John's and Arnold with thirty men pulled throughout the night, surprised and captured St. John's and a sloop and destroyed everything else that could float; R. Lamb, in his Journal of Occurrences During the Late American War, 73-75, wrote that Arnold armed a schooner lying at South Bay and captured the sloop at St. John's and obtained command of Lake Champlain; D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924; Channing, Hist., U.S., III, 174-175; Lucas, Hist., Canada, 101-102; Mehan, Major Operations of the Navy in War of Amer. Independence, 8-9; Carrington, Battles of the Amer. Rev., 119-120; Stedman, Hist. Amer. War, I, 132; Neff, Army and Navy, Amer., 234.


10. See Conn. Hist. Soc., II, 246, Barnabas Deane to Silas Deane, showing Arnold had two vessels; See Hist. of Conn., II, 170; Arnold's appointment dated May 3, 1775,
10. (Continued) authorized him to capture "the vessel" upon "the Lake" (T. Jones, Hist., New York During Rev. War, I, 546-547); Hutchinson, Illustrated Hist., Washington & His Times, 177-178, describes the capture of a sloop of war at St. John's "and thus obtained the command of Lake Champlain, by the capture of the first vessel that ever belonged to the American Navy"; See Mrs. Martha J. Lamb, Hist. of the City of New York, II, 29, for capture of this "only British vessel on Lake Champlain."; See Kingsford, Hist. of Canada, V, 415-416, for capture of this vessel.

11. Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 110-111; See also Banks, Hist., Martha's Vineyard, I, 331-332; Paullin, Navy, Amer. Rev., 339.


15. The British at Halifax sent the Diligent (or Diligence) and the Tapnaquish (or Tapanagouche or Tapualuish) to avenge capture of Margaretta. About the middle of July, 1775, the Machias Liberty captured Diligent and the Tapnaquish was captured by army troops (Mass. Mag., III, 45-46; See also Frost, Book of Navy, 18-19); In September, 1775, Peter Clark was "Commander of Marines" on Diligent. (Mass. Mag., III, 45-46); Maclay, Hist., Amer. Priv., 60-61, states O'Brien in Unity and the Portland Packet on July 12, 1775, captured these two vessels and re-named them Machias Liberty and Diligence.

17. Clowes, Royal Navy, IV, 3; See also Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 109-110, and the same for fighting on Hog and Noddle's Islands, Boston Harbor, in May, 1775.


20. D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924; The action of Continental Congress in authorizing Marines has "been justified from the first combat in the Revolution with the British Naval forces on the coast of Maine." (Pearson, Printer, Information Regarding U.S.M.C., 1875, 3).

21. The Experiment was the first vessel launched of the Pa. Navy on July 19, 1775 (Pa. Arch., Ser. 2, I, 229); The first Marine so far known to have enlisted in the Pa. Navy was Pvt. Charles White who entered Franklin (Capt. Nicholas Biddle) on September 22, 1775. (Pa. Arch., Ser. 2, I, 297); D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924.

22. The Katy was purchased by the Government and renamed Providence (Greenwood, John Manley, XIX-XXIII); "so early as June the Rhode Island Assembly authorized two vessels to be fitted out at the expense of the Colony for the 'protection of its trade,' which were cruising before July." (Barry, Hist. of Mass., 57-59, citing Staple, Annals of Providence, 265; Spark, Washington, III, 77, 516; and Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260); D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924.

23. See also American Monthly Mag., February, 1909, XXXIV, No. 2, 160-161; Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 80, 464; Mil. and Naval Mag., II, 360-361; Staples, Annals of Providence, 265; But see Note 6, that says first vessel was captured on Lake Champlain in May, 1775; See in this connection Harper, Encyc. of U.S. Hist., X, 336; D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924; The Rhode Island Assembly on June 12, 1775, "authorized two vessels to be fitted out." (Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262); The Washington of the R.I. Navy had a crew of 80 men exclusive of officers; the Katy had a crew of 30 men. (Field, Esek Hopkins, 63-64).


28. New Hampshire's only naval undertaking was her participation in the Penobscot Expedition, 1779. She contributed the *Hampden* which was captured by the British. (N.H. Arch., VIII, 106, 186, 195); In March, 1776, the N.H. House of Reps., appointed a Committee of three to look out for an armed vessel to guard the coast. It is not believed that any vessels were procured. (Paullin, *Navy Amer. Rev.*, 476); For Georgia Navy see Paullin, *Navy Amer. Rev.*, 459-462.

29. "Our Own Battle of Marathon" (Everett, *First Battles of the Rev.*, 53).

30. Journals of Congress, February 29, 1776, provided that "an addition of 34 dollars a month be added to the pay of Joseph Reed, Esq., Secretary to General Washington, on account of the extraordinary services at present attending that office by reason of the General's direction of the Naval Department." (Clark, *Naval Hist., U.S.*, II, 36); In this connection the following Resolution of Congress of July 26, 1780, is of interest: "The Trumbull, Confederacy, and Deane, frigates, with the Saratoga, sloop of war, were put under the direction of General Washington to be employed in co-operating with the French Fleet." A report of August 7, 1780, also refers to the same subject. (Clark, *Naval Hist. U.S.*, II, 75-76); D.A.R. *Mag.*, November, 1924.


37. Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262; See Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 356-357, 368, 370; The Spy was originally the Britannia and was purchased as a "spy-vessel." (Paullin, Navy, Amer. Rev., 356-357); On July 1, 1775, Connecticut authorized two armed vessels to be fitted out.

39. Secret Journals Congress, I, 29; Clarke, (1813), Naval Hist. U.S., 52; Clark, Naval Hist. U.S., I, 22; D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924, publishes photo of this Resolution of October 5, 1775; See also Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262.

40. The Military and Naval Magazine, U.S., II, No. 6, February, 1824, 360-361; For Birthday of the Army See D.A.R. Mag., November, 1919, Nav. Inst. Proc., February, 1922, 171; Writing from Cambridge on January 4, 1776 Washington informed Joseph Reed that: We "hoisted the Union flag, in compliment to the United Colonies" the same day "which gave being to the new Army." (Force, Amer. Arch., 4th, IV, 570-571); On January 1, 1776 "the very day Congress determined" to "govern apart from the Militia and Minute Men, the little handful of soldiers it had directly raised," there "was raised over Boston Camp," the Cambridge Flag. (Ganoe, Hist., U.S. Army, 20); An order of George Washington, January 1, 1776 stated that "this day gave commencement to the New Army, which in every point of view is continental." (Ad. Chester in Nav. Inst. Proc.).


42. Greenwood, John Manley, 9.

43. Journals of Congress, October 4, 1776; See also David Ramsay, M.D., Hist., Amer. Rev., 224-225; Grimshaw, Hist. of U.S., 113-114; Preble, Hist.
43. (Continued) of Flag, 202-204; Gordon, Hist., Amer. Rev., II, 144-145; Some soldiers were unwilling to serve afloat as they had enlisted only for the Army and not as Marines (Greenwood, Captain John Manly, 13-14); D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924; See Nav. Inst. Proc., April, 1913, 821-823, for account of a fight of the Franklin and the famous exclamation of her commander, Captain James Mugford, of "Do not give up the vessel!"; Washington's Fleet was organized at Continental expense (Waite, Origin of the Amer. Navy, 20); See also Marshall, Life of Washington, II, letter of John Adams, cited in Works of Adams, X, 513; "Washington had the entire management of this fleet" (Clark, Stevens, Alden, Krafft, Short Hist., Navy, 10-11); Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 387.

44. Preble, Hist. Flag, 202-204.

45. Greenwood, John Manly, 13-14; On November 29, 1775, William Watson wrote from Plymouth to General Washington that the crew of the brigantine Washington were in "general, discontented and have agreed to do no duty on board said vessel; and say that they enlisted to serve in the Army and not as Marines." (Waite, Origin, Amer. Navy, 20; Amer. Archives, 4th Series, III).

46. Force, Amer. Arch. 4th Series, IV, 152; In November, 1775, Washington wrote that "our rascally privateers-men go on at the old rate, mutinying if they can not do as they please." (Ford, Writings of Washington, Washington to Joseph Reed, November 20, 1775, referred to in Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 64).


48. The State Navies also had similar experiences. The Minerva of the Connecticut Navy was ready for sea by October, 1775, but could not carry out the first mission assigned it for "all the hands or soldiers and Marines on board, except about 10 or 12," utterly "declined and refused to obey" the orders and "perform said cruises." (Colonial Records of Conn. XV, 176).


52. Spears, Hist. of Our Navy, I, 30; "The first official step towards the formation of a National American Navy was taken on October 13, 1775, when the Continental Congress ordered" two swift vessels to be equipped. (Benjamin, Naval Academy, 17).


54. Nicolas, Historical Record, Royal Marine Forces, I, 18; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 88; D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924.

55. New York Gazette & Weekly Mercury, October 2 and October 16, 1775.
56. "As early as the 4th of July, 1775, the attention of the Committee of Safety of Pennsylvania was directed to the defence of the Delaware River and on the 6th of the same month a sub-committee ** was appointed to attend to the construction of boats* * * for its defence." (Pa. Arch., Ser. 2, I, 239 et seq.; Maclay, Hist. Amer. Privateers, 75-76); The first Marine Officer of the Pennsylvania Navy was Captain William Brown, who was appointed some date prior to January 18, 1776. (Pa. Arch., Ser. 2, I, 475, and V, 37, 106); The first ship - the Experiment - was launched July 19, 1775, and the next - the Bull Dog - one week later. (Pa. Arch., Ser. 2, I, 239, et seq.); "John Wharton built a sort of gun-boat," called the Calevat, and Emanuel Eyre another gunboat named Bulldog. (Scharf and Westcott, Hist., Phila., I, 299-300); "This was the commencement of the Pennsylvania State Navy, antedating three months the first legislation of Congress (October 13, 1775) in regard to a Navy."; D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924. (Pa. Arch., Ser. 2, I, 239, et seq.).

57. Diary of Richard Smith in Letters of Members of the Cont. Cong., (Burnett), I, 209; also John Adams Diary, Id., 210; D.A.R. Mag., November, 1924; "Many cheveux de frize are sunk in the channel about 9 miles below the city, and the gallies are in readiness to defend them." (Drowne to Father, October 16, 1775 in Penna. Mag. Hist. & Biog., XLVIII, 1924, No. 23, 241-242); Adams, Life of John Adams, I, 260-262.

58. On November 5, 1775, John Adams, in Philadelphia, wrote Warren whether he thought "two or three battalions of Marines could be easily enlisted in our Province." (Warren-Adams Letters, I, 174, 182; Manuscript Letters, John Adams, Mass. Hist. Soc.; Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 51), of Massachusetts, and on the 14th of the same month Warren replied that "at least three battalions might be raised in this Colony." (Id.); On the same date that he addressed his letter to Warren, John Adams wrote to Elbridge Gerry that he was "to inquire what number of seamen may be found in our Province, who would probably enlist in the service, either as Marines or on board of armed vessels, in the pay of the Continent or in the pay of the Province, or on board of privateers, fitted out by private adventurers." (Works of John Adams, IX, 363); "The Naval Committee will be in want of seamen and Marines." (Correspondence of Silas Deane, in Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., II, 332).
61. "Before the formation of the Navy, before a single American vessel went into commission in the Revolutionary War, Congress wisely provided for the establishment of a Corps of Marines. This action was based on the experience of all naval powers, even back to the earliest days of Persian warfare and of Grecian naval conflicts. The absolute necessity of establishing and maintaining a body of men who should combine the duties of the trained sailor and of the disciplined soldier, met with the ready recognition and approval of the Fathers of the country." (J.L. Pearson, Printer, Information regarding U.S.M.C., 1875, 3).


63. On December 20, 1874, at the Boston Navy Yard, Captain S.B. Luce, U.S.N., wrote that "the United States Marine Corps has well sustained the high reputation for steadfast courage and loyalty which has been handed down to it from the days of Themistocles. But like their modern proto-types of Great Britain, they have felt the want of proper appreciation. In the Resolution of Congress of November 10, 1775, to raise two battalions to be called 'First and Second Battalions of American Marines,' it was enjoined that 'no person be enlisted into said battalions but such as are good seamen, or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve with advantage by sea;' clearly showing that our legislators of that day, at least, had little conception of the nature of a properly organized Marine Corps." (Aldrich, Hist. U.S.M.C., 30); Even Paullin, the Prince of Naval researchers, went wrong on this when he wrote: "Such a requirement" of Congress in providing that Marines be "able to serve to advantage by sea when required" seems "to overlook the fact that the duties of Marines are military in character rather than naval." (Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 43); However, it would appear that Continental
63. (Continued)
Congress had an excellent idea as to "Sea Soldiers," for it directed these Marines to be those soldiers of Washington's Army who were "so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve with advantage at sea."

64. Journals of Congress; Greenwood, Captain John Manley, XIX-XXIII; Rear Admiral George M. Belknap in a paper called "The Old Navy" which he read on January 5, 1897, said that this Resolution was "the first step in the creation of the Navy." (Naval Actions and History, 1799-1898, 19 - Papers of the Mil. Hist. Soc. of Mass., XII). Rear Admiral Colby M. Chester in an Article entitled "The United States Marines in the Penobscot Bay Expedition, 1779," published in the Marine Corps Gazette of December, 1918, 290 wrote: "Anyone who is at all familiar with 'the way we have in the Navy' can picture to himself the performance of this gallant Corps of Marine troops, the first regular military organization the country ever possessed, the two regiments which composed the Corps having been organized by a Resolution of the Colonial Congress in the year 1775, soon after General Washington had been authorized by this same authority to assume command of the State militia, which formed the Army of the rebelling colonies;" Cooper, in his Hist. of the Navy, I, 293, wrote that "aware of the importance of such a body of men, on the tenth of November, 1775, or before any regular cruiser had yet got to sea, Congress passed a Resolution establishing a Marine Corps." See Works of John Adams, III, 10; Maclay, Hist. of Navy, I, 37; Rear Admiral W. V. Pratt in Nav. Inst. Proc., July, 1924, 1, 126, wrote that "The Marine Corps is the oldest service;" Pearson, Printer, Information in Regard U.S.M.C., (1875), 4; "The Marines are a proud service, incidentally older in organization than either the Army or Navy. When the Navy consisted of privateers and 'Washington's Cruisers' and the Army consisted of individual State troops, the Marine Corps was under Federal organization." (Wash. Herald, March 13, 1925); the Marine Corps "was organized as the first body of regular troops authorized by the Colonial Congress, under a resolution to establish two full battalions of Marines to be composed as far as practicable of
64. (Continued)

able seamen." (Admiral Chester in M.C. Gaz., Decem-
ber, 1918, 285); "The Marines are clannish. They
are all for one and one for all. They keep alive,
as no other military organization does, the memory
of those who have passed over. These Marines have
a beautiful thought which they seldom express in
public. It is that their Corps is a living thing
that never dies; that it has a Soul - the Spirit of
their Departed - a cloud of witnesses who to their
Country and their Corps have been Ever Faithful."
(D.A.R. Mag., March, 1925, 155); the Marine Corps
"is the right arm of the State Department" and
"Presidential Troops." (Admiral Hugh Rodman in
Leatherneck, January 10, 1925, 2); Marines are
"Presidential Troops." (D.A.R. Mag., March 25,
1925, 158; Leatherneck, April 11, 1925, 5); Parlia-
ment provided for 4,354 British Marines in 1775
(Naval Chronology by Isaac Schomberg, I, 420);

65. Letter Comdt. M.C., to Sec. Navy, April 17, 1816;
Marine Corps Gazette, March, 1922, 68.

66. Marines were authorized for the frigates in 1794
and were not gathered into a Corps until 1798.

67. Journals of Congress, December 5, 1775; Clark,
Naval Hist., U.S., (1813), 56; Clark, Naval Hist.

68. Journals of Congress, November 10, 30, 1775; Ford,
Writings of Washington, III, 225, 274, cited in
Paulin, Navy of the Amer. Rev., 43.


71. Warren-Adams Letters, I, 191; Letters of Members of
the Continental Congress, Burnett, I, 270-271.


73. Letter, George Washington, to Congress, December 19,
1775, pub. in "Official Letters to the Honourable
American Congress of General Washington. Printed
for Cadell Junior and Davies, etc., 1795," 65.


76. Penna. Mag. of Hist. and Biog., XII, 351.

77. Papers of Cont. Cong., Lib. of Cong., 78, 17, 301.

78. See Note 65.


80. Journals of Congress; "The officers, of whom the first formal appointment was made on the twenty-second of December, 1775, and included the names of Nicholas Biddle and John Paul Jones, were necessarily taken from merchant ships." ( Bancroft, Hist. U.S., IX, 134-135).


82. Spears, Hist., Navy, I, 34.


84. Journals of Congress, December 5, 1775.


87. Spears, Hist., Our Navy, I, 1, 41.

INDEX for CHAPTER III
Volume I.

Able-bodied seamen ........................................ 19
Adams, John .................................................. 9, 12, 19, 29, 30
Albany, N. Y .................................................. 3
Alfred .......................................................... 10, 17
Allen, Ethan ................................................... 2
"Amphibious Regiment" ...................................... 6, 26
Andria Dorea .................................................. 10, 17
Armorer, grade in Navy ...................................... 19
Army, Birthday ................................................ 27
Army, "new Army" ............................................ 27
Arnold, Benedict .............................................. 2, 22
Asia, British war vessel .................................... 4
Assanpink, Battle of .......................................... 18

Battle of Assanpink .......................................... 18
Battle of Princeton .......................................... 18
Battle of Trenton ............................................. 12, 18
Bedford, Mass .................................................. 3
Belknap, Geo. M ............................................... 32
Biddle, Nicholas, Captain of Navy ....................... 5, 24, 34
Birthday, Army ............................................... 27
Birthday, Marine Corps ...................................... 13
Birthday, Navy ................................................ 20
Boston, Mass .................................................. 4, 7, 9, 12, 21, 26, 27
Britannia ...................................................... 26
British Marines ............................................... 1, 11
Broughton, Nicholas ......................................... 26
Brown, William, Captain of Marines, Pa. Navy ...... 30
Bull Dog, Penna. Navy ...................................... 12, 30
Bunker Hill .................................................... 5

Cabot ........................................................... 10
Calevat of Pa. Navy ......................................... 30
Cambridge, Mass .............................................. 8, 27
Cambridge Flag ............................................... 27
Camlet coats ................................................... 11
Canvas trousers ............................................... 11
Cartagina ....................................................... 1
Carthagenians ................................................. 29
Charles River, Mass ......................................... 7
Chester, Colby M ............................................. 31, 33
Chevaux de Frize ........................................... 12, 30
Clark, Thomas, Naval Historian ........................... 13
Columbus ....................................................... 10
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Commandant of the Marine Corps</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander-in-Chief of the Fleet</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander-in-Chief of the Navy</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission of Samuel Nicholas</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concord, Mass</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confederacy</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecticut</td>
<td>2, 3, 5, 6, 26, 27, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental Congress, first mentions &quot;Marines&quot;</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook, grade in Navy</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooper, James Fenimore</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coxswain, grade in Navy</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Craig, Isaac</td>
<td>10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crown Point</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawes, William</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deane, frigate</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deane, Barnabas</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deane, Silas</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware, colony of</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware River</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diana, British war vessel</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dickinson, Pa. Navy</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diligent</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diligence</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Do not give up the vessel&quot;</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas, Major William</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effingham, of Pa. Navy</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlistment period of Marines</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>2, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ever Faithful&quot;</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experiment</td>
<td>5, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expeditionary duty of Marines</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyre, Emanuel</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falcon, British war vessel</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Father of the American Navy&quot; Washington as</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Father of the Marine Corps&quot; John Adams as</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag, Cambridge</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag, Pine Tree</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag, &quot;Union Flag&quot;</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floating Batteries</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort William Henry</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franklin, of Pa. Navy</td>
<td>5, 12, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franklin of Washington's Fleet</td>
<td>7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French Fleet</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gage, General</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgians</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerry, Elbridge</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gloucester, Mass</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gloucester Bay, Mass</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glover, Col. John</td>
<td>6, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldsmith, William, Marine officer of Spy</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Governor's Island, N.Y</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graves, Lieut. Thos. of British Navy</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grecian naval conflicts</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hampden of N.H. Navy</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hancock, John</td>
<td>7, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannah</td>
<td>6, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harrison</td>
<td>7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hartford, Conn.</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island, Mass</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopkins, Esek</td>
<td>10, 18, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Wars</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jones, John Paul</td>
<td>10, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katy R.I. Navy (later Providence, Reg. Navy)</td>
<td>5, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake Champlain</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 9, 22, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake George</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Langdon, John</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lee</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lexington, Battle of</td>
<td>1, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Lexington of the Seas&quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liberty</td>
<td>2, 4, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louisburg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luce, Stephen</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lynch</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machias, Me</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machias Liberty</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mainmast&quot;, Marines as</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manly, John</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marblehead Marines&quot;</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marblehead, Mass</td>
<td>6, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margaretta</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marines&quot;, first mentioned in American History</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"Marines" first mentioned by Continental Congress. 7
Marine Committee ........................................... 9
"Marining" ..................................................... 7
"Maritime Regiment" ........................................ 6
Martha's Vineyard, Mass ................................. 3, 23
Massachusetts, colony ......................................... 4, 5, 7
Merchant ships .................................................. 1
Militia ............................................................... 27
Minerva ............................................................. 28
Minute Men ....................................................... 27
Midshipman, grade of in Navy .............................. 19
Moylan, Col. S. .................................................. 8
Mud Island, Pa ................................................... 12
Mugford, James .................................................. 28
Muster Master of the Navy .................................... 18
Muster Roll of Marines ....................................... 17
"Mutinous spirit" ................................................ 8
Mutiny .............................................................. 28

Naval Committee .............................................. 9, 10, 18, 20, 30
"Naval Department" under Washington .................. 6, 25
"Navy of the United Colonies" ............................... 19
Navy Regulations ............................................... 17
New Hampshire .................................................. 25
New Jersey ......................................................... 5, 25
New London, Conn ............................................... 6
New York ........................................................... 4, 15
Nicholas, Samuel (first Marine Officer) ................. 10, 17, 18, 19
Noddle's Island, Mass ......................................... 24

O'Brien, Jeremiah ................................................ 3, 4
"Original Eight" - first Marines ............................ 3
Otter, Pa. Navy ................................................... 12

Pay ................................................................. 19, 20
Pennsylvania ..................................................... 5, 12, 30
Penobscot Expedition ......................................... 25
Persian warfare ................................................. 31, 32
Philadelphia, Pa ................................................ 12, 15, 29
Pine Tree Flag .................................................. 7
Pitcairn, Major, British Marines ........................... 1, 21
Plymouth, Mass .................................................. 8
Point-no-Point, Pa .............................................. 12
Portland Packet ............................................... 23
President of the United States ............................... 19
"Presidential Troops" ......................................... 33
Princeton, Battle of ............................................. 18
"Private adventurers" ........................................... 30
"Private ventures" ............................................... 5
Privateers ................................................... 1, 5, 7, 11, 25, 28
Providence .......................................................... 24
"Provisional unit" of Marines ................................... 18

Quasi-Marines .................................................... 3
Quarter-gunner, grade in the Navy ............................... 19
Quartermaster, grade in the Navy ............................... 19
Quebec, Canada .................................................. 1, 12
Quincy, Josiah ..................................................... 29

Reed, Joseph .................................................... 25, 27, 28
Republic, First in America ....................................... 25
Revere, Paul ........................................................ 21
Renegades ........................................................ 3
"Regular Navy" ................................................... 9, 10
Regulations, Navy ................................................ 17
Rhode Island ..................................................... 3, 6, 24
Romans ............................................................. 29
Root, Jesse ........................................................ 5, 31
Rose, British frigate ............................................... 5
Rules for the Regulations of the Navy ......................... 17, 19

Sailmaker, grade in the Navy .................................... 19
"Saint Yankie's Day" ............................................. 21
"Salty-Birds" .................................................... 11
Saratoga .......................................................... 25
Savannah, Ga ..................................................... 5, 25
Scarborough, British frigate ..................................... 3
Sea-Fighters ..................................................... 2
Sea Soldiers ..................................................... 14, 32
"Shot heard round the World" ................................ 1
"Soldiers of sea-going habits" .................................. 6
"Soul of the Corps" ............................................. 33
South Bay ........................................................ 2
South Carolina ................................................... 5, 25
Spears, Naval historian .......................................... 20
"Spirit of their Departed" ...................................... 33
Spy, Connecticut Navy ........................................... 6, 27
"Spy Vessel" ................................................... 26
St. Johns .......................................................... 2, 22, 23
State Department - Marines as "Right Arm" of .............. 33

Tapnaquish .......................................................... 23
Tapnaquouche ..................................................... 23
Tapuaquish .......................................................... 23
Themistocles .......................................................... 31
Ticonderoga ............................................................. 2, 3
Trenton, Battle of ....................................................... 12, 18

Uniform - Marines of 1740 .............................................. 11
"Union Flag" .............................................................. 27
Unity ............................................................... 6, 23, 26

Virginia ................................................................. 5
Volante, British warship ............................................... 3

Warren ................................................................. 30
Warren ........................................................................ 7
Washington, Rhode Island Navy ....................................... 5, 24
Washington, Washington's Fleet ....................................... 7, 8, 28
Washington's Fleet ....................................................... 7, 8, 9, 28
Washington, George ..................................................... 6, 7, 8, 15, 16, 17, 25, 27
Watson, William .......................................................... 8
West Indies .................................................................. 4
Whalers ........................................................................ 1
Wharton, John ............................................................ 30
White, Charles, Private .................................................. 5, 24
Wood, T. M. Col. U.S.M.C ............................................. 21, 26
Wynkoop, Jacobus, Captain ........................................... 22
Wythe, George ............................................................. 29

"Yankee Haymakers" ....................................................... 23
Yeoman, grade in Navy .................................................. 19
THE BIRTHDAY
of the
UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS

Material and Sources
of
Chapter III, Volume I
History of the United States Marine Corps

By

Major Edwin N. McClellan, U.S. Marines
Officer-in-Charge
Historical Section

(Only two hundred copies made)

First Edition, May 5, 1925
(Revised November 10, 1932)
Chapter III

FORENOTE

This compilation is not the final manuscript of this Chapter but represents only material and sources upon which it will be based. Since the information expressed in this History required original research, which has not been completed, it was decided to publish it first in mimeographed form. Considerable additional information will have been collected by the time it is desirable to write the final manuscript for printing. It is purposely made voluminous in order to make public, details of early Marine Corps History that obviously will not be included in a printed work because of lack of space. The plan provides for seven large volumes divided into appropriate chapters.

If details concerning the participation of the Navy and Army in any operation or incident described herein do not appear, such omission occurs only because it is impracticable in a history of this character to set forth more than the work of the Marines themselves. To do more than this would extend the history beyond a practical scope and size. In many of the operations described, the Navy or the Army, or both, have been present in greater strength than the Marines, and full credit is here given for their splendid achievements.

Only two hundred copies of this Chapter have been made and they are being sent out to selected repositories so that information concerning the Marine Corps will be distributed throughout the United States. If for any reason those to whom it is sent do not desire to retain it please inform the Historical Section, U.S. Marine Corps, Washington, D.C. and arrangements will be made for its return.

The following form of citation is suggested if it is desired to cite, either in published works, or manuscript, any information contained herein:—

(McClellan, Hist., U.S.M.C., 1st ed., 1st rev., I, Ch. III, p--)
CHAPTER III, VOLUME ONE

THE BIRTHDAY OF THE MARINE CORPS

While April 19, 1775, the date of the Battle of Lex-
ington, has been accepted as the beginning of the American
Revolution it was not the first revolt, either on land or
sea. Lexington was but supplemental to earlier movements.
The rising of the American Colonists against the Mother
Country occurred ashore and in the coastal waters of America
during more than a decade prior to Lexington.

Revolt on the water occurred several times before
April 19, 1775. Abraham Whipple's historic operation that
destroyed the Gaspee in 1772 is an outstanding illustration.

The First Continental Congress met at Philadelphia on
September 5, 1774 and from then on the revolution became
well defined. The pioneer patriots of the pre-Lexington
period performed duties that later were assumed by Marines,
Bluejackets, and Soldiers.

Major John Pitcairn, of the Royal Marines of Great
Britain, is the officer who snapped out the order "Disperse
ye Rebels!" which was answered at Lexington with the
"shot heard round the world." And Naval Americans, including
maritime soldiers, were busy afloat while the aroused
citizens were fighting on land at Lexington.
There were many risings against the enemy afloat immediately after Lexington.

Difficulty will be met with in an attempt to decide whether the land or naval forces (including Sea-Soldiers) of the Colonies first resisted the enemy in the Revolution. However, the date decided upon as the beginning of this type of naval endeavor, will be that of the Marines also, since they always have been an integral part of the Navy.

Three general classes of American Marines served during the American Revolution - Continental or Regular Marines, Marines of the Colonial or State Navies, and Marines of the Privateers.

American privateers entered the struggle at an early date. Their Officers, Seamen and Marines may have been the earliest Americans to enter the struggle.

The earliest ships, as also the earliest Marines, belonged to the Colonial or State Navies. Before there were any Continental warships numerous Marines were serving on such vessels. The first American Marines to serve ashore were those of a Colony or State.

Ticonderoga and Crown Point were captured on the Tenth of May, 1775 the day that Continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia for the second time. Silas Deane
had much to do with this success. The Americans immediately armed several small vessels on Lake Champlain and these formed an early, if not the first, American naval force that defended the United Colonies.

Information was received at Hartford, Connecticut on May 13, 1775 "representing the garrison at Ticonderoga in a feeble State both as to men & provisions requesting men & money," wrote Jesse Root to Silas Deane. "At the same time the Govr rec'd a letter from [Colonel Ethan] Allen of like import."

"We rallied, sent Col. Charles Webb & Col. Joshua Porter & Mr. Barnabas Deane, with $500 money escorted with Eight Marines from this Town well Spirited & equipped, with directions to proceed to Albany to procure from thence what assistance they could & then to proceed to Ticonderoga with all possible expedition & to do every-thing to secure & preserve the acquisition."

These Marines, called the "Original Eight", are the earliest American Marines, known of today, to appear in the American Revolution. Future research may uncover Marines of an earlier date.

"On ye 17th Day of May last Col. Webb, Col. Porter, and Mr. Barnabas Deane were appointed by a Number of Gentlemen at Hartford to repair to" Albany in New York "with the following instructions viz", wrote Barnabas Deane and
Joshua Porter. "Inquire after the state of the Fortification at Ticonderoga and Crown Point." We "arrived here (Albany) on ye 19th Day at Evening."

"We set forward" on May 20, 1775 from Albany "for the Forts & on the Rode between Fort Edward & Lake Gorge we meat an Exprece form Col. Arnold inform that there was a grate want of Powder & men at the Forts on which Col. Porter returned back to Albany & hath procured two hundred and sixteen Pound of powder * * * Col. Weeb & Mr. Dean proceeded forward to the Forts * * *"

"I went in company with Col. Webb" to Crown Point, wrote Barnabas Deane. "We found matters in a very critical situation there, arising from the difference between Col. Arnold & Col. Allen, which had risen to a great height," and we "had an arduous task to reconcile matters between the two Commanders at Crownpoint."

No doubt these "Original Eight" Marines, and others, saw service on the American armed vessels operating to gain control of Lake Champlain in the summer and fall of 1775.

The first American armed vessels commissioned by any public authority were two sloops fitted out by Rhode Island in June of 1775. Rhode Island Colonial Marines
were attached to the Katy and Washington when those warships chased ashore and destroyed, on June 15, 1775, an armed tender of the British frigate Rose — the first enemy vessel captured by an American public armed vessel during this war.  

Georgia commissioned a schooner as early as June of 1775. 

On July 10, 1775 forty men of South Carolina with two large and well-armed barges assisted the Georgians in a 10-gun schooner to capture a British supply ship at Savannah.

Pennsylvania's first ship was the Experiment, launched on July 19, 1775. The first Marine, so far known to have enlisted in the Pennsylvania Navy, was Private Charles White, who "entered" the Franklin, commanded by Captain Nicholas Biddle, on September 22, 1775.

South Carolina had vessels in commission by July, 1775; Connecticut and Massachusetts commissioned war vessels in the following month; and Virginia in December of that year. The other states including New Hampshire, New York, Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia, (except New Jersey and Delaware which had no navies but sent out privateers) also acquired naval vessels.
Continental Congress exercised both executive and legislative functions during this war. "The Congress are our King, Lords, and Commons" wrote one American. In the exercise of these functions Congress raised an Army and a Navy (including Marines) and administered military and naval affairs through committees composed of members of Congress.

Since some Marines have served as Regular Army troops in every war, except that with Spain, and on several other occasions, they share in the Birthday of the Regular Army which is probably June 14 the date in 1775 on which Congress directed that six companies of expert riflemen be raised for the Continental Army.

The Birthday of the Regular Navy (including Marines) probably never will be agreed upon. Four dates present themselves: June 15, September 2, October 5, and October 13, all in 1775. If any one of these dates are ever selected it also will be the natal day of the Marines.

On June 15, 1775, Congress created the Office of Commander-in-Chief of the Army of the United Colonies and of the Forces Raised and to be Raised by them. This could accurately be construed to include "naval forces."

General Washington accepted the appointment to this office the following day. Within a few months he had not only
taken command of the Army but had raised a Continental naval force (including Marines). He had direction of the first Continental Naval Department and might well be hailed as the "Father of the American Navy and Her Marines." General Washington, at least in the first few months of the Revolution prior to the commissioning of Esek Hopkins as Commander-in-Chief of the Fleet on December 22, 1775, seemed to be the Commander-in-Chief of both the military and naval forces (including Marines) of the United Colonies. He was thus the first Officer assigned to command, though not directly, the Continental or Regular Navy and Marines. This was somewhat similar to the first status of our armed forces under the Constitution in 1789 when the Department of War administered the affairs of both the Army and the Navy (including Marines).

Washington requested Rhode Island, in August of 1775, to send a cruiser to Bermuda to secure the contents of an unguarded magazine.

However, if the date of June 15 is not acceptable as a Navy (and Marines) Birthday, the date of September 2, 1775 might be considered. That was the day General (might we say "Admiral") Washington ordered Captain Nicholson Broughton of his Army to take an Army detachment to serve as Officers, Bluejackets and Marines "on board the
schooner Hannah, at Beverly, lately fitted out and equipped
with arms, ammunition, and provisions at Continental ex-

The Hannah sailed on September 5th and two days later
carried into Gloucester the unarmed Unity an American vessel
recaptured from the British. This "was the first capture
made by a Continental vessel."

Thus, the first armed vessels that sailed under Con-
tinental pay and control (though not owned by the United
Colonies), were those of the fleet fitted out by Washington
in New England waters in the early Autumn of 1775. Prior
to any express instructions from Congress Washington had
called vessels into the Continental Naval Service. It was
Colonel John Glover of Marblehead, a man as much at home
on ship as on shore, who had much to do with getting these
cruisers of Washington to sea. His men were ideal material
for Marines for they were soldiers of sea-going habits.
But despite all this even these men, having joined as land
soldiers, were not always satisfied to serve at sea. His
organization has been called "Glover's Maritime Regiment,"
"Amphibian" or "Amphibious Regiment," "Marblehead Marines,"
and other Marine-like names.

Washington gradually gathered together a fleet from the
Navies of the New England Colonies or States. The vessels
were manned by crews, including Marines, taken from his Army and flew the Pine Tree Flag.

On October 13, 1775, General Washington wrote his brother that he had "fitted out" and was "fitting out several privateers, with soldiers who have been bred to the sea." Once on board, however, they belonged to the Naval service, then administered by General Washington, and in many instances there are references to the Marines serving on the Hannah, Hancock, Lee, Lynch, Warren, Franklin, Harrison and Lady Washington. Floating batteries were also used in the Charles River. The duty performed by these vessels had considerable effect in forcing the British to evacuate Boston on March 17, 1776, and thus the Marines shared in that success.

The experience of Washington in Marining the vessels of this fleet was similar to that of the Fathers of the British Navy. Soldiers were not Marines unless trained and accustomed to the ways of the sea and Washington's soldiers ordered aboard ship as Marines were no exceptions to this important rule. They had enlisted for land duty, not for duty afloat as Marines. They did not fit into the "naval idea". Good soldiers as they were it took more than that to make them Marines.
Fleet around Boston, the privateers and the war vessels of some of the Colonial or State Navies antedated the beginning of the Continental or Regular Navy, from the viewpoint of the actual acquirement of ships.

On August 28, 1775, the Rhode Island Legislature in writing instructed her two representatives in Congress to propose the establishment of a Navy "at the Continental expense." The question of forming a Navy was first brought to the attention of Congress on October 3, 1775, when these Rhode Island members presented their instructions.

October 5, 1775 is another Navy and Marine Corps Birthday possibility for on that date Congress directed Washington to secure two vessels on "Continental risque and pay" and to give orders for the "proper encouragement to the Marines and seamen" serving on them. This was the first time Congress is known to have used the word "Marines." A Naval Committee of three (John Adams, John Langdon and Silas Doane) was also appointed by Congress on this date. This historic resolution read as follows:

Resolved, that a letter be sent by Express to Genl Washington to inform him that we having rec'd certain intelligence of the sailing of two North country built Brigs of no force from England on the 11 of August last loaded with arms powder & other stores for Quebec without a convoy, which it being of importance to intercept - that he apply to the council of Massachusetts bay for the two armed vessels in their service & dispatch the same with a sufficient number of
people stores & particularly a number of oars, in order if possible - intercept 3d two Brigs of their cargoes & secure the same for the use of the continent - also any other transports laden with ammunition, clothing or other stores for the use of the ministerial army or navy in America & secure them in the most convenient places for the purpose above mentioned - that he give the Commander or Commanders such instructions as are necessary as also proper encouragement to the Marines & Seamen that shall be sent on this enterprise - which instructions &c are to be delivered to the Commander or Commanders sealed up with orders not to open the same until out of sight of land, on account of Secrecy.

Finally on October 13, 1775 Congress directed that two vessels for the Regular Navy be acquired and fitted out. This resolution reads as follows:

"Resolved, That a swift sailing vessel, to carry ten carriage guns, and a proportionable number of swivels, with eighty men, be fitted, with all possible despatch, for a cruise of three months, and that the Commander be instructed to cruise eastward, for intercepting such transports as may be laden with warlike stores and other supplies for our enemies, and for such other purposes as the Congress shall direct.

"That a Committee of three be appointed to prepare an estimate of the expense, and lay the same before Congress, and to contract with proper persons to fit out the vessel.

"Resolved that another vessel be fitted out for the same purposes, and that the said Committee report their opinion of a proper vessel, and also an estimate of the expense.

"The ballots being taken and examined the following members were chosen, viz: Mr. [Silas] Deane, Mr. [John] Langdon, and Mr. [Christopher] Gadsden."

If earlier dates be discarded, October 13 should be accepted as the Birthday of the Navy and her Marines for
Congress, in the resolution of this date, authorized both ships and enlisted personnel (including Marines) for the Navy.

The celebration of October 27, the birthday of Theodore Roosevelt, as Navy Day has frequently been confused with the Birthday of the Navy, but Congress passed no legislation for the Navy on that date.

Congress, on October 30 ordered two more vessels to be fitted out, and the Naval Committee increased to seven members of which John Adams was one. This Committee was called "the Committee for Fitting Out Armed Vessels," occasionally the "Marine Committee" but more frequently the "Naval Committee".

All this was the beginning of the Continental or Regular Navy and Corps of Marines as far as materiel is concerned. However, these resolutions of Congress did not provide, properly speaking, for an American Navy. Many preliminary details had to be arranged before Congress could be said to have established a Navy as a branch of the public service. A vital act of this kind was accomplished on December 22, 1775, when the first officers were actually commissioned by Congress.

Congress, on November 2, 1775, authorized the Committee Fitting Out Four Armed Vessels to "agree with such
Officers and seamen, as are proper to man and command the said vessels". It is known that the Naval Committee agreed with Esek Hopkins as Commander-in-Chief of the Fleet, on November 5, 1775, with Samuel Nicholas, as the Captain of Marines for the Alfred, and Isaac Craig as Lieutenant of Marines for the Andrea Doria, about the same time. However, Congress confirmed the "agreements" or nominations of the two Marine Officers with signed commissions long before it confirmed that of Esek Hopkins. Nicholas was commissioned November 28, 1775, and as far as is known today it is the oldest Continental Naval Commission in existence.

Esek Hopkins arrived in Philadelphia prior to November 29, 1775. He accepted command of the Fleet some time before December 2, 1775, but was not commissioned by Congress until December 22, 1775. The date of his actually assuming command of the Fleet and going on board the Alfred for that purpose is unknown. John Paul Jones wrote that his commission, as a lieutenant bore date of December 7, 1775, but no evidence is available at this time that this commission is in existence. He was one of the officers commissioned by Congress on December 22, 1775.

Ships of war, and officers, seamen and Marines, for them, having been authorized by Congress, it only remained for the personnel to be actually appointed or enlisted.
By every resolution of Congress, concerning the manning of vessels for the Continental Navy, Congress had authorized Marines. The "eighty men" authorized by the Resolution of October 13, included Marines, for no ship of that period was without them. And similarly with regard to the "men" authorized by the Resolution of October 30 etc.

John Adams, a member of the Naval Committee brought up the subject of an organization, or Corps, of American Marines. On November 5, 1775, at Philadelphia, he wrote James Warren, in Massachusetts, asking him whether he thought "two or three battalions of Marines could be easily enlisted" in that province. Warren replied that many were "earnestly wishing to be employed in the privateering business" and he was certain that "at least three battalions might be raised" there, as the "taste for it runs high." John Adams also had correspondence on the same subject with Elbridge Gerry, stating that "the Naval Committee will be in want of seamen and Marines." John Adams seemed to lead in a movement to bring about an organization of Marines. He has been referred to as the Father of the Marine Corps.

Then came the date that is celebrated every year by American Marines wherever they are stationed throughout the world. It is November Tenth — the Birthday of the United States Marine Corps. Notwithstanding the fact that an earlier date could be selected the Marines decided upon
November 10 as their Birthday because that was the day in 1775 Congress authorized an organization, or Corps, of them. It is the date that the first Regular or Continental Marines were expressly authorized as such by Congress, although "Marines" were mentioned by Congress prior to this date.

On the above date Congress resolved:

That two Battalions of Marines be raised consisting of one Colonel two lieutenant Colonels, two Majors & officers as usual in other regiments, that they consist of an equal number of privates with other battalions; that particular care be taken that no persons be appointed to office or enlisted into said Battalions, but such as are good seamen, or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve to advantage by sea, when required. That they be enlisted and commissioned to serve for and during the present war between Great Britain and the Colonies unless dismissed by order of Congress; That they be distinguished by the names of the First & Second Battalions of American Marines, and that they be considered as part of the number, which the Continental Army before Boston is ordered to consist of.

Since Marines were already provided for the warships of the Regular Navy, the above resolution was not only designed to bring Marines into being, but to create an organization, or Corps, of them, for expeditionary purposes.

Journals of Congress for November 10, 1775, indicates that the initial mission of First and Second Battalions of Marines might have been to proceed to Nova Scotia "to take away the cannon and warlike stores, and to destroy the docks, yards, and magazines, and to take or destroy any ships of
war and transports there belonging to the enemy." The two resolutions referring to this project and the resolution raising the two battalions of Marines, all of the same date, are marked secret in the Corrected Journals.

Congress committed the above mission to General Washington, there being no Regular Navy in existence except that being created by him. It was never carried out.

In creating this Corps of Continental Marines Congress indicated that it had not forgotten the efficiency and fighting qualities of those earliest of American Marines enlisted in 1740-1742 to serve under the British Flag and who wore the camlet coats, brown linen waistcoats and canvas trousers. The use of Marines for "expeditionary" missions to Nova Scotia was not a new one. The Colonial Overseas Soldiers had served in many overseas expeditions, north and south, with the British Marines, on board the warships of the Provinces and on the Colonial American privateers. The Royal British Marines were "expeditionary" Marines and the notices appearing in the American newspapers of their activities at Lexington, Boston, Bunker Hill, Quebec, and other places, must have impressed Congress. The presence of the strong body of Pennsylvania Provincial Marines before the eyes of Congress at Philadelphia also had a persuading effect.

Clark, the Naval Historian, in 1814 wrote "it was not long before this patriotic body [Continental Congress] dis-
covered the great utility, in a large extent of sea-coast, of a Corps of soldiers trained to serve both on Land and at Sea." The absolute necessity of establishing and maintaining a body of men who should combine a knowledge of the general duties of the sailor and of the disciplined soldier, met with the ready recognition and approval of the Fathers of the Country.

This express legislative authority in the November 10 Resolution for a Corps of Marines left no doubt as to their character. They were to be soldiers selected from the Army of Washington who were "good seamen or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve with advantage by sea when required." In short, it was a Regiment of Sea Soldiers, serving under Naval authority, to be used for expeditionary purposes and "when required" as Marine Detachments aboard ships of war.

This is the only instance where Congress provided that the Corps of Marines should be divided into organizations. Thus the action of Continental Congress in 1775 acted similar to the workings of Congress, 1790-1798, under the Constitution. First, Congress authorized ships, officers, seamen and Marines, and finally created an organization of Marines.

No more convincing proof that land soldiers are unfitted to serve as Marines, without special selection
Naval-indoctrination and training is afforded than that given by George Washington in his letters to Congress.

It was with dismay that Washington received orders to supply the personnel for this Corps of Marines. He informed Congress on November 19, 1775, that to supply them would "break through the whole system," in his Army which had "cost us so much time, anxiety, and pains, to bring into any tolerable form." This was because the Marines "must be acquainted with maritime affairs," wrote Washington, and because he would have to pick the Marines "out of the whole Army, one from this Corps, one from another." He recommended that the Marines be raised "in New York and Philadelphia." This interesting letter of Washington's read, in part, as follows:

The resolve to raise two battalions of Marines will, (if practicable in this Army), entirely derange what has been done. It is therein mentioned, "one colonel for the two battalions"; of course, a colonel must be dismissed. One of the many difficulties, which attended the new arrangement, was in reconciling the different interests, and judging of the merits of the different colonels. In the dismissal of this one, the same difficulties will occur. The officers and men must be acquainted with maritime affairs; to comply with which, they must be picked out of the whole Army, one from this Corps one from another, so as to break through the whole system, which it has cost us so much time, anxiety, and pains, to bring into any tolerable form. Notwithstanding any difficulties which will arise, you may be assured, Sir, that I will use every endeavor to comply with their resolve.
I beg leave to submit it to the consideration of Congress, if those two battalions can be formed out of this Army, whether this is a time to weaken our lines, by employing any of the officers appointed to defend them on any other service? The gentlemen, who were here from Congress, know their vast extent; they must know, that we shall have occasion for our whole force for that purpose, more now than at any past time, as we may expect the enemy will take the advantage of the first hard weather, and attempt to make an impression somewhere. That this is the intention, we have many reasons to suspect. We have had in the last week six deserters, and took two straggling prisoners. They all agree that two companies with a train of artillery, and one of the regiments from Ireland, were arrived at Boston, that fresh ammunition and fruits have been served out, that the grenadiers and light infantry had orders to hold themselves in readiness at a moment's warning.

As there is every appearance, that this contest will not be soon decided, and of course that there must be an augmentation of the Continental Army, would it not be eligible to raise two battalions of Marines in New York and Philadelphia, where there must be numbers of sailors now unemployed? This, however, is matter of opinion, which I mention with all due deference to the superior judgment of the Congress.

There is no late account from Captains Broughton and Sellman, sent to the River St. Lawrence. The other cruisers have been chiefly confined to harbors, by the badness of the weather. The same reason has caused great delay in the building of our barracks; which, with a most mortifying scarcity of firewood, discourages the men from enlisting. The last, I am much afraid, is an insuperable obstacle. I have applied to the honorable House of Representatives of this Province, who were pleased to appoint a committee to negotiate this business; and, notwithstanding all the pains they have taken, and are taking, they find it impossible to supply our necessities. The want of a sufficient number of teams I understand to be the chief impediment.
I got returns this day from eleven colonels, of the numbers enlisted in their regiments. The whole amount is nine hundred and sixty-six men. There must be some other stimulus, besides love for their country, to make men fond of the service. It would be a great encouragement, and no additional expense to the continent, were they to receive pay for the months of October and November; also a month's pay advance. The present state of the military chest will not admit of this. The sooner it is enabled to do so the better.

It was quite apparent that Washington had learned much about Sea Soldiers from his experiences with marining his vessels around Boston. He could not send an "intact" regiment of his Army to the Marines—he must carefully select men and even after that, intelligent training would be necessary before a regiment of Marines would be available. What a remarkable fact—Washington's entire Army would have to be disrupted to obtain two Battalions of Marines!

Then on November 28, 1775, Washington wrote Congress that an "insuperable obstruction" consisted in the impossibility of getting the men of his Army to enlist for the "continuance of the war," his letter reading, in part:

From what I can collect by my inquires amongst the officers, it will be impossible to get the men to enlist for the continuance of the war, which will be an insuperable obstruction to the formation of the two battalions of Marines on the plan resolved on by Congress. As it can make no difference, I propose to proceed on the new arrangement of the Army, and, when completed, inquire out such officers and men as are best quali-
fied for that service, and endeavour to form these battalions out of the whole. This appears to me the best method and I hope it will meet with the approbation of Congress.

Journal of Continental Congress for November 30, 1775, reads as follows:

On motion made.
Resolved, That the comee appointed for fitting out ships of war be directed to engage seamen on the best terms in their power; not exceeding six dollars & two thirds for the best able bodied seamen pr month.
Resolved, That the regulations & articles for governing and manning the ships now fitting out as they have been settled by Congress be immediately printed.

The Congress then resumed the consideration of Genl Washington's letter of the 19th.
Resolved, That the General be directed to suspend the raising two battalions of Marines out of his present Army.
Resolved, That the two battalions of Marines be raised independant of the Army already ordered for the service in Massachusetts bay.

On December 8, 1775, John Hancock, President of Congress, wrote George Washington that Congress had "relieved" his "difficulties with respect to the two battalions of Marines, having ordered that the raising them out of the Army be suspended." President Hancock wrote further that it was the "desire of Congress that such a body of forces may be raised, but their meaning is that it be in addition to the Army voted," and that Congress expected General Wash-
ington to "think of proper persons to command that Corps and give orders for enlisting them wherever they may be found."

Not having received the letter of the 8th, General Washington wrote the President of Congress, on December 14th: "I am at a loss to know whether I am to raise the two battalions of Marines here or not. As the delay can be attended with but little inconvenience, I will wait a further explanation from Congress, before I take any further steps thereon."

General Washington wrote Congress four days later, on December 18th, that "you have removed all the difficulties which I labored under about the two battalions of Marines. I shall obey the orders of Congress in looking out for proper officers to command that Corps."

On January 24, 1776, Washington again wrote the President of Congress that "Congress will think me a little remiss, I fear, when I inform them, that I have done nothing yet towards raising the battalion of Marines"; but Washington hoped "to stand exculpated from blame" for he already had "twenty-six incomplete regiments" at the time and "thought it would be adding to an expense, already great, in officers, to set two entire Corps of officers on foot, when perhaps we should not add ten men a week by it to our
present numbers. In this opinion the general officers have concurred, which induced me to suspend the matter a little longer."

Washington's views prevailed for Congress already had directed that the Marines be raised from a source other than his Army.

All this time, however, the Continental Marines had been in existence and with the Navy's aid were working out their salvation. The unwillingness or inability of George Washington to give up sufficient personnel for the organization of the two battalions had no retarding effect upon the appointment of officers or the enlisting of Marines.

Samuel Nicholas received a commission as Captain of Marines signed by John Hancock on November 28, 1775, the date of the Rules for the Regulation of the Navy. This commission read as follows:


We reposing especial Trust and Confidence in your Patriotism, Valour, Conduct and Fidelity, Do by these Presents, constitute and appoint you to be Captain of Marines in the service of the Thirteen United Colonies of North-America, fitted out for the defence of American Liberty, and for repelling every hostile Invasion thereof. You are therefore carefully and diligently to discharge the Duty of Captain of
Marines by doing and performing all Manner of Things thereto belonging. And we do strictly charge and require all Officers, Marines and Seamen under your Command, to be obedient to your Orders as Captain of Marines and you are to observe and follow such Orders and Directions from Time to Time, as you shall receive from this or a future Congress of the United Colonies, or Committee of Congress, for that Purpose appointed, or Commander in Chief for the Time being of the Navy of the United Colonies, or any other your superior Officer, according to the Rules and Discipline of War, the Usage of the Sea, and the Instructions here-with given you, in Pursuance of the Trust reposed in you. This Commission to continue in Force until revoked by this or a future Congress. Philadelphia November 28th, 1775.

Isaac Craig received a commission as Lieutenant of Marines dated November 29, 1775. One of the earliest muster rolls of Marines is that of Captain Isaac Craig's Company, dated December 19, 1775, that served on the Andrea Doria. It contains 44 names, and shows nine of them having enlisted on December 9, 1775. The Muster Roll of Captain Samuel Nicholas' Marines of the Alfred, if ever found, will show Regular Marines were enlisted at a very early date.

As events turned out the Colonel, the two Lieutenant-Colonels, one of the Majors, and the Staff Officers, authorized on November 10, 1775, were not appointed.

The highest ranking officer of Marines serving during the Revolution was Major Samuel Nicholas, who after active
service with Hopkins' fleet and in the Battles of Trenton
(Assanpink) and Princeton, performed duties at the
Capital that correspond more or less to those of the Com-
mandant today and in addition acted at various times as
Muster Master for the Navy.

The "First and Second Battalions of American Marines," were never actually organized and named as such. When the emergency or demand arose for the use of Marines, provision-
al units, from a squad to a battalion, were organized as
has been the custom in the Marine Corps from that time on.
When a vessel of the Navy went into commission a Marine
Guard was formed and marched on board. When the object for
which the provisional unit was organized had been accom-
plished, or a vessel no longer required a Marine Guard, the
unit was disbanded and the Officers and Men used for other
purposes.

After the Resolution of the 10th establishing a Corps
of Marines, Naval legislation of importance was passed by
Congress.

The Naval Committee, on November 5, 1775, had appoint-
ed or agreed with Esek Hopkins, as Commander-in-Chief of the
Fleet. However, this appointment was not confirmed with a
commission from Congress until December 22, 1775. He was
the first Commander-in-Chief of an American Fleet and the
only one during the American Revolution. Some authorities claim that Hopkins was Commander-in-Chief of the Navy.

The commission of Captain Samuel Nicholas dated November 28, 1775 directs him to obey the orders received from the "Commander-in-Chief for the time being of the Navy of the United Colonies," as does that of Isaac Craig dated October 23, 1776.

On November 25, 1775, Congress enacted some very important naval legislation, which in John Adams' opinion was "the true origin and foundation of the American Navy," and in producing which he "had at least as great share" as "any man living."

The Rules for the Regulation of the Navy were adopted by Congress on November 28, 1775, the date that John Hancock signed Captain Nicholas' commission. On the same date Congress used for the first time the term "Navy of the United Colonies." Many believe that this is a good date for the Navy Birthday. It was not until December 2, 1775, that the form of a commission for naval officers was adopted by Congress; but notwithstanding this, the original commission of Captain Samuel Nicholas dated November 28, 1775, is still in existence.

On December 2, Congress authorized two more vessels. Ezekiel Hopkins accepted command of the Fleet on or before
154 this last date, but the date of his boarding the **Alfred** is unknown.

The "Continental Flag" was hoisted over the **Black Prince** (later re-named **Alfred**) on December 3, 1775. On December 5, 1775, Congress fixed the compensation of re-captors; four days later Congress established grades of midshipman, armorer, sailmaker, yeoman, quartermaster, quarter gunner, cook and coxswain. On December 11, 1775 Continental Congress resolved that "a Committee be appointed to devise ways and means for furnishing these colonies with a naval armament and report with all convenient speed." A Committee was appointed and reported on December 13, 1775. On December 13, the wages of able-bodied seamen were raised to $8.00 a month; and on the 22d the salary of the Commander-in-Chief of the Fleet was fixed at $125.00 a month.

Thus, by December 22, 1775, and not until then, do we have all the necessary elements to form the Regular or Continental Navy. Without officers there could be no Navy. There is no evidence of any naval officers (excluding Marine Officers) commissioned by Congress until December 22, 1775. The Naval Committee had agreed upon several, such as Hopkins in November, but only Congress could commission them. Spears wrote that "of all the dates in American history not yet so commemorated, there is none so well worthy
of recognition as a national holiday as the 22d of Decem-
ber; for it was on December 22, 1775, that the American
Navy came into existence."

On that date the Naval Com-
mittee laid before Congress a list of the officers they had
agreed with and they were accordingly commissioned.

Thus did the American Navy and the Corps of American
Marines first appear in our history.
NOTES

CHAPTER III, VOLUME ONE

1. "On April 19, 1775, at Concord and Lexington, the long prepared fagots of revolution were lighted into flame." (Rear Admiral French E. Chadwick, The American Navy, 12); 1 & N Reg, 5 Nov. 1932; Colonel Cyril Field, R.M.L.I., Britain's Sea-Soldiers, I, 148-152; "This affair has always been considered the commencement of the War of the Revolution; and justly, as the hostilities which were then commenced did not cease until the Independence of the Colonies was acknowledged by treaty." (J. Fenimore Cooper, Hist. Navy, I, 65)

2. Gaspe affair of 1772. "The whole transaction being as direct a resistance to oppression, as the subsequent, and better known fight at Lexington." (Cooper, Hist. Navy, I, 59-61); 1 & N Reg, 5 Nov. 1932; See MC Hist v I ch II.

3. "The military demonstration of April 19, 1775, was but supplemental to similar movements for the suppression of the general arming, and for the seizure of guns and powder, which began in 1774." (Carrington, Battles, Amer. Rev. 9); 1 & N Reg, 5 Nov. 1932.

4. DAR Mag, Nov., 1924, 682; See MC Hist v I ch II, 87, 147 in which it is called the real "Lexington of the Seas" the "Salt Water Lexington" and the "First Fight Afloat"; Lossing, Story of the U.S. Navy for Boys, 11-12.


6. "The United States Army, Navy and Marine Corps did not exist on that date [April 19, 1775]. Men performing the duties of Soldiers, Bluejackets and Marines appeared in the dawn of our revolt against Great Britain, almost simultaneously." (MC Gaz, Nov., 1930, 9); "Naval Americans, including sea-soldiers, were busy afloat while the aroused citizens were fighting on land at Lexington." (A & N Reg, 5 Nov. 1932, 1)

7. "A British Officer (Major), Commander of the advanced force in Gage's expedition to Lexington and Concord, April 19, 1775." (The Century Dictionary and Cyclopædia, v IX, 810); Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 62, 195;
7. Continued.

A & N Reg, 25 August 1906, Article by Col. Thomas Wood, USMC; Pitcairn had been "Military Commandant at Boston," and "had endeared himself to the people;" (Field's, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 160); Major Pitcairn had been detached by General Gage to assist in preventing the accumulation of military stores at Concord. (Colburn's United Service and Nq, 1784, DXLVII, June, 208-209); Then the late Major-General Mercer, R.M. L.I. visited Lexington in 1911 he found that the local tradition is that Major Pitcairn was wounded in the hand, and went with other officers to an inn which is pointed out. Here he called for a bowl of punch, and stirring it with the finger of his bleeding hand, said:— "To-morrow we will drink the Americans' blood." This tradition is given for what it is worth, but from the accounts which we have of this officer, it is absolutely incredible, to say nothing of the fact that it bears every appearance of having been especially concocted for "home consumption" in the United States. (Field's Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 150); A & N Reg, 5 Nov, 1932; At Concord, "One fellow had the impudence to strike Major Pitcairne, of the Marines, while searching for the stores according to his orders. * * * The rebels fought like the savages of the country, and treated some, that had the misfortune to fall, like savages, for they scalped and cut off their ears with the most unmanly barbarity. This has irritated the troops to a very high degree." (Letter of British officer at Boston to London, 20 April 1775, Letters of Amer. Rev., Willard); "Stedman accuses the Americans of scalping some of the wounded soldiers, and as many of them had, as Lord Percy remarks, gained their experience in the savage warfare with the Red Indian Tribes, it is possible that in some cases the charge was a true one. After all, even in these advanced days of civilisation, the Germans did far worse in Belgium." (Field, Britain Sea Soldiers, I, 153); "In regard to the charge made against the Americans of resorting to the barbarous Red Indian custom of scalping their wounded adversaries, it must be remembered that only fifteen years had elapsed since the War with the French for the possession of Canada in the course of which it was practised to a greater or less degree by the white troops on both sides. * * * "Rt. Hon. Sir G. O. Trevelyan, in his 'American Revolution,' published 1899, regards Stedman's annotation as a 'singularly discreditable calumny,' and says that though it was stated in the official account published in the London Gazette, that the provincials had scalped the wounded
it was reported not long afterwards in the 'Gentleman's Magazine,' in which appeared a statement by a Lieutenant of the King's Own Regiment:—'I was wounded,' he says, 'at the attack of the bridge, and am now treated with the greatest humanity, and taken all possible care of by the Provincials at Medford.'" (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 163); "Among the British officers slain at Bunker Hill was Major Pitcairn, who, at Lexington, had shed the first blood in the Revolutionary War." (Irving, Life of Washington, I, 439); Our Troops last Saturday landed at Charles-town, under the command of Gen. Howe, but met with no opposition till they advanced within two hundred yards of the rebels entrenchment, situated above Charles-town, on a hill. The light infantry and grenadiers received the first fire, just as I was landing Major Pitcairne and the Marines, about two hundred yards off the spot where the engagement began, so that I could see all that passed till the storming of their battery. The rebels opposed our troops with firmness and in less than fifteen minutes there was the hottest fire that any of our Soldiers ever saw, kept up by five thousand Rebels and two thousand of our Troops; they fell very fast on both sides. * * * Major Pitcairne was killed. (Letters on the Amer. Revolution, 1774-1776, Edited by Margaret Wheeler Willard, pp. 136, 137)

8. "'Disperse you rebels,' cried Pitcairn, riding forward, while his men maneuvered to surround them. Far from complying with this order, the Americans replied by several musket shots fired from the houses and walls. The Major's horse was hit in two places and a man wounded. This fire was immediately returned, and several of the colonists were killed." (Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 150); "Disperse ye villains! Lay down your arms, ye rebels, and disperse!' (Irving, Life of Washington, I, 392); "The first American blood of the Revolution proper was shed at Lexington on the 19th of April in the year 1775. It was none other than an officer of the Royal Marines — Major Pitcairn — who snapped out the order 'Disperse ye Rebels,' which was answered in lead with the 'Shot heard round the world'". (NC Gaz, Nov., 1930, 9); [April 19, 1775] The British van, hearing the drum and the alarm guns, halted to load; the remaining companies came up; and at half an hour before sunrise, the advance party hurried forward at double quick time, almost upon a run, closely followed by the grenadiers. Pitcairn rode in front, and when within five or six rods of the minute men, cried out: "Disperse, ye
8. Continued.

villains, ye rebels, disperse; lay down your arms; why don't you lay down your arms and disperse?" The main part of the countrymen stood motionless in the ranks, witnesses against aggression; too few to resist, too brave to fly. At this Pitcairn discharged a pistol, and with a loud voice cried, "Fire." The order was instantly followed, first by a few guns, which did no execution, and then by a heavy, close, and deadly discharge of musketry. (Hist. of the U.S., Bancroft, v VII, 293); The Wash. Star, March 1, 1931 in a two-column article tells of this "First shot". It includes the report dated "Boston Camp, 26th April, 1775 of Major John Pitcairn reading in part as follows: "I instantly called to the Soldiers not to Fire, but to surround and disarm them, and after several repetitions of those positive Orders, not to Fire &ca - some of the Rebels who had jumped over the Wall Fired Four or Five Shott at the Soldiers, which wounded a Man in the Tenth, and my Horse was wounded in two places. From some quarter or other, and at the same time several Shott were fired from a Meeting House on our Left - upon this without any Order or Regularity the Light Infantry began a scattered Fire and continued in that situation for some little contrary to the repeated Orders both of me and the officers that were present. It will be needless to mention what happened after as I suppose Colo. Smith hath given a particular account of it. I am Sir, Your most Obedt. humble servant, John Pitcairn. Boston Camp, 26th April, 1775." See also a fine article by Colonel Cyril Field, R.M.L.I. Reprinted in MC Gaz, Sept. 1927, 169-174 from "Globe and Laurel"; On the 18th April, General Gage despatched a force composed of the Grenadier and Light Infantry companies, under Lt.-Col. Smith and Major Pitcairn, to destroy the stores at Concord. The force proceeded up the Charles River, disembarked at Phipps Farm, and advanced on Concord. The Militia had been roused by Paul Revere and had assembled at Lexington at 5 a.m. Six Companies of Light Infantry under Pitcairn had been detached to hold the bridges beyond Lexington, whilst the remainder went on and destroyed the stores at Concord; the Militia attacked the Light Infantry and the detachment fell back and retreated to Lexington. On the 19th, Brigadier Lord Percy was sent with 10 Companies and a body of Marines to help Smith's force and arrived at Lexington; they had two field pieces which materially helped in keeping the Americans off. Pitcairn's horse was wounded. The Americans in large numbers had assem-
Chapter III

8. Continued.

Lord Percy retired by a different road via Charlestown, and reached the heights of Bunker's Hill about 8:00 p.m. Nicholas says that the Marines of the Fleet, under Lt.-Col. Johnston were landed to cover the passage of the troops from Charlestown, which was also covered by the guns of H.M.S. Somerset. Casualties were 65 killed and 270 wounded. (Globe and Laurel, October, 1931, 237); "They will miss their aim," said one of a party who observed their departure. "What aim?" asked Lord Percy, who overheard the remark. "Why, the cannon at Concord," was the answer. Percy hastened to Gage, who instantly directed that no one should be suffered to leave the town. But Warren had already, at ten o'clock despatched William Dawes through Roxbury to Lexington, and at the same time desired Paul Revere to set off by way of Charlestown. (April, 1775). (Hist. of the U.S., Han-croft, v VII, 389); DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 682; Infantry Journal, January, 1928, 1; Edward Everett, First Battles of the Rev., 36-37; Elias Phinney, Hist. Battle at Lex-ington, 20; Shattuck, Hist. of Concord, Mass., 100-103; Murdock, The Nineteenth of April, 1775, 37-45; N.R Mag., Nov., 1924, 683; Carrington, Battles of Amer. Rev., 11; Schomberg, Naval Chronology, I, 482; R. Lamb, Journal of Occurrences During Late Amer. War, 37; Munsby, George III and Amer. Rev., 394-399; Lendrum, Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 307; Nicholas, Hist. Rec. Royal Marine Forces, I, 79; Gillespie, Hist. Review Royal Marine Corps, 188-189; Grant, British Battles, II, 138; id., I, 231-232 quotes a Londoner on April 18, 1776 as calling April 19, 1775, "Saint Yankie's Day;" the "immediate cause, then, of the Battle of Lexington was the attempt of the British troops to carry into execution those arbitrary and detestable laws, directly by seizing the persons of some eminent patriots and indirectly, by destroying the Provincial stores." (Phinney, Hist. Battle Lexington); Greenwood, "John Manley," wrote that then "commenced that long and disastrous retreat, that Chevy Chase of the American Revo- lution;" "Paul Revere and William Dawes" eluded "the vigilance of the guards and spread the alarm." (John Stetson Barry, Hist. Mass., 505-510); Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 58-60; Fiske, Amer. Rev., 121-122; Lodge, Hist. Eng. Col. in Amer., 492-493; A & N Reg, Nov 5, 1932; A hundred and fifty years ago - 157, to be exact - a militant Yankee farmer standing on his acres at Con-cord, Mass., fired the shot that was heard around the world. At least they said it was heard around the world. It was the beginning of the Revolutionary War. That
8. Continued.

was a fine phrase, "the shot heard around the world." The truth was, the shot was never heard around the world — until yesterday. By the magic of radio some experimenters fired a gun in Schenectady, put it on the short waves, and that shot was actually heard around the world. It was done in commemoration of a historical event — the shot heard around the world in honor of the shot that was not heard around the world. (Wash. Post, April 20, 1932); "The battle of Concord and Lexington, which was the opening battle of the American Revolutionary War, April 19, 1775, is so characterized in a poem by Emerson" (Wash. Star, November 18, 1932) as "shot that was heard around the world,"

9. A & J Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; History, yet to be written, will give more on this subject than is available today.

10. In May, 1775 Americans along the coast annoyed the enemy war vessels wherever the opportunity showed itself. The Falcon captured two American sloops at Bedford, Mass., on May 5, 1775. The Bedford people, however, fitted out two sloops, with thirty men, and retook the captured vessels. (Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 110–111; see also Banks, Hist. Martha's Vineyard, I, 331–334; Paullin, Navy of the Amer. Rev., 329); "On May 5, 1775, the people of New Bedford and Dartmouth, Mass., fitted out a vessel and cut out from a harbor in Martha's Vineyard a prize which had been taken by the British sloop of War Falcon — the first capture made by a Colonial vessel." (Nav. Inst. Proc, Feb. 1927, 1159); Early in May, 1775, "we hear that an armed vessel [H.M. sloop of war Falcon] a few Days ago, on some frivolous Pretence, took Possession of two other Vessels in the Vineyard Sound; on which the People fitted out two Vessels, went in Pursuit of them, retook and brought both into a Harbour, and sent the Prisoners to Taunton Gaol." In Boston harbor, during the siege of the town, there were at times clashes between the people and the British soldiers over the possession of the cattle and sheep on the islands. (Mass, Privateers of the Rev., Allen, 19, citing N.E. Chronicle, 18 May 1775); Later in the same month [May, 1775] sixty armed Americans put off in whale boats armed with three swivels, from Marthas Vineyard and captured the British armed schooner Volante, tender to the frigate Scarborough. (DAR Mag., November, 1924; Maclay, Hist. of Amer. Priv., 64; Paullin, Navy of the Amer. Rev., 339); Long before privateering had become regulated by law in Massachusetts, hostilities were conducted on the water. The vessels and boats en-
gaged in such enterprises were of course not regularly commissioned, but they were usually fitted out by or under the authority of selectmen, committees of safety, or other local officials of some sort. The first episode of the kind in Massachusetts waters, as related by some writers, though on what authority is not quite certain, was the exploit of Captain Nathan Smith of Tisbury, Martha's Vineyard, in April, 1775. Setting out in a whaleboat Smith captured the armed schooner Volante, tender to the British cruiser Scarborough, probably in Homes Hole. (Mass. Privateers of the Rev., Allen, 18-18, citing Banks, Hist. of Martha's Vineyard, I, 404. 405); The capture of the British vessel Margaretta and two sloops at Machias, Me., by Jeremiah O'Brien and his thirty-five quasi-Marines armed with pitch-forks axes, and a few firearms took place in May or June, 1775. (Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 110-111; The Military and Naval Mag. of the U.S., II, No. 6; Feb. 1834, 360-361; Clark, Naval Hist. of the U.S., I, 17-18; Spears, Hist. of Our Navy, I, 23, calls these Americans "Yankee Haymakers"; LAR Mag., Nov., 1834; Mass. Rev. Arch., v 182, 114, 114a; LAR Mag., July, 1816, 91-92); British Marines (Arnold, Hist. of R.I., II, 350-351) who were killed in this fight, popularly called by some the "Lexington of the Seas," were probably the first to fall in the war afloat. The vessel was repaired and became the Machias Liberty of the Massachusetts Navy. (The British at Halifax sent the Diligent or Diligence and the Tapnaquish or Tapanagouche or Tapuaquish to avenge capture of Margaretta. About the middle of July, 1775, the Machias Liberty captured Diligent and the Tapnaquish was captured by army troops [Mass. Mag. III, 45-46; see also Frost, Book of the Navy, 18-19]; In September, 1775, Peter Clark was "Commander of Marines" on Diligent. [Mass. Mag., III, 45-46]; Maclay, Hist. Amer. Priv., 60-61, states O'Brien in Unity and the Portland Packet on July 12, 1775, captured these two vessels and re-named them Machias Liberty and Diligence.); O'Brien captured two prizes, naming them Liberty and Diligent. (Clark, Naval Hist. U.S., I, 18, citing Penna. Packet No. 201 and Edinburg Mag., XXIX, 249; Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 330); The capture of the British armed schooner Margaretta off Machias in June is well known. The hero of this event, Jeremiah O'Brien, in the sloop Unity, was assisted by Benjamin Foster in a small schooner. A month later O'Brien in the same sloop, renamed the Machias Liberty,

and Foster in another vessel took two British vessels.
(Mass. Privateers of the Rev., Allen, 19); Petition
dated April 12, 1776. "Isaac Taft was wounded (on the
18th June 1775) by a hand grenade thro the thigh in
taking his Majesty's armed schooner Margaretta." (Mass.
Rev. Arch., Mar. Mss (Petitions), v 182, 114a); Strange
enough Jeremiah O'Brien in putting a certificate on this
petition on February 21, 1777 stated that this man had
been wounded while serving on his sloop Unity in taking
the Margaretta, a tender, on June 12, 1775. At Machias.
(Mass. Rev. Arch., Mar. Mss (Petitions), v 182, 114a);
On June 12 the people of Machias, Maine, seized the
Margaretta, an armed schooner in the service of the
crown - the first capture of a public vessel. These two
captures were without authorization by government,
(Nav. Inst. Proc., Nov., 1927); The British "armed
schooner Diana, Lieutenant Thomas Graves, had to be
abandoned and burnt by her crew in face of the colonists,
on May 28, 1775, near Boston. (Clowes, The Royal Navy,
IV, 3; see also Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 109-110,
and the same for fighting on Hog and Nodlil's Islands,
Boston Harbor, in May, 1775); At the end of May, 1775,
the British warship Asia entered the port of New York.
The British women and children were transferred to
Governor's Island and the troops sent aboard the Asia.
As the troops marched to embark they were harangued by
the mob of Americans, and called upon to desert. Two
or three did leave the ranks with arms in their hands,
were protected by the Americans, and could not be
arrested. (Kingsford, Hist. of Canada, V, 350); Battle
between Asia and Citizens on August 23, 1775. Tryon
took refuge on Asia. (Rufus Rockwell Wilson's "New York,
Old & New", I, 218-219); Asia fires on New York. (Cooper,
W. D. Hist. of North America (1814)); Asia affair at
New York. (Morgan Lewis's letter to Samuel B. Webb at
NY, 4 Sept. 1775, Rem of Gen Samuel B. Webb, 153-154);
On August 9, 1775, the British armed sloop of war Falcon
captured one American schooner from the West Indies, and
chased another into Gloucester Bay. A whale boat from
the Falcon was sent into the Bay to capture this
schooner. A group of Americans not only retained the
American schooner and recaptured the other, but also
captured the whaleboat. (Clark, Naval Hist. U.S., I, 16-
17, citing Penna. Packet, 201, and Gordon, Amer. Rev., I,
386; Maclay, Hist. Amer. Privateers, 60-61); The New
England men were not wanting in daring. On the ninth
of August the Falcon was seen from Cape Ann in chase of

-36-

two schooners bound to Salem. One of these was taken; a fair wind wafted the other into Gloucester harbor. Linzee, the captain of the Falcon, followed with his prizes, and, after anchoring, sent his lieutenant and thirty six men in a whaleboat and two barges to bring under his bow the schooner that had escaped. As the bargemen, armed with muskets and swivels, bearded her at her cabin windows, men from the shore fired on them, killing three and wounding the lieutenant in the thigh. Upon this Linzee sent his prize and a cutter to cannonade the town. The broadside which followed did little injury, and the Gloucester men kept up a fight for several hours, till, with the loss of but two, they took both schooners, the cutter, the barges, and every man in them. Linzee lost thirty five men, or half his crew. The next day he warped off, carrying away no spoils except the skiff, in which the wounded lieutenant had been brought away. (Bancroft, The Amer. Rev., 65-66); The earliest attack on East Florida by water is described in the following words: "In August 1775, a Rebel Privateer took our Ordnance Stores off this Bar. No invasion was made on our parts, until after these hostilities were committed, when it became necessary to retaliate." (Florida Hist. Soc. Quarterly, July, 1930, quoting a letter of Governor Tony to Lord Germain dated April 2, 1777 and citing P.R.C.: C.O. 5/557, pp. 263-264. Stevens and Brown L.C. Trans; see also Siebert, Loyalists in East Florida, 1774 to 1785); While these were all private ventures, their military-maritime nature suggests Marines. (DAR Mag., Nov., 1924; The action of Continental Congress in authorizing Marines has "been justified from the first combat in the Revolution with the British Naval forces on the coast of Maine." [Pearson, Printer, Information Regarding U.S.M.C., 1875, 3.] ; Upon the receipt of news of the Declaration of Independence of the American colonies, the royalists showed their zeal for the king by burning the effigies of John Hancock and Samuel Adams on the plaza, near where the constitutional monument now stands. In 1775 some privateers from Carolina captured the brig Betsy off the bar, and unloaded her in sight of the garrison, giving to the captain a bill signed "Clement Lamprière," and drawn on Miles Brewton, at Charleston, for one thousand pounds sterling. The cargo consisted of one hundred and eleven barrels of powder sent from London, and the capture was a great mortification to the new
Continued.

Governor. (Dewhurst, Hist. of Saint Augustine, Fla., 183-185, pub in 1881); Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, having found it impracticable to appease the disputes which had long subsisted between him and the people, was induced to take refuge on board the Fowey man of war, in the month of June 1775 and attempted to transfer thither the sittings of the assembly—a requisition with which the legislative body refused compliance. His Lordship then proclaimed martial law, and immediate emancipation to all negroes and indentured servants able and willing to bear arms in his Majesty's service—a measure which caused great irritation and resentment. At length, a demand was made by the shipping in the bay of the Chesapeake, to the inhabitants of the town of Norfolk, for supplies for his Majesty's service. This being preemptorily refused, a heavy cannonade was by order of the governor commenced against the town, which, in a few hours, was reduced to ashes. The loss was estimated at 300,000. In the Carolinas, Lord William Campbell and Governor Martin, were also compelled to withdraw for safety on board the King's ships lying off the coast. In Pennsylvania, a military association was established throughout the province; and a similar spirit seemed to pervade the whole chain of colonies. In Massachusetts' bay, the town of Falmouth, from similar causes of offence with that of Norfolk, was set on fire, and destroyed by a tremendous cannonade. (Ranin de Thoyras, Paul de, The Hist. of England, II, 497, pub in 1816); See also Allen, Naval Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 1-18; Cooper, Hist. Navy U.S., I, 70-74; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 682; Rear Admiral French E. Chadwick, The Amer. Navy, 12-15

11. See the brief history on first page of McClellan's "Uniform of the American Marines"; "During the Revolution the Americans carried on hostilities at sea in three classes of vessels: first, Continental vessels; second, the State Navies; third, Privateers, commissioned either by the Continental Congress or by the various states, and in some cases by both." ("State Navies and Privateers in the American Revolution," a paper read by Dr. Gardner W. Allen at a meeting of Mass. Hist. Soc., 14 Nov. 1912, p. 1)

12. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; From the very start American privateers had swarmed over the seas, and this implied
the existence, at the outbreak of the Revolution, of an
element of naval preparedness in the American Colonies
which has not been appreciated. (Nav Inst Proc, Dec.,
1923, 2547); See also Note 10.

A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; See MC Hist. v I ch IV to VII;
"During the Revolution, State Marines appeared as early
as May, 1775." (Rear Admiral Hugh Rodman in Leatherneck,
10 Jan., 1925, 2); The United States were necessarily
without any maritime force at first, and for some time
after the contest began. ** * Whatever may be said of
privateering, under ordinary circumstances, in wars
between civilized nations, it was an absolute necessity,
on the part of Americans, at that time. It was their
only alternative. The Provincial Congresses, or other
contemporaneous Colonial and local authorities, com-
missoned cruisers, thus provided by the exertions and
maintained at the cost of private parties. The result
was an aggregate naval force of great magnitude and
efficiency. (Charles W. Upham, The Life of Timothy
Pickering, v II, 142-143, pub in 1873).

14. The "Original Eight" for which see Notes 20,21; A & N
Reg, 5 Nov. 1932.

15. Fort Ticonderoga or "Fort Ty" as it was sometimes called.
(Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 318); Mass.
gave Benedict Arnold "a Colonel's commission on the 3d
of May [1775], with instructions to raise 400 men in
the western part of Mass. and attack Ticonderoga."
(Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 318 citing
Amer. Arch. 4th Ser., I, 450, 485); Ticonderoga was
captured by Arnold and Allen on May 10, 1775. (id., 319);
A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.

16. Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924,
683; A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; "I have sent forward five
hundred pounds of powder under a proper guard" to Ti-
conderoga. (James Easton at Pittsfield, Conn(?), 30
May 1775, Force, Amer. Arch., II, 849)

17. "The second General Congress assembled at Philadelphia
on the 10th of May." (Irving, Life of Wash., I, 408);
May 10, 1775, Continental Congress assembled for 2d
time at Philadelphia. (Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Inde-
pendence, I, 322); Nav Inst Proc, Feb., 1937, 115d;
17. Continued.
A & N Reg, 5 Nov. 1932; May 10, 1775 Congress met.
(Secret Journal of Congress, I, 9)

18. "In 1775 he Silas Deane was credited with the inception of the capture of Ticonderoga, the equipment and subsistence of that expedition having been especially entrusted to him, & which was largely financed from his own funds." (Middlebrook, Mar. Conn., I, 344);
The money to equip the expedition to capture Ticonderoga was procured by Deane & his associates (Parsons, Leffingwell, Col. Wyllys) who gave their personal notes for the sum advanced from the Treasury of the Colony. (Coll. N.Y. Hist. Soc., 1886, pp. ix-x Dean's Biog); Allen captured Fort Ticonderoga on May 10, 1775. First British flag surrendered April 27, 1775. Colonel S.H. Parsons of Middletown arrived at Hartford from Massachusetts eager for a project to surprise Fort Ticonderoga. On April 27, Colonel Parsons, Colonel Samuel Wyllys of Hartford and Silas Dean of Wethersfield undertook and projected taking the fort. "A sum of 300 lbs was obtained from the treasurer of the colony" and money soon Northward (?). A swift express to Allen asking him to be ready with his valiant Green Mountain Boys. (George L. Clark, Silas Deane, 28-29); Arnolds appeals for powder, etc., in May of 1775 from Crown Point. (Amer. Arch., Peter Force, II, 839-842); Deane stated that he had been nick-named "Ticonderoga".

19. In order to secure command of Lake Champlain it became necessary to secure possession of an armed sloop, the Enterprize, lying at St. John's at the north end of the Lake. To effect this, the schooner Liberty, lying at South Bay, was armed and Benedict Arnold assigned as her Commanding Officer. Arnold, although a soldier, had had considerable experience at sea. An illustration of this being set forth in Ch. II of Vol. I, p. 152 of this history. He selected soldiers who had served on the water for his Sailors and Marines. Accompanied by Ethan Allen who had command of a number of batteaux, Arnold sailed for St. John's to capture the Enterprize. Arnold arrived before Allen did and soon had possession of the enemy sloop. These Americans who served as Marines on the Liberty may be classes amongst our earliest Marines; The National and Civil Hist. of Vermont, II, 38-39, citing Gordon, Hist. of Amer. War, I, 335; It is said that Fort William Henry was also captured about this time. (Hist. of N.Y. During the Rev. War, I, 550-551);

Greenwood, "Commodore John Manley", 161-162, states that the sloop (70 tons) was renamed Enterprise and the small schooner seized from Major Skene, the Liberty; further that early in 1776 Continental Congress had offered the position of "Commodore on the Lakes" to Major William Douglas, Pending whose acceptance Captain Jacobus Wynkoop was recognized as Commodore until August when he was superseded by Benedict Arnold; John Lendrum in his Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 312, wrote "they took, also, two small vessels," and "obtained command of Lake Champlain."; Jones, Hist. of N.Y. During Rev. War, I, 547; Gordon, Hist. of the Amer. Rev., II, 13-15; Clowes in his "Royal Navy", III, 356 writes that the wind failed Arnold when in the schooner still 30 miles from St. John's and Arnold with thirty men pulled throughout the night, surprised and captured St. John's and a sloop and destroyed everything else that could float; R. Lamb, in his Journal of Occurrences During the Late Amer. War, 73-75, wrote that Arnold armed a schooner lying at South Bay and captured the sloop at St. John's and obtained command of Lake Champlain; DAR Mag., Nov., 1934, 683; Channing, Hist. of U.S., III, 174-175; Lucas, Hist. of Canada, 101-102; Mahan, Major Operations of the Navy in War of Amer. Independence, 8-9; Carrington, Battles of the Amer. Rev., 119-120; "About the same time, an American officer, afterwards highly distinguished, seized the only ship of the Royal Navy on the Lake Champlain." (Stedman, Hist. Amer. War, I, 138); With a view to control the lake, Champlain our heroes armed a schooner, the command of which was given to Arnold, while Allen was to bring on his men upon flat-boats, to take the only ship of the Royal Navy then on the lake, and which the English kept at anchor near fort St. John. Arnold, with a favourable wind, soon left the boats in the rear, and coming alongside of the British ship, he took possession of it without resistance, and returned with his prize to Ticonderoga. (Jacob K. Neff, The Army and Navy of America, 234, pub in 1845); "He Arnold was then given command of an armed schooner, which, accompanied by Allen, in charge of a fleet of bateaux, started to capture a British sloop of war, lying at St. Johns, at the lower end of the Lake. The wind being fresh, Arnold's schooner out-sailed the bateaux; and he easily captured the sloop and returned." (Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 320); A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1933.

20. The complete letter, original of which is located in
Connecticut Historical Society Archives and published in Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., II, 237, follows:

On the 13th Inst. we rec'd letters from Romans representing the garrison at Ticonderoga in a feeble State both as to men & provisions requesting men & money. At the same time the Gov'r. rec'd a letter from Allen of like import. Whereupon we rallied, sent Col Charles Webb & Col Joshua Porter & Mr. Barn: Deane, with $500 money escorted with Eight Marines from this Town well Spirited & equipped, with directions to proceed to Albany to procure from thence what assistance they could & then to proceed to Ticonderoga with all possible expedition & to do everything to secure & preserve the acquisition.

About four days ago the officers & Soldiers from Ticonderoga & Crown Point were brought into this Town consisting of about Sixty persons, and are here kept at the publik Expence.

The Troops are continually marching for Boston, unanimity & firmness continues to reign here. You cannot conceive what universal joy defused itself through every Breast & Triumph in every countenance on publication of ye the glorious resolutions of the Continental Congress by Mr. Mott. May that unerring wisdom guides the rolling Spheres through the unmeasurable Tracts of ether - that mighty power that sustains the Stupendeous frame of Nature, Inspire your venerable Body with all that Wisdom & firmness that is requisite to guide & direct the important concerns of the American Empire for its safety & preservation against all ye Craft & power of Tyranny the Pope & the Devil.

In haste as ye Post is waiting. With ye greatest esteem I am Sir, your Sincere friend & most obedient humble Servant.

Jesse Root
Hartford May 25th A D 1775

P.S. Inclosed is a copy of a letter from Col Porter & Webb since they went from here. Of ye further acquisitions to ye
20. Continued.

northward the Post will inform.

Silas Deane Esqr.

The "Romans" referred to in the letter is Bernard Romans.

See also Am. Arch., II, 585, 645; Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc. I, 166; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; MC Gaz., Nov., 1930, 9; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 582; An illustration of original letter appearing on p. 683; A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; "Col Webb, Col. Porter, your brother Barnyl and other gentlemen, are gone to Ticonderoga, with cash." (Titus Hosmer at Middletown, Conn. to Silas Deane, 22 May 1775; Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc. II, 238); Continental Congress, sitting at Philadelphia, also received appeals from these two garrisons (Crown Point and Ticonderoga) and resolved "that the Governor of Connecticut be re-

21. Nay Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; A & N Journal, August 9, 1924; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 682; The Honolulu Star-


22. "On ye 17th Day of May last Col Webb Cl Porter and Mr. Barnabas Deane ware appointed by a Number of Gentlemen at Hartford to repair to this place with the following instructions viz * * * inquire after the state of the Fortifications at Ticonderoga, & Crown Point * * * We repaired, to this Place arrived here on ye 19th Day at Evening. * * * next day we set forward for the Forts & on the Rode road between Fort Edward & Lake Jorge, we meat met an Exprece form Col Arnold informing that there was a grate want of Powder & men at the Forts on which Col Porter returned back to Albany & both proc-

23. Barnabas Deane wrote his brother from Albany on June 1, 1775: "I returned here last evening from Crown Point, which place I left on Monday last. I went in company with Col. Webb. We found matters in a very
23. Continued.
critical situation there, arising from the difference between Col. Arnold & Col. Allen, which had risen to a
great height * * * Col. Arnold was very busy in fixing the Sloop & Schooner in the best manner for guarding the
Lake. He has mounted in the Sloop six 6-pounders & 14
swivels, and in the Schooner four 4-pounders & eight
swivels, & is fixing swivels in two Perriaugers. He
destroyed all the water craft at St. Johns that could
not be brot off * * * Col. Webb and myself had an
arduous task to reconcile matters between the two com-
mmanders at Crownpoint * * *" (Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc.,
II, 246-247)

Deane, showing Arnold had two vessels; see Hist. of
Conn.,II, 170; Arnold's appointment dated May 3, 1775,
authorized him to capture "the vessel" upon "the Lake".
(T. Jones, Hist. of N.Y. During the Rev. War, I, 546-
547); Hutchinson, Illustrated Hist. of Washington & His
times, 177-178, described the capture of a sloop of war
at St. John's "and thus obtained the command of Lake
Champlain, by the capture of the first vessel that ever
belonged to the American Navy"; See Mrs. Martha J. Lamb,
Hist. of the City of N.Y., II, 29, for capture of this
"only British vessel on Lake Champlain."; See Kingsford,
Hist. of Canada, V, 415-416; See also Fisher, Struggle
for Amer. Independence, I, 315.

25. "This action was the first collision between a duly com-
missioned vessel in the service of any of the colonies
and any portion of His Majesty's Navy. To Commodore
Whipple is due the honor of firing the first cannon upon
the seas during the Revolution against a vessel of the
British Fleet. The previous conflicts were not the acts
of duly constituted authority but of unauthorized gather-
ings." (The Book of Rhode Island, Distributed in 1930
by R.I. State Bureau of Information, p. 37); Mil. &
Naval Mag., II, 360-361; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 39;
Chadwick, Amer. Rev., 16, 30.

26. DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 683; "I, John Trevett, sailed from
Providence in a sloop called the Catea, commanded by
Abraham Whipple, Esq., of Providence, with a number of
passengers, to sail with a fleet - of armed vessels fix-
ing at Philadelphia in the month of November, 1775 ar-
rived there the same month and found the ships Alfred
and Columbus and brigs Calbot and Andrew Doria and their
23. Continued.

our sloops name was altered to the Providence."

(Journal of John Trevett in R.I. Hist. Mag., 1885-86, VI, 72, Note 17 of Ch. 5); The Katy was purchased by the Government and renamed Providence. (Commodore John Manly, Greenwood, XIX-XXIII); "So early as June the Rhode Island Assembly authorized two vessels to be fitted out at the expense of the Colony for the 'protection of its trade,' which were cruising before July." (Barry, Hist. of Mass., 57-59, citing Staple, Annals of Providence, 265; Sparks Washington, III, 77, 513; and Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924); The Katy was later taken into the Continental Navy as the Providence. (Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 39)

27. Paper read by Dr. Gardner W. Allen before Mass. Hist. Soc. on Nov. 14, 1912, p. 2; Boston Gaz., July 3, 1775; Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., II, 1118; British Ad. Rec., Admirals' Des., 485, 18 June 1775; Hist. Mag., April, 1868; Field, Hopkins, 63-67; "So it was that in the smallest colony [Rhode Island] in America the germ of the United States Navy was first planted." (Lossing, Story of the U.S. Navy, 12); "Captain Whipple proceeded down the Bay, attacked the tender of the Rose and after sharp firing drove her ashore on Conanicut and captured her with valuable naval material." (Book of Rhode Island, pub 1930, 37); On June 15 Commodore Abraham Whipple of the Rhode Island Navy - the first of the state navies - captured a tender of the British frigate Rose - the first authorized capture of a vessel of the enemy. Obviously these captures were not made by Continental vessels - that is, vessels in the pay of the Continent. (Nav Inst Proc, Feb., 1909, XXXIV, No. 2, 160-161; Paullin, Navy Amer. Rev., 80, 484; Mil. & Naval Mag., II, 360-381; Staples, Annals of Providence, 265; But see Note 19, that says first vessel was captured on Lake Champlain in May, 1775; See in this connection Harper, Encyc. of U.S. Hist., X, 336; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924; The Rhode Island Assembly on June 12, 1775, "authorized two vessels to be fitted out."

(Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262); The Washington of the R.I. Navy had a crew of 80 men exclusive of officers; the Katy had a crew of 30 men. (Field, Esek Hopkins 63-64); Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 663.

28. Continued.

"Georgia's Navy was small and unimportant, consisting mostly of galleys. A schooner, however, was commissioned as early as June, 1775." (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., ch. XVI; Paper read by Gardner W. Allen, Nov. 14, 1912, before Mass. Hist. Soc.; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 41); "Georgia, four galleys (vessels propelled by both sails and oars)." (Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 25, 31); July 4, 1775. The second Provincial Congress is held in Savannah with every parish represented. This is Georgia's first secession convention, and places her in active sympathy with the other colonies. ** During this session the first English armed vessel is captured off Savannah by a Georgia schooner, aided by South Carolinians. This is said to be the first provincial vessel commissioned for naval warfare in the Revolution. Georgia's share of the prize is 9,000 pounds of gunpowder, 5,000 of which is sent to Philadelphia at the request of the Continental Congress. (Elfrida De Renne Barrow and Laura Palmer Bell, Anchored Yesterdays, (The Fifth Watch), 66-67); See also Note 30.


30. In July, 1775, South Carolina sent Captains John Barnwell and John Joyner of Beaufort with 40 men in two large and well-armed barges to assist the Georgians [a 10 gun schooner under Captains Oliver Bowen and Joseph Habersham] in taking an English supply ship, which was daily expected at Savannah. It was captured on July 10, (Drayton, Memoirs of Amer. Rev., I, 269-271, 460, Coll. S.C. Hist. Soc., cited in Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 418; Jones, Hist. Ga., II, 181); See Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 173, 275, 316, 418-440; Carrington, Battles of the Amer. Rev., 179-180 with reference to Navy and South Carolina "the first Republic of the New World;" for capture of
30. Continued.


31. The Experiment was the first vessel launched of the Pa. Navy on July 19, 1775 (Pa. Arch., 2d Scr., 229); Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 123, 315, 373-395, 497-498; "By the middle of September (1775) the Committee had a fleet of thirteen gunboats — of the gondola or galley sort — in service." (Scharf and Wescott, Hist. of Phila., I, 399-300); "The Pennsylvania Navy consisted of about ten vessels and nearly thirty boats and galleys." (Paper read by Dr. Gardner W. Allen, Nov. 14, 1912, before Mass. Hist. Soc.; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 40); Pennsylvania "had in 1777 a total of fifty-one vessels." (Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 26); It is related that on St. George's Day, April 23, 1775, about one hundred of the principal men in Philadelphia assembled at the City Tavern according to their custom on the occasion of this anniversary. Mr. [Robert] Morris was the presiding officer. When the festivities were still at their height, a messenger arrived bringing news of the battle of Lexington, which had been fought four days before. At the announcement this company of English loyalists, in the midst of their toasts to the mother country and the King, sprang to their feet. They overturned the tables, and ran into the street as though they had been suddenly called to their country's defence. Mr. Morris found himself facing an almost empty hall, and then and there he pledged himself to the service of the colonies in a struggle, the final result of which no man could certainly foretell. In a few weeks a so-called Committee of Safety was appointed by the Pennsylvania Assembly. (Ellis Paxson Oberholtzer, Robert Morris, Patriot and Financier, pub in 1903, p. 17, citing Waln, Life of Morris); In short, a spirit of enthusiasm for war is gone forth, that has driven away the fear of death; the magazines of provisions and ammunition, by order of the Twelve United Colonies, are directed to be made in all proper places, against the next campaign. (Extract of a letter from Phila., dated July 10, 1775. Letters of the Amer. Rev., 1774-1776, Edited by Maragaret Wheeler Willard, (1925) 168); Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 683.

32. The first Marine so far known to have enlisted in the
32. Continued.

Pa. Navy was Pvt. Charles White who entered the Franklin (Capt. Nicholas Biddle) on September 22, 1775. (Pa. Arch., 2d Ser., I, 397); DAR Mag., Nov., 1924; See in this connection Note 32 that sets forth the enlistment of Private William Thomas in the Connecticut State Navy on August 15, 1775; The first commission of Nicholas Biddle runs as follows:— "We reposing especial trust and confidence in your Patriotism, Valour, conduct and Fidelity, Do by these Presents constitute and appoint you to be Captain of the Provincial Armed Boat, called the Franklin fitted out for the protection of the Province of Pennsylvania, and the Commerce of the River Delaware, against all hostile Enterprizes, and for the defence of American Liberty: you are therefore to take the said Boat into your charge, and carefully and diligently to discharge the duty of Captain by doing and performing all manner of things thereunto belonging. And we do strictly charge and require all Officers, Soldiers and Mariners under your command to be obedient to your orders as Captain. And you are to observe and follow such orders and directions from time to time, as you shall receive from the Assembly or Provincial Convention, during their Sessions, or from this or a future Committee of Safety for this Province, or from your Superior Officer, according to the Rules and Discipline of War, pursuant to the trust reposed in you; This commission to continue in force until revoked by the Assembly or Provincial Convention, or by this or any succeeding Committee of Safety." Philadelphia, August, 1st 1775, (Autobiography of Charles Biddle, p. 393. "Soldiers" here meant Marine).

33. The first Marine (whose name is known of today) to enlist in Connecticut State Navy was Private William Thomas who enlisted August 15, 1775 for duty on the Minerva. (Conn. Men in the Rev., 238-234; Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., VIII, 229-230; But see reference to William Goldsmith of the Spy in this note); This antedates the enlistment of Private Charles White in the Pennsylvania State Navy on September 22, 1775. (See Note 32); "The Colonial Assembly of Connecticut appointed a Committee in April, 1775, to take into consideration the best method of securing, defending and protecting our seacoast and shipping therein." (Middlebrook, Maritime Conn., I, 14); "The First Naval Resolve by the Connecticut Assembly seems to have been made on the 1st day of July, 1775, at Hartford" called for two vessels to be built. (Middlebrook, Maritime Conn., I, 15-16); On August 3, 1775 the Governor
and Council of Connecticut decided to employ the brig Minerva as an armed vessel, "manned with 40 seamen and 40 soldiers or Marines", and "allowed * * * the Marines not exceeding 3.0s per month". "And Capt. Hall" directed "to raise said 40 seamen and 40 Marines or Soldiers by voluntary enlistments, and to encourage and engage at 45 shillings per month to the seamen and not exceeding 40 shillings per month to the soldiers or Marines * * * one month's pay advanced * * *." (Middlebrook, Maritime Conn., I, 18-19); Connecticut Navy had Minerva, Oliver Cromwell, Spy, Defense, Guilford, Schuyler, Mifflin, Old Defence, America, Whiting, Crane, Shark, New Defence. (Middlebrook, Maritime Conn. in Rev., I, 10); "1775. A Muster Roll and Pay Roll for the Brigantine Minerva fitted out" by Connecticut. Captain Giles Hall's men: "Willm Thomas, Marine, enlisted August 15." Other Marines on this roll are: Zebediah Mix, Elisha Ward, John Theaf, Wm Casheen, Richard Hunt, Philip Mahan, Ebenezer Savage, Philip Aspel, James McDavid, Edward Griswold, James Johnson, George Stow, Stephen Jordan, Joseph Grau, Saml Torry, John Wright, John Coutil, Jacob Hail, John Elderkin, John Allen, James Fisher, Peter Gantly, George Spencer, Nathaniel Witmore, Philemon Roberts, John Nickolas, Moses Pelton. "Marines" also served on the Brig Defence. (Conn. Men in the Rev., VIII, 229-234; Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., VIII, 229-230); Capt. Giles Hall's Pay Roll of the Brig Minerva, January 25th 1776. (State Library, Revolution 9.) (Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., VIII, 229-230); Schooner Spy of Connecticut fitted out in Sept. 1775. In October 1777 Zebediah Smith ordered to enlist "seamen and Marines." (Middlebrook, Maritime Conn. I, 28-32); The Connecticut State brig Minerva was ordered October 4, 1775 at the request of Continental Congress of October 5, 1775 to intercept two vessels from England to Quebec. Expedition failed. (Middlebrook, Maritime Conn., I, 21-22); The first prize of a Connecticut State vessel was captured by the tiny schooner Spy. Early in October, 1775, she captured and carried into New London a large ship containing 8,000 bushels of wheat. (Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262) Her Marine Officer was William Goldsmith. (Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., VII, 238-239); Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 354-372, 495-497; The Spy was originally the Britannia and was purchased as a "spy-vessel." (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 356-357); On July 1, 1775, Connecticut authorized two armed vessels to be fitted out. The Marine Officer of the Spy was William Goldsmith; see also Rec. of Conn.
33. Continued.

Men in the Rev., 583; for pay of officers, crew and Marines of Spy see Coll. Conn. State Lib., Hartford, III, 481, 493, 497, 507; for Report of Committee in favor of providing vessel of 70 or 80 ton and a second of 12 to 15 ton for defense of harbor and shipping, May, 1775, see Coll. Conn. State Lib., Hartford, I, 147; for Resolution, July, 1775, for equipping two armed vessels for defense of sea coast to be under direction of Governor and Council see Coll. Conn. State Lib., Hartford, I, 233); Of the four row galleys ordered by the General Assembly of Connecticut in December, 1775, but three appear to have been built. They were the Whiting, built at New Haven; the Crane, built at East Haddam, and the Shark, built at Norwich. * * * Captain Jonathan Lester, of Norwich, built the Shark. * * *


34. "In the course of the war the Massachusetts Navy comprised fifteen sea-going vessels and one galley." (Paper read by Dr. Gardner W. Allen, Nov. 14, 1912 before Mass. Hist. Soc.; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 39-40); On September 28, [1775] it was "Ordered, Thet Col. Orne, Mr. Story, Mr. Cooper, Col. Thompson, Mr.
34. Continued.

Sullivan, Col. Grout, and Mr. Jewett be a Committee to consider the Expediency of fitting out a Number of Armed Vessels." The next day a committee was appointed "to wait on his Excellency General Washington and consult him on the Expediency of fitting out Armed Vessels and to enquire if any Powder can be spared for that purpose." On October 6 the name of Capt. Cutter was substituted for that of Mr. Sullivan on the committee. (Mass. Privaters of the Rev., Allen, 23); On June 20, 1775 Massachusetts resolved to fit out six ships but none were ready until October, 1775. (Mil. and Naval Mag., II, 360-361); The first action taken by the Provincial Congress was on June 7, when it was: Ordered, That the Hon. Col. [James] Warren, Mr. Pitts, Mr. Gerry, the president [Joseph Warren], Col. Freeman, Mr. Pickering, Mr. Batchelder, Hon. Mr. Dexter, and Mr. Greenleaf be a committee to consider the expediency of establishing a number of small armed vessels, to cruise on our sea coasts, for the protection of our trade and the annoyance of our enemies; and that the members be enjoined, by order of Congress, to observe secrecy in this matter. (Allen, Mass. Privaters of the Rev., 20); Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 151, 201, 275, 315-333, 470, 493-495; Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 28; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 684.

35. "The Virginia Navy, authorized by the Provincial Convention in December, 1775, comprised first and last seventy-two vessels of all classes." (Allen, Hist. Nav. Amer. Rev.; Paper read by Dr. Gardner W. Allen, Nov. 14, 1912, before Mass. Hist. Soc.; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 41; Southern Lit. Mess., Jan., 1857; Amer. Arch. 4th Ser., IV, 144, 866 and VI, 1598; Paullin, Hist. Nav. Amer. Rev., ch XIV); December, 1775. And for the greater security of the inhabitants of this colony from depredations of the enemy by water, Be it ordained, That the committee of safety shall, and they are hereby empowered and required to provide from time to time such and so many armed vessels as they may judge necessary for the protection of the several rivers in this colony, in the best manner the circumstances of the county will admit; and, to that end, to raise and take into pay a sufficient number of officers and men, as well sailors as Marines, whose pay shall be settled by the committee of safety, not exceeding the following rates, to wit: To a chief commander of the whole, as commodore, fifteen shillings, to a master ten shillings, a first mate seven shillings and
Continued.

six pence, a second mate five shillings, a boatswain three shillings, a common sailor, two shillings per day; a captain of Marines, six shillings, a lieutenant, four shillings, a midshipman, three shillings, a Marine one shilling and sixpence. Provided always, and be it further ordained, that where the land service will admit of it, and the officers and soldiers of the regular forces shall be willing to enter upon any temporary expedition in such armed vessels, they may be allowed so to do, and shall receive pay according to the rates afore-mentioned; which officers, sailors and Marines, may be removed or disbanded by the said committee of safety, as they shall judge expedient. (Virginia, Henning's Statutes at large, v 9, 1775-78. Convention ordinances, 83); Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; See Virginia Mag., of Hist. and Biog., I, 70-71 for list of thirty Marine officers of Virginia State Navy.

New Hampshire's only naval undertaking was her participation in the Penobscot Expedition, 1779. She contributed the Hampden which was captured by the British. (N.H.Arch., VIII, 106, 186, 195); In March, 1776, the N.H. House of Reps., appointed a Committee of three to look out for an armed vessel to guard the coast. It is not believed that any vessels were procured. (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 476); For Georgia Navy see Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 152, 315, 396-417, 429, 443-447, 449, 450, 456-462, 499-500, 459-462; "New Hampshire had one small ship, the Hampden". (Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 25); "New Hampshire voted in 1776 to build a galley and appointed a Committee to procure an armed vessel. After this her whole naval activity, aside from encouraging privateering, and setting up a prize court, consisted in fitting out a twenty-two gun ship for temporary service in 1779." (Paper read by Dr. Gardner W. Allen, 14 Nov. 1912 before Mass. Hist. Soc.; Allen, Hist. Navy Amer. Rev., I, 42; Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., ch. XII)


"Maryland * * * in addition to one vessel of some size and force, maintained a considerable fleet of galleys, boats, and barges." (Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 41 citing
38. Continued.
Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., V, 1509, 1517); Maryland Navy.
(Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., V, 1509, 1510); Paullin, Amer.

39. North Carolina had a small fleet stationed in the sounds
(Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., V, 1537, 1363; Paper read by
Soc; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 41); Paullin Amer. Rev.,
315, 451-459; Chadwick, Amer. Rev., 30; Amer. St. Pap, 4th
Ser., IV, 308.

40. New Jersey had 4 privateers. (Maclay, Hist. of Amer.
Priv., 316-317); For New Jersey efforts to have a Navy
see Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 477; Minutes Prov. Cong.
and Council of Safety of N.J., 1775-1776, 510, 520, 525,
528; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957; DAR Mag., Nov.,
1924, 684; Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 25.

41. Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 25; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923,
957; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 684.

42. This is common information and shown by the records
including Articles of Confederation.

43. Cortlandt Skinner to his brother Lt. Col. William Skinner,
December, 1775, Amer. Arch. 4th Ser., III, 363-364.

44. Journals of Congress, etc.

45. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; See Subsequent chapters.

46. MC Arch; A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.

47. Florida Indian Wars of 1836; under Robert E. Lee in
1859 at capture of John Brown; Labor Riots of 1877.
(See Collum, Hist. USMC); Army of Cuban Pacification
1906-1909; Vera Cruz, Mexico, 1914; A & N Reg., 5 Nov.
1932.


49. Resolved, That six companies of expert riflemen, be
immediately raised in Pennsylvania, two in Maryland, and
two in Virginia; that each company consist of a captain,
three lieutenants, four serjeants, a drummer or trumpeter,
and sixty-eight privates. That each company, as soon as
Chapter III —54— Volume One

49. Continued.

... shall march and join the Army near Boston, to be there employed as light infantry, under the command of the Chief Officer in that Army. That the pay of the Officers and privates be as follows, viz., a captain @ 20 dollars per month; a lieutenant @ 13 1/3 dollars; a serjeant @ 8 dollars; a corporal @ 7 1/3 dollars; drummer or (trumpeter): 7 1/3 dollars; privates @ 6 2/3 dollars; to find their own arms and cloaths. That the form of the enlistment be in the following words: I,------ have, this day, voluntarily enlisted myself, as a soldier, in the American Continental Army, for one year, unless sooner discharged; And I do bind myself to conform, in all instances, to such rules and regulations, as are, or shall be, established, for the government of the said Army. (Journals Cont. Cong., II, 89-90); "No colony responded more promptly or with more hearty zeal than Maryland to the resolutions of Congress passed 14th June 1775, asking for soldiers to serve against the British army in Boston." (Papers Relating to Maryland Line, ed. by Thomas Balch, 3); "On the 15th of June, the Army was regularly adopted by Congress, and the pay of the Commander-in-chief at five hundred dollars a month." (Irving, Life of Wash., I, 413); After much debate Congress decided to raise an army, and on June 16 it created a military establishment consisting of a commander-in-chief, two major generals, eight brigadier generals, one adjutant general, and numerous subordinate officers (all specified by title). On June 30 it adopted army rules and regulations. In this legislation of June, 1775, the Continental Army originated. (Nav Inst Proc, Nov., 1927, 1158); On September 29, 1775, Congress resolved "that a Committee of three members of this Congress be appointed to repair immediately to the Camp at Cambridge to confer with General Washington," and with the Governors of Connecticut, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, etc., "touching the most effectual method of continuing, supporting and regulating a Continental Army." The above Committee had to have detailed instructions from Congress to guide and limit its actions, so a committee was appointed "to prepare instructions for the Committee ordered to wait on the General" and the Governors. The report of this committee was received by Congress on October 2, 1775. It presented a draught of instructions "which was read and being debated by paragraphs, was agreed to." The most interesting portion of the instructions directed "that the Committee confer with the General and whom

-54-
49. Continued.

else they think proper on the subject of raising a Continental Army and keeping it up for one year from the last day of December next," which, of course, was December 31, 1775. (Journals of Congress; Infantry Journal, Jan., 1926, 1-2; Biglow, Works of Franklin, VII, 85; Washington's Writings, III, 123) The next step in the organization of the Continental or "Regular" Army was taken by the Continental Congress on November 4, 1775, when it resolved "that the New Army, intended to lie before Boston, consist of 20,372 men, officers included," and that the "said troops be enlisted to the 31st day of December, 1776 • • • Then, in keeping with the anticipation of forming the "New" or Continental Army, the "Rules and Regulations of the Continental Army," were extensively modified on November 7, 1775. The Regular Army was formed on the day set — January 1, 1776 — and three days later George Washington, its Commander-in-Chief, wrote to Joseph Reed: We "hoisted the Union Flag, in compliment to the United Colonies," the same day "which gave being to the New Army." (Infantry Journal, Jan., 1926, 2; Force, Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., IV, 570-571); There is another day that the Regular Army of the United States should celebrate. It is New Year's Day, for on January 1, 1776, it came into being. Gen. George Washington marked this memorable date in his Orderly Book with a General Order reading in part as follows: "This day giving commencement to the New Army, which, in every point of view is entirely Continental. The General • • • wishes it to be considered that an Army without Order, Regularity, Discipline, is no better than a Commissioned Mob • • • It is Subordination and Discipline (the life and soul of an Army) which next under Providence is to make us formidable to our enemies • • •" (Infantry Journal, Jan., 1926, 1-2); On January 1, 1776 "the very day Congress determined" to "govern apart from the Militia and Minute Men, the little handful of soldiers it had directly raised," there "was raised over Boston Camp" the Cambridge Flag. (Ganoe, Hist. U.S. Army, 20); Infantry Journal of January, 1926, 1-2, contains an article by Major Edwin North McClellan "The Birthday of the Regular Army:" A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932: We want also a regular general to assist us in disciplining the Army, which in twelve months' time, and perhaps less, by frequent skirmishes may be brought to stand against any troops, however formidable they may be, with the sounding names of Welsh Fusileers, grenadiers, &c. And
49. Continued.

although the pride of our people would prevent their submitting to be led by any general not an American, yet I cannot but think that General Lee might be so established as to render great service by his presence and councils with our officers. I should heartily rejoice to see this way the beloved colonel Washington, and do not doubt, the New England generals would acquiesce in showing to our sister colony Virginia, the respect, which she has before experienced from the continent, in making him generalissimo. (Elbridge Gerry "To the honourable members of the continental congress from Massachusetts Bay" 5-4-1775; James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", 79); The Continental Army is very properly under the direction of the Continental Congress. ** There is at present a necessity for it; the Continental Army is kept up within our colony, most evidently for our immediate security. But it should be remembered that history affords abundant instances of established armies making themselves the masters of those countries, which they were designed to protect. There may be no danger of this at present, but it should be a caution not to trust the whole military strength of a colony in the hands of commanders independent of its established legislative. (Mr. S. Adams to Mr. Gerry, Philadelphia, Oct. 29, 1775; James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", 119-120); A Continental General as such, I am clearly of opinion, ought not to have any command of the militia. It is by no means necessary for general defence. It would lead a principal servant of the government to forget his station, and conceive himself its master; but since, in military operations, it is absolutely necessary to have but one head, each assembly would find it necessary that the commanding officer of the army, which their militia should occasionally reinforce, should take the command of such part as they might order to his assistance, and this during the pleasure only of such assembly, upon which plan he would, as to this, be in effect a colonial officer. We already see a growing thirst for power in some of the inferior departments of the army, which ought to be regulated so far as to keep the military entirely subservient to the civil in every part of the united colonies. (Mr. Gerry to Mr. Adams, Watertown, Dec. 13, 1775; James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", 123-123); Your very acceptable letter of the 13th of December is now before me. Our opinions of the necessity of keeping the military power under the direction and control of the legislative, I always thought were alike. (Mr. S. Adams to Mr. Gerry, Philadelphia, Jan. 2, 1776; James T.
49. Continued.
Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", 135); An interesting condition regarding canvas for the sails of war vessels is shown by the following three letters: "We have stripped the seaports of canvas to make tents; and it is of great importance to possess ourselves of about five hundred pieces of ravens duck to keep the soldiers in health." (Elbridge Gerry at Watertown, Conn. June 4, 1775 to members Continental Congress from Mass. Bay, James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry," 78); "I have but a moment's time left to tell you, that your order for the duck, &c, cannot be complied with, there being not enough here to make it worth while to think of sending; and indeed they are in want of the same articles here." (John Hancock, President of Congress to Mr. Gerry, 13 June 1775, James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", I, 82-83); "As heavy duck is wanted for the New Hampshire frigate which cannot be procured in that State, we desire you will without delay send forward to John Langdon Esq. Eighty Bolts of heavy duck if that quantity belonging to the Continent is in your possession or in the possession of any other person in your State." (To Daniel Tillinghast, 30 Oct. 1776, Paulin, Out-Letters of the Marine Committee, I, 46)

50. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; See also Notes 55, 56, 57.

51. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; See also Notes 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 71.

52. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; See also Notes 87, 88, 89.

53. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; See also Notes 90, 91.


55. Thursday, June 15, 1775. Resolved, That a General be appointed to command all the continental forces, raised, or to be raised, for the defence of American liberty. $500 per mo. for "his pay and expenses." George Washington was unanimously elected. (Journals of Continental Congress, II, 91; Pennsylvania Packet, 11 Dec. 1775); On June 15th George Washington was appointed "to command all the Continental forces"; on July 4, 1775, it was announced in general orders that the "troops of the United Provinces of North America" were taken over by Congress. The Army then numbered not more than 14,500 men, including perhaps the newly organized train of artillery which had been authorized in April by the province. There existed also a coastguard which had been
55. Continued.
raise( to defend the sea-board towns upon which the British made depredations in their excursions after food. (Charles Knowles Bolton, The Private Soldier under Washington, 19-20 citing Washington to Congress, 9 July 1775. Journals Provincial Congress of Mass., 482); A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.

56. A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; Washington's office, created June 15, 1775, referring to "forces" and not to "Army" or "Navy", might be construed as including Naval Forces, for in the early days it was not uncommon for Generals to command naval forces. There was no Navy and later resolutions of Congress admitted direction of Naval affairs by Washington and also approved his action in creating a fleet. See Notes 61, 77.

57. George Washington accepted before Congress with a speech; "Resolved, That two Major Generals be appointed for the American Army": 8 Brigadier Generals, Adjutant General, Commissary General, QM General, Pay M. General, Chief Engineer, "Secretary to the General" $66.00. (Journal of Continental Congress, June 16, 1775); "Col. Washington on his appointment to be Commander-in-Chief, refused any stipulated salary, saying "he would accept expenses only," "One thousand riflemen are raised by order of Congress * * *" (Two letters from Philadelphia dated June 20, 1775, in Force, Amer. Arch., II, 1033); June 19, 1775 appointed him "General and Commander in Chief of the Army of the United Colonies and of all the forces raised or to be raised by them and of all others who shall voluntarily offer their service and join the said Army for the defence of American liberty and for repelling every hostile invasion thereof. And you are hereby vested with full power and authority to act as you shall think for the good and welfare of the Service * * *" (Photo of original commission in Frothingham, Washington Commander-in-Chief, 50-51); Instructions to General Washington. (Secret Journal of Congress, I, 17-18); Orders to General Washington by Continental Congress: "This Congress having appointed you to be General and Commander-in-Chief of the Army of the United Colonies, and of all the Force raised or to be raised by them" etc., proceed to Massachusetts Bay "and take charge of the Army of the United Colonies." (Force, Amer. Arch., III, 58); Colonel Washington is appointed commander in chief of the Continental Army; I shall sign his commission tomorrow, and he will depart in a few days. He is a fine man. You will judge of the
57. Continued.

propriety of the mode of his reception. Ten companies of fine riflemen from this province, Maryland, and Virginia, are ordered to proceed immediately to your army; these are clever fellows. (John Hancock President of Congress to Mr. Gerry, June 18, 1775, James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", I, 83); Congress gave command to George Washington on June 16, 1775. (Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 349); Commission of General Washington was as "General and Commander-in-Chief of the Army of the United Colonies, and of all the forces now raised, or to be raised, by them," etc. (Journals of Congress, 17 June 1775, II, 96; original is in the Library of Congress; Penna. Packet, Dec. 11, 1775); See also Journals of Congress II, 91-92; There is something charming to me in the conduct of Washington. A gentleman of one of the first fortunes upon the Continent, leaving his delicious retirement, his family and friends, sacrificing his ease, and hazarding all in the cause of his country! His views are noble and disinterested. He declared, when he accepted the mighty trust, that he would lay before us an exact account of his expenses and not accepting a shilling for pay, the express waits. Adieu. (Mr. J. Adams to Mr. Gerry, 18 June, 1775, James T. Austin, "The Life of Elbridge Gerry", I, 90); A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.

58. As the vessels of Washington's Fleet "were manned by soldiers and were commanded by Army Officers, and were designed to weaken the Army of the enemy by capturing his transports carrying supplies and troops, Washington was able to derive his authority for procuring and fitting out the fleet from his commission as Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army." (Paullin, Navy of the Rev., 60). It should be noted that Washington interpreted his instructions and commission to extend to naval matters and that Congress approved such construction.; Meanwhile, as a military measure to make more effective the siege of Boston, Washington had adopted the policy of fitting out armed vessels, manned by the army, to cruise in Massachusetts Bay. The first of these vessels, the schooner Hannah, got to sea September 2. This little fleet took many prizes and brought in military stores and other property much needed by the British army in Boston and of great value to the poorly equipped American army. (Allen, Mass. Privateers of the Rev., 33-24); "Washington thus established a little Navy of his own, with a prize court necessary to pass upon the propriety
58. Continued.

of the capture and commissioners to take charge of captured material." (Chadwick, Amer. Navy, 14-15); "Bunker Hill came on June 17, 1775 and on July 3d, George Washington assumed command of the Army around Boston." (DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 684); A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; "** even before Whipple had sailed, the American Commander-in-Chief had determined upon a naval venture of his own. ** This first plunge into naval strategy by Washington is all the more interesting from the fact that he felt doubtful of his own authority in this realm, since Congress had appointed him only to command the Army, but the need of naval assistance was so great that he took the responsibility in advance of Congressional approval and appointed seafaring contingents from the Army to man the ships." (Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 7-13); "One of the first things Washington did after assuming command ** was the fitting out of several privateers, officered and manned by New England sailors he found in camp." (Geo. F. Belden's Introduction, on Nov. 15, 1902, to Hill's Twenty-Six Historic Ships); On Nov. 17, 1775 Congress appointed a Committee of seven "to take into consideration so much of said Washington's letter as relates to the disposal of such vessels and cargoes belonging to the enemy, as shall fall into the hands of, or be taken by, the inhabitants of the United Colonies." (Journals of Congress, Nov. 17, 1775, III, 358-359); This committee submitted report of eight paragraphs on November 25, 1775 which Congress agreed to, the last paragraph including: "That the captures heretofore made by vessels fitted out at the Continental charge were justifiable, and that the distribution of the captor's share of the prizes by General Washington, be confirmed, which is as follows: Fere follows shares for each officer and man including 1½ shares for a Serjeant and one share for each Private. (Journals of Congress, III, 370-375)

59. Maclay, Hist. of Amer. Privateers; Scharf & Westcott, Hist. of Phila., I, 302; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924; "While he was never addressed as 'Admiral Washington', he might well be hailed as the 'Father of the American Navy.'" (DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 684; MC Gaz., Nov., 1930, 9); Washington "well might be called the 'Father of the American Navy.'" (Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 958); "well might be hailed as the 'Father of the American Navy and Her Marines'. ** That was the day General (might we say 'Commodore') Washington **" (A & N Reg., 5 Nov.
59. Continued.

'AnT 'fo Washington himself was due the first organiz—ed force of the Americans in the Revolution upon the sea." (Chadwick, The Amer. Navy, 14); "In January, 1776, Washington appointed John Manly Commodore of the Fleet. The other commanders thereby became subject to Manly's orders." (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 64); "The month of April in the year 1775 arrived. Americans rose en masse on land and sea against Great Britain. Continental Congress quickly assumed control. It commissioned George Washington as Commander—in—Chief. He assumed command of the Army around Boston on July 3, 1775. Congress looked upon him as leader of both land and water forces in the early days. In the Fall of 1775, Washington organized a fleet in New England waters. Later, in October, Congress directed Washington to secure two armed vessels of the State navies, place them on 'Continental risque and pay,' and further, to give orders for the 'proper encouragement to the Marines and Seamen,' who had been detached from his Army to man the vessels. Other vessels were added. They all flew the Pine Tree Flag. This date of October 5, 1775, can be looked upon as the birthday of the Regular Navy. Washington, too, probably had administrative control of Arnold's Fleet on Lake Champlain in 1776. On the evacuation of Boston in March, 1776, Washington moved to New York and organized another fleet of war vessels. Several times Congress made Washington a virtual dictator, and as such he exercised a certain degree of control over some vessels of the Navy. To cap the climax Continental Congress legislated as follows: That 'an addition of thirty—four dollars a month be added to the pay of Joseph Reed, Esq., Secretary to General Washington on account of the extraordinary services at present attending that office by reason of the General's direction of the NAVAL DEPART—MENT.'" (The Leatherneck, 25 April 1926, p. 3)

60. "By this law," resolving that the "pay of the Commander—in—Chief of the Fleet, be $125 per month," it will be seen that Mr. Hopkins was not made a captain but the 'Commander—in—Chief;' a rank that was intended to correspond in the Navy, to that held by Washington in the Army. His official appellation, among seamen, appears to have been styled that of 'Commodore', though he was frequently styled 'Admiral' in the papers of the period." (Cooper, Hist. Navy, U.S., I, 86—87); "On November 5 the Naval Committee appointed Esek Hopkins, of Rhode Island, Commander—in—Chief of the Fleet. The Committee may have
cread this office as analogous to Washington's position in the Army. It is more probable that the office was borrowed from the British Navy, in which the * * * The first and only Commander-in-Chief of the American Navy * * *" (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 53-53); This Committee did not "create" this office, Continental Congress did. It has generally been supposed that the intention of Congress in making Hopkins commander-in-chief was to give him the same rank that "Washington held in the army. It seems more likely, however, that Congress merely meant to give him command of this particular fleet. The wording of his appointment by the Naval Committee and of the resolutions quoted above, together with the fact that each of the captains was assigned, also by resolution of Congress, to a specified vessel, would indicate this. Stephen Hopkins, writing to Esek November 6, 1775, says: "You will perceive by a letter from the Committee, dated yesterday, that they have pitched upon you to take the command of a Small Fleet, which they and I hope will be but the beginning of one much larger." A resolution of Congress dated January 2, 1778, states that Hopkins "was appointed commander in chief of the fleet fitted out by the Naval Committee." He does not appear to have been mentioned officially and authoritatively, that is to say by the Naval or Marine Committee, though he was once by a special committee, as the Commander-in-Chief of the Navy. In addition to his own fleet several other Continental vessels cruised in 1778, which do not seem to have been under his orders. Hopkins was an elderly man at this time, having been born in 1718. He had spent much of his life at sea and was a privateersman in the French and Indian War. (Allen, Nav. Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 30-31); A & N Reg., 5 Nov., 1932; In the discussion over the censure of Hopkins, Hancock's letters show Hopkins was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Fleet, not of the Navy. "Hopkins died in 1802, in his 84th year, and a bronze figure of heroic size has been reared over his grave in Providence, R.I., commemorating the fact that Esek Hopkins was 'Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Navy during the American Revolution from December 22, 1775 to January 3, 1778'." (Hill, Twenty-Six Historic Ships, 17); "Hopkins was Commander-in-Chief in the American Navy from 1775 to 1778." (Paullin, in Out-Letters, Marine Committee, I, 27)
account of the extraordinary services at present attending that office by reason of the General's direction of the Naval Department." (Clark, Naval Hist. of the U.S., II, 36); "Under orders of Congress he had 'direction of the Naval Department'." (Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 957-958); In this connection the following Resolution of Congress of July 26, 1780, is of interest: "The Trumbull, Confederacy, and Deane, frigates, with the Saratoga, sloop, of war, were put under the direction of General Washington to be employed in co-operating with the French Fleet." A Report of August 7, 1780, also refers to the same subject. (Clark, Naval Hist. of the U.S., II, 75-76); This was not the only time that Washington administered naval affairs. He raised a fleet around New York; "In April, 1776, immediately upon Washington's arrival in New York, he began to equip a fleet similar to the one at Boston." (Paulin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 70); Washington's New York Fleet. (Greene-wood, Captain John Manley, 161-165); DAR Mag., Nov., 1924; We are informed by a Letter from the Captains of the Continental Frigates in Hudsons River that the General officers sent by His Excellency General Washington to view the fortifications and obstructions in Said River were of opinion that the frigates would be serviceable in defending and covering the same and we find by an extract from your Minutes enclosed that you were of the same opinion. In consequence whereof we have now given orders to the said Captains to have the frigates put in as good a state of defence as can be admitted, and to follow and obey such orders as they may receive from General Washington or the Commanding officer who may direct the operations in that quarter. (Paulin, Out-Letters Marine Committee, I, 147-148); As it is the opinion of the General officers directed by his Excellency General Washington to take the most effectual measures for securing the command of the North River that the Continental Frigates will be of essential service in securing the Chain and obstructions in Said River; and as by your Letter of the 9th instant we find you entertain a similar sense. We now think proper to direct that you have the frigate under your Command put in as good a State of defence as can be admitted of, and follow such orders as may be given you by his Excellency the General, or the Commanding officer appointed to direct the operations in that quarter, using your best judgment in the execution of such orders as you may receive. (Paulin, Out-Letters Marine Committee, I, 146); On July 26, 1780 Congress resolved to put the frigates Trumbull, Confederacy and Deane and sloop of war Saratoga (These
Chapter III

61. Continued.

4 and Alliance whole Continental Navy) under George Washing-

ton to cooperate with de Ternay's Fleet. But British

bottled de Ternay up in Narragansett Bay. (Howard's Hard-
ing, 130)

62. "General Washington, Commander-in-Chief of both the sea

and land forces, up to that time." (Geo. E. Belknap on

Nov. 15, 1902, in his Introduction to Hills Twenty-Six

Historic Ships); Washington was even made virtual dicta-
tor at times and exerted higher leadership than that of

commanding the entire armed forces of the United States.

63. See MC Hist v I, ch VIII, IX, X


Rev., I, 62-64 citing Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., III, 36, 39,

137, 461, 631, 653, 654, 682, 710, 718, 723, 808, 842,

1037; TAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 684; MC Gaz., Nov., 1930,

p. 9; In a letter to Governor Cooke, dated August 4, 1775

Washington suggested to him a plan for procuring powder

from Bermuda. "We understand there are two armed vessels

in your province," etc. wrote George Washington. (Sparks,

III, 47, 77); Governor Nicho Cooke at Providence, R.I.

on August 8, 1775 wrote Washington: "By a vessel which

arrived here on the 30th ultimo [July 30, 1775], from

Cape Francois, we are informed that the Captain of the

vessel sent from this port to the Cape for a quantity of

warlike stores, in which the committee of Safety for the

Colony of Mass. had interested themselves, had executed

his commission, and was to sail with a large quantity in

day or two, so that she may be hourly expected." (Force

Amer. Arch., III, 69); "In this extremity he turned to

Governor Cooke, of Rhode Island, who had lately armed a

few small vessels to serve as State naval forces. The

General wrote on August 4 * * * How early the American

cause turned to the sea! Governor Cooke agreed to the

plan and Captain Abraham Whipple sailed for Bermuda in

September." (Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 7-12);

The Washington Post of August 14, 1932 p. 4, contains an

interesting and long article on this subject, setting

the date as August 14, 1775.

65. "The sequence of events made this act of Washington [com-

missioning the Hannah] unquestionably the beginning of

the United States Navy." (Frothingham, Washington, Com-

mander-in-Chief, 88); A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.
If one of his officers was "Commodore" John Manley, why not "Admiral" for the Commander-in-Chief. "Captain Broughton, of Marblehead, received a naval commission from Washington, dated September 2, 1775 - the first of the kind issued by the Continental Congress through its authorized agents." (Lossing, Story of the U.S. Navy, 18); "In January he appointed Manley Commodore of the Fleet." (Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 11); In the fall of the year 1775, General Washington commissioned Nicholas Broughton and (John Selman), both living in Marblehead, the former as Commodore of two schooners, one mounting 8 four-pound cannon, and manned by seventy seamen, and the other of less force, having only sixty-five men. The Commodore hoisted his broad pendant on board the former, and Selman commanded the latter. (John Adams to Elbridge Gerry, 9 Feb. 1813, Austin, Life of Gerry, I, 100-101); On January 20, 1776 George Washington wrote Captain Charles Dyar: "You being appointed Captain and Commander of the armed schooner Harrison, in the service of the United Colonies * * * As Captain Manley is appointed Commodore of the four schooners now fitted out * * *" (Amer. St. Pap, 4th Ser., IV, 791); At length, on the 1st of February 1776, the Navy, if so it might be called, was formed into a new establishment, being composed of four vessels; the Hancock, commanded by Manley as commodore; the Warren, Captain Burke; the Lynch, Captain Ayres; the Harrison, Captain Dyer. The instructions were the same, as those originally given to Captain Broughton, with the addition of three articles:—"1. As Captain Manly is appointed Commodore of the four schooners now fitted out, he will fix upon proper signals by which you may know each other, and you are to obey him as such in all cases. If it should happen that a prize is taken in sight of other vessels, fitted out at the Continental expense, or at the charge of individuals, the rules, which take place among private ships of war, are to be observed in the distribution of the prize-money. 2. You, your officers, and men are, from the date hereof, to consider yourselves as engaged in the service of the United Colonies, and in every respect subject to the rules and regulations formed by the Congress for the government of the army, raised for the defence of American liberty, or as nearly so as possible, consistent with the difference of the land and sea service. A book of the rules and articles you will receive herewith, at the end of which, you, your officers, and men must subscribe your names." (Sparks, Washington's Writings, III, 519).
67. "1. You, being appointed a Captain in the army of the United Colonies of North America, are hereby directed to take the command of a detachment of said army, and proceed on board the schooner Hannah, at Beverly, lately fitted out and equipped with arms, ammunition, and provisions at the Continental expense. * * * 6. For your own encouragement, and that of the other officers and men to activity and courage in this service, over and above your pay in the Continental army, you shall be entitled to one third part of the cargo of every vessel by you taken and sent into port (military and naval stores only excepted, which, with vessels and apparel, are reserved for public service), which said third part is to be divided among the officers and men in the following proportions; to a captain six shares; a first lieutenant five; a second lieutenant four; ship's master three; steward two; mate one and a half; gunner one and a half; boatswain one and a half; gunner's mate and sergeant one and a half; privates one share each. * * * Given under my hand, at Head-Quarters, Cambridge, this 2d day of September, 1775." (Instructions of Washington to Captain Nicholson Broughton in Sparks, Washington's Writings: III 517-518; Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 20; Force, Amer. Arch., III, 633); "On the second of September, Washington acting under his general powers, instructed Broughton of Marblehead, as an Army Captain, 'to take command' * * * in a schooner. * * * other vessels were employed under the federal authority, with good success." (Bancroft's, Hist U.S., VIII, 69); Meanwhile, as a military measure to make more effective the siege of Boston, Washington had adopted the policy of fitting out armed vessels, manned by the army, to cruise in Massachusetts Bay. The first of these vessels, the schooner Hannah, got to sea September 2. This little fleet took many prizes and brought in military stores and other property much needed by the British army in Boston and of great value to the poorly equipped American army. (Allen, Mass. Privateers of the Rev., 23-24); "With Glover's brother and favorite son aboard, Broughton sailed on the 5th, and two days later sent into Gloucester the ship Unity * * * but on the 10th he was himself driven ashore, just outside of Beverly Harbor, by the Nautilus." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley 6); The Hannah "became the first warship regularly commissioned by authority derived from the United Colonies of North America, and given a definite mission against the enemy." (Frothingham, Washington, Commander-in-Chief, 85); "From the first, however, the great advantage to be derived from fitting out armed cruisers which might,
67. Continued.

by intercepting the enemy's transports, enable him to supply his own troops, was very evident to the General, who, accordingly, directed Colonel Glover's schooner, the Hannah, at Beverly, to be fitted out and equipped at the Continental expense." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 5)

On September 2, 1775, Washington commissioned Nicholas Broughton of Marblehead to command the Hannah, with a crew of soldiers from Glover's "Amphibious Regiment." (Robert E. Peabody's, Captain John Manley, 2-11, in Essex Institute, XLV, 1909, citing Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., III, 633); Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 5-6; Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262; Barry, Hist. of Mass., 57-59 citing Correspondence of J. Adams, in Works, X, 29-32; Austin, Life of Gerry, I, 101, 513-520; Sparks, Washington, III, 517, 518; Maclay, Hist. Amer. Privateers. 55-66, wrote of Washington using vessels on his own responsibility; Allen, Nav. Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 20-21, 60; Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 8; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 584; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1911, 433; Nav Inst Proc, August, 1926, 1554; A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1922, Paine, Joshua Barney, 117-118; Paulin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 33, 61; the first Captain commissioned by Washington was Nicholas [Nicholson] Broughton of Glover's Regiment to command Hannah, on September 2, 1775. He sailed and captured Unity. (Weite, Origin of the American Navy, 5); Greenwood, in his Captain John Manley, p. 6 states that on the 30th of September, Washington's secretary Colonel Joseph Reed, informed the Massachusetts General Court that in order to intercept the transports daily arriving at Boston, Washington had directed more vessels to be immediately equipped, and that their prizes would be at the disposal of the Court.

68. Peabody, Captain John Manley, 2-11, citing Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., III, 633; Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 260-262; "Sent into Gloucester the ship Unity." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 6); Another force of a quasi-naval character, about this time, was that which carried Colonel Benedict Arnold's force to Kennebec. "Colonel Arnold's flotilla of eleven sail, preceded by the schooner Broadbay, Captain James Clarkson, had left Newburyport, September 19, 1775, for Kennebec, also carrying the old English colors, and signals were to be made with 'the jack and ensign'." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 7)

69. Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 62; The first vessel in the Boston fleet was the Hannah commanded by Nicholas Broughton, a captain in the Army. On September 6, 1775, the
69. Continued.
Hanq, h tuok a prize — the first capture made by a Continental vessel. (Nav Inst Proc, Nov., 1927, 1159).

70. While Congress was debating the subject of a "Congressional" Regular Navy, backing and filling, wondering whether a Navy could be formed, Washington was actually creating a Navy. "The first suggestion for a Naval Establishment for the colonies came from General Washington, soon after he assumed command of the Army at Cambridge. He saw if he was to be successful in his siege of Boston, it would be necessary to have some armed ships to cut off supplies to the British from the sea. Through his efforts five or six small vessels were soon afloat as privateers, and their success induced Congress to take action for the establishment of a Regular Navy." (William Henry Smith, Hist. of the Cabinet of the U.S., 401, 402, 403, 406, 408); Paulin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 61; "The creation of a naval force by the American Commander-in-Chief was thoroughly justified by the necessities confronting his Army and by the results achieved in giving indispensable assistance to his operations on shore. The experience was a most valuable first step in his naval education which was to be matured to great heights in the gruelling years of war which were ahead of him. From these humble beginnings he was to become a master in the difficult art of employing large fleets effectively and decisively in joint military-naval operations." (Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 7-12); "You being recommended to his Excellency as a proper person to transact the business of the several armed vessels fitted out, or to be fitted at the Continental expense. * * * whenever any of the Continental vessels put into Cape Ann * * * as you are appointed a Continental agent only * * *." (Instructions to Winthrop Sargent, Agent, by Headquarters, January 1, 1776, Amer. St. Pap, 4th Ser., IV, 537-538).

71. "Soon after he assumed command of the troops before Boston, General Washington, * * * issued several commissions to different small vessels." (Cooper, Hist. Navy U.S., I, 75); Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 8; See also Notes 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70.

72. On October 4, 1775 Washington appointed Colonel John Glover and Stephen Moylan agents to equip two vessels at Salem, Marblehead, or Newburyport, and they were directed to name suitable men for prize agents in the leading
72. Continued.


73. See Notes 82, 83.

74. MC Arch.

75. The crew of the Lee "consisted of fifty men of Colonel Glover's Amphibian Regiment." (Nav Inst Proc, August, 1926, 1555); Glover's "Amphibian Regiment." (Peabody's, Captain John Manley, 2-II, in Essex Institute, VLI, 1909, citing Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., III, 633); "This was the Essex County regiment of Colonel John Glover, of Marblehead, which was well called 'amphibious'." (Frothingham, Washington, Commander-in-Chief, 85); See Note 67.

76. "Marblehead Marines". (Lamb, Hist. City N.Y., II, 148-150); Glover's "Marine Regiment" (Peabody's, Captain John Manley, 2-II); The late Colonel Thomas M. Wood, USMC, called Glover the founder of the Marine Corps and insisted in taking his friends to view Glover's Monument in Boston. "We passed the Hooper House, now owned by the Youngs Mens Christian Association, where Lafayette was entertained in that era of princely hospitality. A white house, dated 1763, was the home of John Glover, commander of the "Marblehead Marines," who stood out as one of the most salient personalities of the American Revolution. Born in Salem, he was a shoemaker there, and a fisher in Marblehead. In 1773 he was appointed colonel of the Marblehead Marine regiment, which became a part of the Continental Army." (Catherine Beach Ely, Quaint Charms of Salem and Marblehead, Amer. Motorist, June, 1930, 17-18).

77. On December 2, 1775 Congress "Resolved, That the Congress approve the General's [Washington's] fitting out armed vessels to intercept the enemy's supplies." (Journals of Congress, III, 401); On December 2, 1775 Congress voted approval of the General's fitting out these cruisers to intercept the enemy's supplies, and the President writes, "I forward you several commissions for the officers of the armed vessels;" soon after which they are alluded to on the records as "the Armed Vessels in the service of the United Colonies." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 16); The mission accomplished by Washington's Fleet was a naval mission not one of an Army.; The report of the Com-
The Committee on Revolutionary Claims, made January 7, 1831, says: "The Committee are aware that, in this clause, (as amended August 24, 1780) no allusion in terms is made to officers of the Navy; but it should be remembered that, as a distinct and efficient arm of the national defence, the Navy was not fully recognized by Congress during the Revolutionary War, and that the Department itself was not organized until April 1798. It may with reason, then, be inferred that individuals engaged in the naval as well as the land service, at that period, were included by Government under one general military head, or that the word navy, in the resolution of August 1780, was accidentally omitted. (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 168-169); "There has been much confusion regarding the manner in which these armed schooners were commissioned. Some historians call them naval vessels. Thomas Clark in his Naval History speaks of them as privateers, and Edgar S. Maclay in his History of the Navy calls them State cruisers. Practically all writers take one of these three opinions, but a careful study of the American Archives supplemented by the information contained in the original documents in the possession of the Beverly Historical Society shows the real status of these vessels. They were fitted out and commissioned by Washington, as General of the Continental Army, in connection with the Siege of Boston, solely to intercept supplies going to the British Army in Boston. They were chartered at the Continental expense, but their captains were captains in the Army of the United Colonies and their crews were soldiers from the Army who still received their pay from the Army Paymaster. The vessels were under the control of Washington as leader of the Siege of Boston." (Peabody's, Captain John Manley, 6, in Essex Institute, XLI, 1909); The Standards, Flags and Banners of the Pa. Soc., S.A.R., 19; Harper, Encyc. of U.S. Hist., III, D-F; Greenwood, John Manley, 14-15, 86; Barry, Hist. of Mass., 57-59 citing Frothingham, Siege of Boston, 261-262; and Staples, Annals of Providence, 265-270; Peabody, Captain John Manley, 2-11; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 685; Nav Inst Proc, August, 1926, 1555; Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., 1, 65; "I have observed that you frequently did propose discharging those vessels that were fitted out as Cruisers by General Washington and the Committee were always of your opinion but somehow or other in the multiplicity of business and in their late confusion they omitted to give you orders. Now Sir, as I know it was their desire to have those vessels paid off.
77. Continued.

and dismissed the service I will venture to authorize your doing it and shall send the Committee a Copy of this Letter which you may deem a proper authority: But as I have mentioned in another Letter your employing one of those Vessels to carry the dispatches to France, you must either keep that one in pay or buy her, which I should much prefer, and if any of the rest of them are good Vessels, suitable for Cruizers I should think it best to buy them and continue them in the service, especially as I suppose some of the Commanders and officers have merit to deserve a continuance in the service: but I am utterly against continuing them on hire and so I think are all the Committee." (Robert Morris at Phila. to John Bradford, 7 Feb. 1777, Paullin, Out-letters of Marine Committee, I, 72-73); on December 3, 1775, Manley carried into Marblehead Harbor the large sloop Concord loaded with stores. (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 38); "Inclosed are several documents by which you will learn that you are appointed Commissioners to transact some business on behalf of the United States with the Gentlemen who were appointed Agents by General Washington for the Prizes taken by the fleet fitted out by his directions. * * * You will please to observe that the Captors in the above mentioned Fleet, are not entitled to so large a proportion of the Prizes, as those who have served in the Navy line constituted by Congress - You will be pleased therefore to have recourse to the Regulations made by Genl. Washington relative to this matter, and to subsequent Resolutions of Congress." (To Issac Smith, Ebenezer Storer, and William Philips, of Boston, Mass., 31 March 1777, Paullin, Out-letters of Marine Committee, I, 85-86); "Messrs Issac Smith, Ebenezer Storer, & William Philips are appointed by this Committee, Commissioners to adjust the several accounts of the Agents appointed by General Washington for the fleet fitted out by his directions, to value such goods as they duly delivered for the use of the United States and give Credit agreeable to such valuation, also to receive any balances due from, and pay any due to such Agents, and to require them to pay the proper proportion to the Captors. You, as one of the said Agents are required to pay due regard to the applications of those Gentlemen for the above purposes so that the same may be effected with all possible expedition." (Circular letter to Washington's agents, 21 March 1777, Paullin, Out-letters of Marine Committee, I, 87); "On October 29, 1775, the Lee" manned by men from Glover's Amphibious Regiment and commanded by Captain
77. Continued.
John Manlev sailed and about a month later captured the Nancy. "Whatever the shape, size, color, or design of the flag thus hoisted by Manley, it was in truth the first emblem of a national Navy ever displayed." (McCoy, This Man Adams, 238-239); Philadelphia is now boasting that Paul Jones has asserted in his journal that "this hand hoisted the first American Flag;" and captain Barry has asserted that "the first British flag was struck to him." Now I assert that the first American flag was hoisted by John Manley, and the first British Flag was struck to him. (John Adams to Elbridge Gerry, 28 January 1813, Austin, Life of Gerry, I, 99-100); "Whatever the shape, size, color, or design of the flag thus hoisted, by Manley, it was in truth the first emblem of a national Navy ever displayed." John Adams denies that the "first American flag" was hoisted by John Paul Jones and that the first British flag was struck to Barry. Adams claimed both honors for John Manley. (McCoy, This Man Adams, 238-239); Jones says "my hand first raised The American Flagg and Captain Barry used to say that the first British Flag: (was) struck to him." "Both these vain boasts, I know to be false * * * It is not decent nor just, that those emigrant foreigners of the South should falsely arrogate to themselves merit that belongs to New England Sailors, Officers & Men." (John Adams to John Langdon, 24 Jan. 1813, Letter to Langdon, 21)

78. On October 13 1775 General Washington writes his brother John as follows: "Finding that we were in no danger of a visit from our neighbors, I have fitted out and am fitting out several privateers, with soldiers who have been bred to the sea; and I have no doubt of making captures of several of their transports, some of which have already fallen into our hands, laden with provisions." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 9); Finding the ministerial troops resolved to keep themselves close within their lines, and that it was judged impracticable to get at them, I have fitted out six armed vessels, with the design to pick up some of their storeships and transports. (To Major-General Schuyler, Cambridge, 5 Nov. 1775, Sparks, Washington's Writings, III, 143)

79. Journals of Congress, October 4, 1776; see also The Hist. of the Amer. Rev., David Ramsay, V.D. 224-225; Trumbull, Hist. of U.S., 113-114; Preble, Hist. of Flag, 202-204; Gordon, Hist. of the Amer. Rev., II, 144-145; Some soldiers were unwilling to serve afloat as they had en-
79. Continued.

listed only for the Army and not as Marines. (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 13-14); DAR Mag., Nov., 1924; See Nav Inst Proc, April, 1918, 831-883, for account of a fight of the Franklin and the famous exclamation of her commander, Captain James Mugford, of "Do not give up the vessel!"; Washington's Fleet was organized at Continental expense. (Tait, Origin of the Amer. Navy, 20); See Marshall, Life of Washington, II, letter of John Adams, cited in Works of Adams, X, 513; "Washington had the entire management of this fleet." (Clark, Stevens, Alden, Krafft, Short Hist., Navy, 10-11; Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 387; See also Nav Inst Proc, August, 1926, 1556; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 358; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 885; Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 61-66; The references, in most cases, are to soldiers, of course, who performed the duties of Marines; "In answer to your inquiries respecting armed vessels, there are none of any tolerable force belonging to this government. I know of but two of any kind; those very small. At the Continental expense I have fitted out six, as by the enclosed list, two of which are upon the cruise directed by Congress; the rest ply about Cape Cod and Cape Ann, as yet to very little purpose. These vessels are all manned by officers and soldiers, except perhaps a master and pilots; but how far, as they are upon the old establishment, which has not more than a month to exist, they can be ordered off this station, I will not undertake to say, but suppose they might be engaged anew. Belonging to Providence there are two armed vessels; and I am told Connecticut has one, which, with one of those from Providence, is, I believe, upon the cruise you have directed." (To Richard Henry Lee, 27 Nov. 1775, Sparks, Washington's Writings, III, 173); The ordnance brig Nancy was captured by Captain Manley late in November 1775. Among other articles in this valuable cargo was the thirteen-inch brass mortar which General Putnam christened the Congress on its arrival in the camp at Cambridge. (Margaret Wheeler Willard, Letters on the Amer. Rev., 1774-1776, 237); "Washington had the entire management of this fleet. One of these ships, the Lee, whose commission as well as that of her captain, John Manley, was signed by "Washington, captured the Nancy." (Clark, Stevens, Alden, Krafft, Short Hist., U.S. Navy, 10-11); In that same autumn of 1775, when the British navy destroyed Portland, the patriots began to create a navy of their own. Washington from the camp at Cambridge encouraged the New Englanders to fit out private armed schooners to
79. Continued, capture the supply vessels of the British army. One of the first of these, the Lee of Marblehead, took the English ordnance-ship, Nancy, carrying brass cannon and a mortar, besides a large cargo of arms, ammunition, and camp equipment. When this spoil was brought to Cambridge, there was great rejoicing. General Putnam, without regard to dignity, stood on the great mortar, with a bottle of rum in his hand, and General Mifflin stood by as godfather to christen it — "The Congress." (Fisher, Struggle for Amer. Independence, I, 387); On the 29th [November] he sighted a sail which proved to be the object of his search, the brigantine Nancy, which when overhauled surrendered without resistance and was taken into Gloucester. The Nancy carried a large cargo of ordnance and military stores which were of the utmost value to the American army. Besides other things there were two thousand muskets, thirty-one tons of musket shot, three thousand round shot, several barrels of powder, and a thirteen-inch brass mortar, which promised to be most useful in the siege of Boston. (Allen Nav. Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 68)

80. "Washington also caused two floating batteries to be constructed, armed, and manned, and they were placed in the Charles River." (Lossing, Story of the Navy, 13); Preble, Hist. of the Flag of U.S.A., 203-204; MC Arch.

81. Nay Inst Proc, June, 1923, 958; When the second brigade marched out of Boston to reinforce the first, nothing was played by the fife and drums but Yankee Doodle (which has become their favorite tune ever since the notable exploit, which did such honour to the troops of Britain's King, of tarring and feathering a poor countryman in Boston, and parading with him through the principal streets, under arms with their bayonets fixed;) Upon their return to Boston, one asked his brother officer how he liked the tune now, — "D---n them, returned he, they made us dance till we were tired" — Since then Yankee Doodle sounds less sweet in their ears. (Margaret Wheeler Willard, Letters on the Amer. Rev., 1774-1776, 111-112, citing London Chronicle, July 8-11, 1775)

82. See MC Hist v I ch I.

83. Irregular in origin, poorly organized, and without a proper naval code, the little fleet gave Washington much
Chapter III

83. Continued.

trouble and vexation. In November, 1775, he wrote. "Our rascally privateersmen go on at the old rate, mutinying if they can not do as they please." Notwithstanding their shortcomings, Washington's vessels had considerable success in capturing transports and other lightly-armed craft of the enemy. (Nav Inst Proc, Nov., 1927, 1159); "P.S. I had just finished my letter when a blundering Lieut of the blundering Capt° Coit, who had just blundered upon two vessels from Nova Scotia ** **" (George Washington at Cambridge to Joseph Reed, 8 Nov. 1775 in Reprint of Original Letters from Washington to Reed by Wm. B. Reed, II); On November 29, 1775, William Watson wrote from Plymouth to General Washington that the crew of the brigantine Washington were in "general, discontented and have agreed to do no duty on board said vessel; and say that they enlisted to serve in the Army and not as Marines." (Waite, Origin of the Amer. Navy, 20; Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., III; Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 13); On December 1, 1775, we read in a letter of Colonel S. Moylan at Cambridge, Mass., to William Watson, at Plymouth, that "that mutinous spirit which reigns through the Marines and sailors, makes the General [Washington] despair of your being able to effect this to any purpose." (Force, Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., IV, 152); In November, 1775, Washington wrote that "our rascally privateersmen go on at the old rate, mutinying if they can not do as they please." (Ford, Writings of Washington, Washington to Joseph Reed, November 30, 1775, referred to in Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 64); General Washington at Cambridge, Mass., in a letter to President of Congress dated December 4, 1775, which was read before Congress December 13, 1775, wrote that "the plague, trouble, and vexation I have had with the crews of all the armed vessels, is inexpressible. I do believe there is not on earth a more disorderly set. Every time they come into port we hear of nothing but mutinous complaints. Manley's success has lately, and but lately, quieted his people. The crews of the Washington and Harrison have actually deserted them; so that I have been under the necessity of ordering the agent to lay the latter up, and get hands for the other on the best terms he could." (Force, Amer. Arch., 4th Ser., IV, 180; Sparks, Washington's Writings, III, 187; Waite, Origin of the Amer. Navy, 23); "refusing, since they had enlisted only for the Army, to do duty as Marines." (John Manley, 13); The criticism was applied by George Washington alike both to his soldiers serving as Marines and Seamen; See also Note 73; Chadwick, The
33. Continued.
Amer. Navy, 15-16; Knox, Naval Genius of Washington, 9; 
Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 11-14; "The State Navies also had similar experiences. The Minerva of the Connecticut Navy was ready for sea by October, 1775, but could not carry out the first mission assigned it for "all the hands or soldiers and Marines on board, except about 10 or 12," utterly "declined and refused to obey" the orders and "perform said cruises." (Colonial Records of Conn., XV, 178)

34. As has been described; But Washington's Fleet was a Continental Navy. While Washington was maintaining his own Continental Naval Fleet in New England waters he viewed with interest the creation by Congress another Continental Naval Force under Commodore Esek Hopkins at Philadelphia. On January 4, 1776 he wrote from Cambridge, Mass. to Joseph Reed that: "I fear your fleet has been so long in fitting, and the destination of it so well known, that the end will be defeated, if the vessels escape." On January 31, 1776 he again wrote Reed: "The account given of your navy, at the same time that it is exceedingly unfavourable to our wishes, is a little provoking to me, inasmuch as it has deprived us of necessary articles, which otherwise would have been sent hither; but which a kind of fatality I fear will for ever deprive us of."

85. Continued. 
their Carthaginian War. Why may not we lay a foundation for it." (Journal of Congress, III, 500, 501; "Works of John Adams, II, 479); Gadsden said, "I am for a Navy too, and I think that shutting our ports for a time will help us to a Navy." (Journal of Congress, III, 500, 501); Some believed a Navy impossible and the "most wild, visionary, mad project that ever had been imagined." (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 36-37, citing Works of John Adams, I, 187; Mass. Hist. Soc., VI, VI, 194-195); Nav Inst Proc, Nov., 1927, 1158; Mag. of Amer. Hist., II Pt II, 551.


87. October 5, 1775 "Resolved, That a Committee of three be appointed to prepare a plan for intercepting two vessels, which are on their way to Canada, loaded with Arms and powder, * * * Resolved, That a letter be sent by Express to Genl Washington, to inform him, that they having recd certain intelligence of the sailing * * * he apply to the council of Massachusetts bay, for the two armed vessels * * * give commander or commanders such instructions as are necessary, as also proper encouragement to the Marines and seamen * * *" (Journals of Congress, III, 277-278; see also Austin, Life of Elbridge Gerry, I, 102-103); On January 24, 1813 John Adams at Quincy wrote John Langdon that Captain John Manley had applied to George Washington to cruise for the enemy ships. "Washington, either shrinking * * *, Committee was Langdon, Deane and Adams. "We met and at once agreed to report a resolution authorizing General Washington to fit (sic) and arm one or more vessels for the purpose. A more animated opposition and debate arose upon this report but the resolution was carried by a small majority. Under the authority of this Resolution Washington fitted out Manley, who soon brought in several prizes, the most important of which was the Transport loaded with Soldiers, Arms, Ammunition, and that immortal Mortar, which was called the Congress and finally drove the British Army out of Boston and their Fleet out of the Harbor. This splendid success inspired new courage into Congress. They appointed a new [naval] Committee * * * We met every night and in a short time had the Alfred, Columbus, Cabbots, Andrew Doria, Providence etc. at sea under Commodore Hopkins." (Letters to Langdon, 19-21;
Note in Journal of Congress, III, 277 quoting above letter); On the third of October [1775] one of the dele-
gates of Rhode Island laid before Congress their instruc-
tions to use their whole influence for building, equip-
ning and employing an American fleet. It was the origin of our
Navy. The proposal met great opposition; but John Adams
engaged in it heartily, and pursued it unremittingly,
though "for a long time against wind and tide." On the
fifth, Washington was authorized to employ two armed ves-
sels to intercept British storeships, bound for Quebec.
(Bancroft, Hist. of the U.S., VIII, 114; see also Mass.
Hist. Soc., XLVI, 194-195); On October 5, 1775 a Committee
of three was appointed. John Adams wrote: "The secretary
has omitted to insert the names of this committee on the
journals, but as my memory has recorded them, they were
Mr. Deane, Mr. Langdon, and myself." (Autobiography in
Works of John Adams, III, 7); "After a lively debate the
matter was referred to a committee consisting of John
Rev., I, 23); On October 5 sundry letters from London,
conveying the information that two transports laden with
stores and ammunition for the British Army had sailed for
America, were laid before Congress, and that body on the
same day appointed a committee to prepare a plan for
intercepting the two vessels. Thus the "Naval Committee"
came into existence. When enlarged to its full size it
consisted of seven members, with John Adams the leading
member. (Nav Inst Proc, Nov., 1927, 1158); Oct. 5, 1775:
"Expresses sent to General Washington, Governor Cooke,
and Governor Trumbull, to send our several vessels to
intercept two transports with powder, etc. Encouragement
given to the men, etc. The vessels to go on the service
to be at the risk of the continent." (Diary of Samuel
Ward, Delegate in Continental Congress from R.I., in
Mag. Amer. Hist., II, Pt. II, 552); "The three colonies
not responding, or their vessels being otherwise employed,
Washington proceeded to carry out the order of Congress
Resolution of October 5 himself. Accordingly, another
of Glover's officers, Captain John Selman, was appointed
to the Franklin, and Captain Broughton was removed to the
Lynch, or the name of his original vessel may have been
so changed; to each was assigned a crew of about seventy
men." (Greenwood, Captain John Manley, 7); Secret Journals
of Congress, 5 Oct. 1775, I, 38, 39; Clarke, (1813),
Naval Hist. U.S., 52; Clark, Naval Hist. U.S., I, 33; DAR
Mag., Nov., 1924, publishes photo of this Resolution of
October 5, 1775; see also Frothingham, Siege of Boston,
87. Continued.

(Debates in Congress, Oct. 6, 1775, Journals of Congress, III, 483); Chase. It is the maddest idea in the world to think of building an American fleet; its latitude is wonderful; we should mortgage the whole continent. (Debates in Congress, Oct. 7, 1775, Journals of Congress, III, 485); "John Adams was the leader in bringing about the organization of the Corps of Marines and wrote many letters about this branch of the Naval service. In truth he was the 'Father of the Marine Corps,' for many years later it was President John Adams who approved the Act of July 11, 1798, that made the Revolutionary Marines re-live in the New Marine Corps." (MC Gaz., Nov., 1930, 10)

88. Journals of Congress.

90. Journals of Congress; "Friday, Oct. 13, 1775. * * * resolved that a swift sailing vessel, to carry ten carriage guns and a proportionable number of swivels, with eighty men, * * *" (Austin, Life of Gerry, 104-105); "The first effort at securing a Navy bears date of October 13, 1775, when Congress passed a law ordering" two vessels, etc. (Captain Caspar F. Goodrich, USN, Nav Inst Proc, March 1896); "Congress voted on the 13th to fit out two vessels" etc. (Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 22-23); Diary of Samuel Ward, Delegate Cont. Cong., from R.I., Mag. of Amer. Hist., II, Pt II, 553; A & N Reg., Nov. 5, 1932; Wm. Henry Smith's Hist. of the U.S., 401; My attention is directed to the fitting out of privateers, which I hope will make them swarm here. Is it not time to encourage individuals to exert themselves this way? If the continent should fit out a heavy ship or two, and increase them as circumstances shall admit, the colonics
Chapter III

90. Continued.

large privateers, and individuals small ones, surely we may soon expect to see the coast clear of cutters.
(Mr. Gerry to Mr. Adams, Oct. 9, 1775, Austin, Life of Gerry, 116-117); The debates in Congress contained much of interest. Jay on Oct. 20, 1775 in debate in Congress:
"We have more to expect from the enterprize, activity and industry of private adventurers, than from the lukewarmness of assemblies * * * Public virtue is not so active as private love of gain." (Journals of Congress, III, 496); In debate in Congress, Oct. 30, 1775 Ross said "we can't get seamen to man four vessels. We could not get seamen to man our boats, our galleys. Wythe, Nelson and Lee for fitting out four ships." (Journals of Congress, III, 504). And while this talk was going on General Washington was manning his Continental naval warships.

91. It has been said, that the first regular legislation of Congress, in reference to a Marine, with a view to resist the aggressions of the British Parliament, dates from a resolution of that body, passed the 13th of October, 1775. (Cooper, Hist. of Navy of U.S.A., I, 84); Spears, Hist. of Our Navy, I, 30; "The first official step towards the formation of a National American Navy was taken on October 13, 1775, when the Continental Congress ordered" two swift vessels to be equipped. (Benjamin, Naval Academy, 17); A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.


93. "Resolved, That the second vessel ordered to be fitted out on the 13th Inst., do carry 14 guns, with a proportionable number of swivels and men. Resolved, That a Committee be appointed to carry into execution with all possible expedition the resolution of Congress of the 13th Inst., the one of ten and the other of 14 guns. Resolved, That two other armed vessels be fitted out with all expedition, the one to carry not exceeding 20 Guns, and the other not exceeding 36 Guns, with a proportionate number of swivels, and men * * * The committee was increased to seven members. (Journals of Congress, III, 311-312); "October 30, 1775 is an important date in naval legislation. Congress resolved to arm the second of the vessels already provided for with fourteen guns and also authorized two additional vessels" for "the protection and defence of the United Colonies. By this vote Congress was fully committed to the policy of maintaining a
93. Continued. naval armament. On the same day a Committee of seven was formed." (Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 23; Journals of Continental Congress, October 6, 7, 13, 17, 30, 1775)


95. Then on December 33, 1775 "the Committee appointed to fit out armed vessels, laid before Congress a list of the officers by them appointed, agreeable to the resolutions of Congress, viz. * * * " and Congress resolved "that commissions be granted to the above officers agreeable to their rank in the above appointment." (Journals of Congress, III, 443-444); Thus [on Dec. 22, 1775] is the beginning of a list of officers for the Continental Navy which, in the course of the war and including Marine officers and those commissioned in France, contained nearly three hundred and thirty names. There were in addition medical officers, pursers, midshipmen, and warrant officers of whom no lists have been preserved. The largest number of petty officers, seamen, and Marines in the navy at any one time may have been about three thousand. (Allen, Nav. Hist. Amer. Rev., I, 29); See also Clark, Naval Hist. of U.S., II, 33-34; Jordon, Hist. of Amer. Rev., II, 155-156; Field, Esek Hopkins, 80; Bancroft, Hist. U.S., IX, 134-135.


99. "On November 28, 1775" a "Commission as Captain of Marines was made out to Samuel Nicholas, of Pennsylvania, and signed by John Hancock, President of the Continental Congress. It was the first commission issued to anyone in the Continental Naval Service * * * This commission is still in existence and is in the possession of Mr. C. F. Mitchell, of Glen Ridge, N.J., a descendant of
Chapter III

Major Nicholas." (MC Gaz., Dec., 1925, 194); "as far as
is known today, Capt. Samuel Nicholas received the first
Naval Commission signed. It is dated November 28, 1775,
and is in existence today." (A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932, 378)
Leatherneck, May 2, 1925, 1; See also v I chs IV, V.

100. See MC Hist v I chs IV, V.

101. MC Arch.

102. MC Arch; MC Gaz., Dec., 1925, 130; A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932

103. "Samuel Nicholas received a commission as Captain of
Marines signed by John Hancock on November 28, 1775. It
is the oldest Federal Naval Commission in existence today.
Others may have been issued but the original commissions
are not known to exist today." (MC Gaz., Nov., 1930, 10);
A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932.

104. "Genl Hopkins has arrived very well; his accepting the
command of the Fleet gives universal satisfaction." (Sam-
uel Ward and Stephen Hopkins at Phila. to Gov. Cooke, 2
Dec. 1775 in Simon Gratz Autograph Coll. Case I, Box 12,
Hist. Soc. Penna, copy in Navy Arch. A-7); "General [Esek]
Hopkins, this morning, desired us to acquaint you that
'tis yet a matter of doubt whether he engages in the ser-
vice here or not.' If he does not engage in this service,
he will set out for home as soon as his son and young Mr.
Jenskes are well of the smallpox. They were inoculated,"
November 29, 1775. (Nathaniel Mumford, Thomas Greene,
Gideon Mumford at Phila. to Gov. Nicholas Cooke, 3 Dec.

105. See Note 104.

106. Taylor, Life of Jones, 22, 33; Hamilton's, Jones, 27, 29;
Journals of Congress, I, 255; Clark, Naval Hist. of U.S.,
II, 30; "December 7, John Paul Jones 'was appointed
Senior Lieut. of the Navy'." (Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I,
29 citing Jones Mss., Oct. 10, 1776 and Sand's Life of
Jones, 33); "On December 7, 1775, a commission was given
to John Paul Jones." (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 54 citing
Sand's, John Paul Jones, 32); "Among the first lieutenants
appointed was John Paul Jones." (Lossing, Story of U.S.
Navy, 15); Jones' "commission dates 7th of December 1775."
(Thomas Wyatt, Wyatt's Commanders, 189)
107. I have never heard that the commission is in existence today.

108. On November 5, 1775, John Adams, in Phila., wrote James Warren whether he thought "two or three battalions of Marines could be easily enlisted in our Province," (Warren—Adams Letters, I, 174,181-182; Miss. Letters, John Adams, Coll. Mass. Hist. Soc., No. 72, I, 182). of Massachusetts, and on the 14th of the same month Warren replied that "at least three battalions might be raised in this Colony." (id.); On the same date John Adams wrote to Elbridge Gerry that he was "to inquire what number of seamen may be found in our Province, who would probably inlist in the service, either as Marines, or on board of armed vessels, in the pay of the Continent or in the pay of the Province, or on board of privateers, fitted out by private adventurers." (Works of John Adams, IX, 363; Austin, Life of Gerry, I, 97-98); Paullin,Nav. Amer. Rev., 51; "The Naval Committee will be in want of seamen and Marines." (Correspondence of Silas Deane, in Coll. Conn. Hist. Soc., II, 332)

109. See Note 108.

110. MC Arch; It was President John Adams who, on July 11, 1798, approved the bill that created the Marine Corps as it exists today.

111. Commemoration of the Birthday of the Corps started in 1921 upon the following recommendation being approved: "1. In view of the fact that November 10th is the Birthday of the Marine Corps, the Corps being 146 years of age, I desire to place before you the important desirability of having the day declared a Marine Corps holiday and celebrated throughout the Marine Corps. The amount of celebrating that would take place could be limited to each Commanding Officer issuing a General Order to be read to his command, if it is felt that we have too many days of relaxation. It is the one day on which every Marine should have impressed upon him that he is an important integral part of an ancient and honorable organization. 2. I would further suggest that a dinner be held in Washington to commemorate this important date, at which prominent members of the Marine Corps, Navy, and Army and descendants of Revolutionary and other Marines be present. * * * I am sure the celebration of this event in this manner would be given wide publicity and create an interest in the Marine Corps among certain classes.
Continued.

that would prove of agreeable assistance. 3. In view of the foregoing I recommend that a General Order be issued on this subject." (Major Edwin N. McClellan the Officer-in-Charge of Historical Section to Major General John Archer Lejeune, 21 October 1921, File 1850, MC Arch); Accordingly, Marine Corps Orders No. 47 (Ser. 1931), November 1, 1931 was issued, and later carried into MC Manual as 1-55; The story of "The Birth Day of the Marine Corps" was published in DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, with photos of Jesse Root's letter of May 25, 1775, Res. of Cong., Oct. 5, 1775, and Res. of Nov. 10, 1775; Washington Star, 4 Nov. 1923; "Washington Herald, 13 March 1925; Philadelphia Inquirer, 11, 25 Oct. 1925; Washington Post, 8 Nov. 1925; Philadelphia Record, 11 Nov. 1925; "The Marines are clannish. They are all for one and one for all. They keep alive, as no other military organization does, the memory of those who have passed over. These Marines have a beautiful thought which they seldom express in public. It is that their Corps is a living thing that never dies; that it has a Soul - the Spirit of their Departed - a cloud of witnesses who to their Country and their Corps have been Ever Faithful." (DAR Mag., March, 1925, 155); Leatherneck, Nov. 12, 1921, Nov. 11, 1922, Nov. 14, 1923, Nov. 8, 1924, 2, 3, 16; May 2, 1925; Nov. 10, 1925; Dec., 1929 and subsequent numbers; See Leatherneck, Jan. 10, 1925, p.2 for interesting article of Marines' Birthday by Admiral Hugh Rodman; MG Gaz., Nov., 1930, 9-10; President Calvin Coolidge on the 150th Birthday of the Corps wrote as follows to the Major General Commandant: "I regret exceedingly that, due to other engagements, I shall be unable to attend the ceremonies at Philadelphia, on November 10th, in celebration of the one hundred and fiftieth anniversary of the organization of the Marine Corps. Throughout the history of our country the Marine Corps has performed its duty faithfully and conscientiously. It has always lived up to its motto Semper Fidelis and I can give it no higher praise. Will you please extend to the members of the Corps my heartiest congratulations on its achievements in the past, and my best wishes for its success in the future? (MC Arch; Extracts from the foregoing letter are published in The Leatherneck of Nov. 10, 1925)

As early as May, 1775 and the future may disclose an even earlier date.

Journals of Congress; In the "Corrected Journals" the word "Secret" is written on this resolution of Nov. 10,
113. Continued.

1775. (See Note 117); For comparison of beginning of Army, Navy and Marine Corps see earlier part of chapter and prior notes; Greenwood, Captain John Manley, xix-xiii; Rear Admiral George M. Belknap in a paper called "The Old Navy" which he read on Jan. 5, 1897, said that this Resolution was "the first step in the creation of the Navy." (Naval Actions and Hist., 1799-1898, 19 - Papers of the Mil. Hist. Soc. of Mass., VII); Rear Admiral Colby M. Chester in MC Gaz., Dec., 1918, 390, wrote that "Anyone who is at all familiar with the way we have in the Navy can picture to himself the performance of this gallant Corps of Marine troops, the first regular military organization the country ever possessed, the two battalion which composed the Corps having been organized by a Resolution of the Colonial Congress in the year 1775, soon after General Washington had been authorized by this same authority to assume command of the State militia, which formed the Army of the rebelling colonies." Cooner, in Hist. of the Navy of the U.S., I, 295, wrote that "aware of the importance of such a body of men, on the tenth of November, 1775, or before any regular cruiser had yet got to sea, Congress passed a Resolution establishing a Marine Corps;" Rear Admiral W. V. Pratt in Nav. Inst. Proc., July, 1934, 126, wrote that "The Marine Corps is the oldest service;" "It was not until November 10th of that year (1775) that Congress resolved to create a Corps of Continental or Regular Marines." (Rear Admiral Hugh Rodman in The Leatherneck, Jan. 10, 1925, 2); "The United States Marine Corps came into existence before the organization of the regular Navy." (Washington City Sunday Gazette, Oct. 3, 1886 that published Res. of Nov. 10, 1775); "The Marines are a proud service, incidentally older in organization than either the Army or Navy. "Then the Navy consisted of privateers and "Washington's Cruisers" and the Army consisted of individual State troops, the Marine Corps was under Federal organization." (Washington Herald, March 13, 1925); The Marine Corps "is the right arm of the State Department" and "Presidential Troops." (Admiral Hugh Rodman in The Leatherneck, Jan. 10, 1925, 3); Marines are "Presidential Troops." (DAR Mag., March 25, 1925, 158); "In 1775, the Founding Fathers provided that the National Defence should include Marines, they said, named as the First and Second Battalions of American Marines," etc. (MC Gaz., Dec., 1925, 175); "One hundred and eleven years ago this month, before a single vessel of the U.S. Navy was sent to sea and before the organization of the regular Navy, Congress
Chapter III

113. Continued.

passed the following resolution: " (Daily Evening Bulletin of San Francisco, Nov. 23, 1886); "On the 10th of November, before a single vessel of the Navy was sent to sea, the Corps was organized by the following resolution:

* * *

" (Burrows, Hist. of MC, in Senate Doc., No. 719, 60th Cong., 2d Sess., ordered to be printed Feb. 15, 1909); "November 10 the Marine Corps was established." (Allen, Nav. Hist. Rev., I, 24); DeKoven, John Paul Jones, I, 164-165; "The U.S. Marine Corps was first called into existence by an act of the Continental Congress of November 10, 1775, and gallantly served with distinction throughout the Revolutionary War." (Capt. Harrison S. Kerrick, C.A.C., U.S. Army, Mil. & Nav. America, 313, pub in 1916); "On the 10th Congress ordered the organization of a Marine Corps." (DeKoven, John Paul Jones, 164-165); Maclay, Hist., Navy, 37; "Let there be Marines!" (MC Gaz. Nov., 1930, 10, 95); DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 682, and on p. 685 appears an illustration of the original resolution. DAR Mag., March, 1925, 155; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 958; MC Gaz., Dec., 1925, 129, 175; Leatherneck, Nov. 1917, 8, April 11, 1925; Works of John Adams, III, 10; Maclay, Hist. of Navy, I, 37; Pearson (Printer), Information in Regard USMC, (1875), 4; Clark, Nav. Hist. U.S., II, VI; A & N Reg., 5 Nov. 1932; For the strength of two battalions of Marines authorized November 10, 1775 - Continental Congress on November 4, 1775 resolved that each regiment of the New Army "consist of 728 men, officers included; that it be divided into eight companies, each company to consist of one captain, two lieutenants, one ensign, 4 sergeants, 4 corporals, two drums or fifes and 76 privates." (Journals of Congress, III, 323); Parliament provided for 4,354 British Marines in 1775 (Naval Chronology by Isaac Schomberg, I, 420)

114. Journals of Congress; Although Marines were included in the 80 men provided by Res. of Oct. 13, 1775. See Note 90.

115. Every law directing the acquisitioning and manning of a naval vessel actually authorized a Marine Guard for it; MC Arch.

116. See Notes 113, 117; MC Arch.

117. That these two Battalions of American Marines were probably raised for an "expeditionary" mission is shown by the Journals of Congress for November 10, 1775. The
117. Continued.
Secret Journal of Congress for that date shows that Congress: Resolved "that two persons be sent at the expense of these colonies, to Nova Scotia, to inquire into the state of that colony; the disposition of the inhabitants towards the American cause; and the condition of the fortifications, docks, yards, the quantity of artillery and warlike stores, and the number of soldiers, sailors, and ships of war there; and transmit the earliest intelligence to General Washington. Resolved, That General Washington be directed, in case he should judge it practicable and expedient, to send into that colony a sufficient force to take away the cannon and warlike stores, and to destroy the docks, yards, and magazines, and to take or destroy any ships of war and transports there belonging to the enemy." (Secret Journal of Congress, I, 34-35; Journal of Congress, III, 348); The Secret Journal does not contain the Resolution creating two Battalions of American Marines; Journal of Congress, III, 348 contains the note that "against the paragraphs in the 'Corrected Journals' is written the word 'Secret'." In other words the entire three paragraphs was held as secret by Continental Congress.

118. Nicolas, Historical Rec. of Royal Marine Forces, I, 18; Field, Britain's Sea Soldiers, I, 88; DAR Mag., Nov., 1924, 686; See also MC Hist v I ch II.


120. The first Marine officer of the Penna. Navy was Captain William Brown, appointed some date prior to January 18, 1776. (Pa. Arch., 2d Ser., I, 475, V, 37, 106); See also Pa. Arch., 2d Ser., I, 239 et seq; Maclay, Hist. Amer. Priv., 75-76; DAR Mag., Nov. 1924, 686; Scharff and Wescott, Hist. Phila., I, 299-300; Works of John Adams, II, 429; See Note 31.

121. Thomas Clark wrote a one-volume Naval Hist. in 1813 and a revised two-volume history in 1814.

122. Clark, Hist. Navy, II, 29; "It no period of the naval history of the world is it probable that Marines were more important than during the War of the Revolution," wrote James Fenimore Cooper, and "the history of the Navy, even at that early day, as well as in these latter times, abounds with instances of the gallantry and self-devotion of this body of soldiers." (Coopcr, Hist. Navy, U.S.,
123. Continued.
I, 295; this quotation also appears in A & N Chron., Nov. 21, 1839, 323; see also Nav. Inst. Proc., June, 1923, 957; DAR Mag., Jan., 1923, and July, 1923)

123. See in this connection Cooper, Hist. U.S. Navy, I, 393.

124. Statement prepared in the Fourth Auditor's Office of the Treasury Department dated May 28, 1829 and communicated to the House of Representatives on May 25, 1830 states in part: "The first Marine Corps was established by the Continental Congress in 1775. * * * That this was then considered a part of the naval armament, is proven by the manner in which it is introduced. * * *" On December 30, 1874, at the Boston Navy Yard, Captain S.P. Luce, USN, wrote that "the United States Marine Corps has well sustained the high reputation for steadfast courage and loyalty which has been handed down to it from the days of Themistocles. But like their modern prototypes of Great Britain, they have felt the want of proper appreciation. In the Resolution of Congress of November 10, 1775, to raise two battalions to be called 'First and Second Battalions of American Marines,' it was enjoined that 'no person be enlisted into said battalions but such as are good seamen, or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve with advantage by sea;' clearly showing that our legislators of that day, at least, had little conception of the nature of a properly organized Marine Corps." (Aldrich, Hist. USMC, 30); even Paulin, the Prince of naval researchers, went also wrong on this. He wrote: "Such a requirement" of Congress in providing that Marines be "able to serve to advantage by sea when required" seems "to overlook the fact that the duties of Marines are military in character rather than naval." (Paulin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 43); However, it would appear that Continental Congress had an excellent idea as to "Sea Soldiers," for it directed these Marines to be those soldiers of Washington's Army who were "so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve with advantage at sea."

125. Commandant of Marine Corps to Sec. Navy 17 April 1816 (MC Arch); MC Gaz., March, 1922, 68.

126. Marines were authorized for the frigates in 1794 and were not gathered into a Corps until 1798. See MC Hist v I chs IX, X.


129. MC Arch.


135. See Note 131.


137. In a letter dated Glen Ridge, N.J., Nov. 17, 1925 to New York Herald-Tribune Charles T. Mitchell states he has this original commission in his possession and that Nicholas' commission as Major "has been lost." (N.Y. Herald-Tribune); *Leatherneck*, Nov. 1927, 8, *MC Gaz.*, Dec., 1925, 130; See also Note 99.

139. Penna. Mag. of Hist. and Biog., XII, 351.

140. Not located up to date.

141. MC Arch; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 959.

142. MC Arch; Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 959.

143. Papers of Cont. Cong., Library of Cong., 17, 78, 301; Nav. Inst. Proc., June, 1923, 959; DAR Mag., June, 1921, 306; See also Note 99; MC Hist v I chs IV, V.

144. Nav Inst Proc, June, 1923, 960; The battalion of Marines, commanded by Major Samuel Nicholas, at the Battle of Princeton, was not one of these battalions. It was a provisional battalion raised for the emergency from Marine Guards being organized for the frigates. (See MC Hist v I ch V.); See also Note 125.


146. "The first and only Commander-in-Chief of the American Navy was at the time of his appointment 57 years of age." (Paullin, Nav. Amer. Rev., 53); See also Note 96.

147. MC Gaz., Dec., 1925, 194; See Notes 60, 99; Photo. of commissions of Nicholas and Craig in DAR Mag., June, 1921, 308; MC Gaz., Sept., 1921, 286–287; MC Arch.


151. "If some day must be chosen as the birthday of the Continental Navy, much is to be said for November 28." (Paullin in Nav. Inst. Proc., Nov., 1927, 1158)


154. See Note 104.

155. See MC Hist v I chs IV, V; It is not known what this "Continental Flag" was.


159. Journals of Congress.


162. SPEARS, Hist. Navy, I, 1, 41.

163. MC Arch.
INDEX FOR CHAPTER III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Accustomed to the ways of the sea&quot;</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams, John</td>
<td>10, 12, 14, 26, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Admiral&quot;</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Admiral&quot; Washington</td>
<td>7, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alfred</td>
<td>13, 24, 27, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen, Ethan</td>
<td>3, 4, 39, 40, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Amphibian&quot;</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Amphibious Regiment&quot;</td>
<td>8, 69, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrea Doria</td>
<td>13, 24, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army, Regular</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arnold, Benedict</td>
<td>4, 39, 40, 41, 43, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assanpink, Battle of</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barry, John, Captain, U.S.Navy</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belknap, George M. Rear Admiral U.S.Navy</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bermuda</td>
<td>7, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthday of Regular Army</td>
<td>6, 53, 54, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthday of Regular Marines</td>
<td>6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 18, 35, 38, 40, 45, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthday of Regular Navy</td>
<td>6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 18, 28, 46, 55, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthday of Theodore Roosevelt</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Prince (Alfred)</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boston, evacuation of, on March 17, 1776</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Bred to the sea&quot;</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Marines</td>
<td>1, 16, 35, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown, William, Captain of Marines</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broughton, Nicholson, Captain</td>
<td>7, 19, 65, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bunker Hill</td>
<td>16, 31, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabot</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canvas for sails and tents</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chadwick, French E. Rear Admiral U.S.Navy</td>
<td>29, 38, 44, 46, 52, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chester, Colby M. Rear Admiral U.S.Navy</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clark, Peter, &quot;Commander of Marines&quot;</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colonial American Marines of 1740-1742</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbus</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commandant of Marines</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander-in-Chief of Continental Navy</td>
<td>82, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander-in-Chief of Fleet</td>
<td>25, 26, 27, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander-in-Chief of Navy</td>
<td>24, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Commissions&quot; for Navy Officers</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission of George Washington</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission, oldest Naval</td>
<td>See First Naval Commission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Commodore&quot;</td>
<td>60, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concord, Mass</td>
<td>29, 30, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congress, first mentions &quot;Marines&quot;</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecticut</td>
<td>5, 42, 48, 49, 50, 73, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Continental risque and pay&quot;</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolidge, Calvin, President</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"Corps of Marines" .............................................. 15, 17  
Craig, Isaac, Lieutenant and Captain of Marines 13, 24, 26, 90  
Crown Point .................................................. 3, 4, 42, 43

Dawes, William .............................................. 33  
Deane, Silas ................................................... 2, 10, 11, 40, 43, 50  
Department of National Defense, one only ...................... 7  
"Detachments" and provisional organizations .................. 35  
Devil, The ..................................................... 42  
Dictator, Washington as ....................................... 64  
Discipline ....................................................... 55  
"Disperse you rebels" .......................................... 1, 31, 32  
"Do not give up the vessel" .................................... 73  
Enlistment period of Marines .................................... 15, 80  
Expeditionary duty of Marines .................................. 3, 86  
Expeditionary mission, first .................................... 15

"Father of the American Navy and Her Marines", Geo. Wash. .. 7  
"Father of the Marine Corps", John Adams .................... 10, 12, 14, 26, 79  
First American warships fitted out by any authority .......... 4  
First American Naval Force was possibly on Lake Champlain .. 3  
First capture by a Continental warship ........................ 8  
First capture by a State ship .................................. 45  
First Continental Congress ..................................... 1, 29  
First enlisted men for Regular Navy and Marines .............. 11, 14  
"First Fight Afloat" ........................................... 29  
First Flag of Navy ............................................ 72  
First Marines .................................................. 3, 40, 42  
First Mission of Marines was expeditionary .................... 15  
First Naval commission - Capt. Samuel Nicholas 13, 26, 81, 89  
First "Naval Department" ..................................... 7  
First shore duty of Marines .................................... 2  
First suggestion for a Continental Navy ......................... 10  
First time Congress mentioned Marines .......................... 10  
First time Marines referred to in American History .......... 3  
First warship .................................................. 66  
Flag - "Cambridge Flag" ....................................... 55  
Flag, "Continental Flag" raised at Phila. Dec. 3, 1775 27, 91  
Flag hoisted by Captain John Manley .......................... 72  
Flag hoisted by John Paul Jones ............................... 72  
Flag - Pine Tree Flag ........................................... 9, 61, 72  
Flag, "Union Flag" ............................................. 55  
Floating batteries in Charles River ................................ 9, 74  
Florida .......................................................... 37

Gadsden, Christopher .......................................... 11  
Gaspee .......................................................... 1, 29  
Georgia ......................................................... 5, 45, 46  
Glover, John, Colonel, of Marblehead, Mass .................... 8, 68, 69

-93-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Goldsmith, William, Marine Officer</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoosh's Marines</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hancock, John</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand grenades</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannah</td>
<td>9, 59, 64, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopkins, Esek, &quot;Commodore&quot; USN.</td>
<td>7, 13, 25, 28, 61, 62, 78, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indians, American</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jones, John Paul</td>
<td>13, 72, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knox, Dudley, Captain U.S. Navy</td>
<td>64, 65, 68, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lady Washington</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake Champlain</td>
<td>3, 9, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lejeune, John Archer, Maj. Gen. Commandant, USMC</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lexington</td>
<td>1, 2, 16, 29, 30, 33, 33, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Lexington of the Seas&quot;</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lexington, &quot;Saltwater Lexington&quot;</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luce, S.B., Captain, U.S. Navy</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marblehead Marines&quot;</td>
<td>8, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Committee. See also Naval Committee</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Corps of 1798</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines - a Corps of individuals</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines - a special type of soldier</td>
<td>9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines always part of Navy</td>
<td>2, 6, 7, 10, 11, 15, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines - First time appearing in American History</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines - First time mentioned by Congress</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marines of Washington's cruisers</td>
<td>7, 8, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Marining&quot;</td>
<td>9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Maritime Regiment&quot;</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Maritime Soldier&quot;</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maryland</td>
<td>5, 52, 53, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massachusetts</td>
<td>5, 10, 14, 50, 51, 77, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McClellan, Edwin North, Major, USMC</td>
<td>38, 55, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mission of Marines</td>
<td>15, 16, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mission of Washington's Fleet</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitchell, Charles T., Mr.</td>
<td>81, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motto - Semper Fidelia</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muster Master for the Navy</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutiny</td>
<td>75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Defence</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Defence, Department of</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naval affairs administered by Washington</td>
<td>59, 60, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naval Committee. See also Marine Com.</td>
<td>12, 13, 14, 25, 27, 28, 78, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Naval Department,&quot; first</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"Naval Department" of Washington. ..... 61,62-63
"Naval idea". .................................. 9
Naval indoctrination. .......................... 18
Naval Mission of Washington's Fleet ......... 69
Navy Day........................................ 12
Navy - First proposal for Continental Navy .. 10
Navy Line........................................ 71
Navy, Regular started at Philadelphia ......... 76,77,78
Navy Regulations................................ 26
"New Army"..................................... 55
New Hampshire................................ 5,52
New Jersey.................................. 5,53
New Marine Corps of 1798 .................... 79
New York...................................... 5,52
New York Fleet of Washington ............... 63
Nicholas, Samuel, Capt. & Maj. of Marines ... 13,23,26,81,82,89,90
Nick-names...... See Maritime Soldiers; Sea-Soldiers, etc.
North Carolina.............................. 5,53
Nova Scotia.................................. 15,16,87
"Original Eight" Marines........................ 3,39,42
"Overseas Soldiers"........................... 16
Pay............................................ 27,52
Pennsylvania.................................. 5,16,47,48,87
Pitcairn, John, Major British Marines ....... 1,29,30,31,32
Pope, The...................................... 42
Pratt, William Veazie, Admiral, U.S. Navy ... 85
Precedence - Army, Navy (including Marines) 3
Preparedness, Naval.......................... 39
Presidential Troops............................ 85
Princeton, Battle of. ........................ 25,90
"Private Adventurers"........................ 83
Privateers .................................. 5,9,10,16,39,53,62,70,72,73,79,80
Privateers - Marines of ..................... 2,38
Privateersmen - "rascally privateersmen" ...... 75
Prize Money................................... 60,71
Providen ce.................................. 45
Provisional organization of Marines .......... 25
Quebec......................................... 16
Resolution of October 5, 1775 ................. 10,11,77,78,79,84
October 13, 1775.............................. 11,14,79,80,86
October 30, 1775.............................. 12,14,80
November 2, 1775.............................. 12,81
November 5, 1775............................. 25
November 10, 1775........................... 14,15,17,18,25,83,84,85,86,88